



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

AN ITALIAN  
Conversation Grammar,  
AND  
GUIDE TO ITALIAN COMPOSITION.

---

N. PERINI.

EducT  
1918  
84.675



Harvard College Library

FROM

THE ESTATE OF

PROFESSOR E. W. GURNEY

(Class of 1852)

Received 3 May, 1899

01974



3 2044 102 868 783



# AN ITALIAN CONVERSATION GRAMMAR

COMPRISING THE MOST IMPORTANT RULES OF ITALIAN GRAMMAR, WITH  
NUMEROUS EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES THEREON; EXTRACTS IN  
ITALIAN PROSE AND POETRY; AND EXTRACTS IN  
ENGLISH PROSE FOR TRANSLATION  
INTO ITALIAN, WITH NOTES.

ALSO AN ITALIAN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY.

---

BY N. PERINI, F.R.A.S.,

*Professor of Italian at King's College, London, and at the Royal College of Music,  
and Italian Examiner to the Staff College, the Royal Military Academy,  
Woolwich, and the Society of Arts.*

---

LIBRAIRIE HACHETTE & C<sup>IE</sup>.,

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

PARIS: 79, BOULEVARD, SAINT-GERMAIN.

BOSTON, U.S.: CARL SCHOENHOF.

1884.

[ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.]

Edue<sub>v</sub>T 1913.54, 675

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
FROM THE ESTATE OF  
PROFESSOR E. W. GURNEY  
MAY 3, 1899.

LONDON:  
PRINTED BY JOHN BALE AND SONS,  
GREAT TITCHFIELD STREET,  
OXFORD STREET, W.

DEDICATED, BY PERMISSION, TO

LORD TENNYSON, POET LAUREATE,

D. C. L., F. R. S., &c.





## P R E F A C E.

---

“GOOD wine needs no bush,” and a good book requires no preface ; its value will soon be discovered and appreciated. But in bringing before the public this grammar, which is arranged in a way different from that generally adopted, I feel it incumbent on me to offer a few words of explanation.

I have throughout adhered to the deductive method, that is, I do not set any exercise before the student, except on points previously explained. I have always regarded as mischievous the system of setting exercises beyond the knowledge of the student, and in which one-half of the words are translated ; these may be called exercises in writing, rather than exercises on grammar, and in doing them the student often loses sight of the very points the grammarian wishes to elucidate.

I have made the verb the framework of the whole grammar, as it is impossible to form a sentence without it. I have also discarded the usual method of separating Accidence from Syntax, for it seems to me that such a separation has no existence in reality ; I have combined the two parts, and gradually introduced the Syntax as I thought its knowledge would be required by the student.

Being convinced, as most people now are, that the best way of learning a foreign language is to translate into it from one's own language, I have added to the grammar a few pages of English prose extracts, with notes to facilitate their translation

into Italian. I have also given some extracts in Italian Prose and Poetry, the former with notes so that the student may, at an early stage, be enabled to translate Italian into English and the latter that he may commit to memory some of the finest verses in the Italian language, and thus acquire a correct Italian accent. I have supplemented the whole with Vocabularies, which will enable the student to dispense with any other book for at least the first ten lessons.

With regard to the letters in darker type, which will be found in many Italian words throughout the book, their purpose is fully explained on page 8, to which the student is desired to refer.

In conclusion I hope my effort may win the favour of my colleagues; for any corrections and suggestions I shall be grateful.

N. PERINI.

KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON,

*February 14th, 1884.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION ... ..	I
The Alphabet. On the Pronunciation of the Letters. The Mode of Dividing Words into Syllables. On the Pronunciation of Words. The Written Accent. The Apostrophe. On Reading Italian. Reading Exercises.	
LESSON	
I. On the Definite Article ... ..	15
On the Prepositions, "Di," "A," "Da" ... ..	16
II. On the Verb, "Avere," <i>to have</i> ... ..	18
On the Modes of Addressing People in Italian ... ..	21
III. On the Interrogative and Negative Forms of Verbs ... ..	22
IV. On the Partitive Article ... ..	24
On the Indefinite Article ... ..	25
V. On the Verb "Essere," <i>to be</i> ... ..	27
On the Verb "Essere," with "Ci," and "Vi" ... ..	29
On the Verbs ... ..	30
On the first Conjugation in "Are" ... ..	31
VI. On the Personal Pronouns ... ..	36
On the Reflective Pronoun, "Sè" ... ..	38
On the Disjunctive Personal Pronouns ... ..	39
On the Conjunctive Personal Pronouns ... ..	40
VII. On the Double Conjunctive Pronouns ... ..	43
VIII. On the Words, "Ci," "Vi," and "Ne" ... ..	46
IX. On the Second Conjugation in "Ere" ... ..	49
X. On the Third Conjugation in "Ire" ... ..	53
XI. On Verbs conjugated Passively ... ..	57
XII. On the Neuter Verbs... ..	59
XIII. On the Reflective and Reciprocal Verbs ... ..	62
XIV. On the Impersonal Verbs ... ..	65
XV. On the Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation; "Andare," "Dare," "Fare," and "Stare" ... ..	68
XVI., XVII. On the Irregular Verbs in "Ere" ... ..	70
XVIII. On the Irregular Verbs in "Ire" ... ..	89
XIX. On the Use of the Definite Article... ..	94

LESSON	PAGE
XX. On the Use of the Indefinite Article ... ..	98
XXI. On the Gender and Number of Nouns ... ..	100
XXII. On the Compound Nouns ... ..	110
On the Collective Nouns ... ..	111
XXIII. On the Italian Suffixes ... ..	113
XXIV. On Qualificative Adjectives ... ..	116
On "Bello," "Grande," "Tutto," "Mezzo," "Molto," "Tanto," &c. ... ..	118
XXV. On the Formation of Adverbs ... ..	123
On the Degrees of Comparison ... ..	124
XXVI. On the Numeral Adjectives ... ..	130
XXVII. On the Possessive Adjectives ... ..	134
On the Possessive Pronouns ... ..	138
XXVIII. On the Demonstrative Adjectives ... ..	140
On the Demonstrative Pronouns ... ..	142
On the Demonstrative Personal Pronouns ... ..	143
XXIX. On the Relative Pronouns ... ..	145
XXX. On the Indefinite Pronouns ... ..	149
On "Niente," "Nulla," "Quanto," and "Per Quanto" ...	154
XXXI. On the Infinitive Mood ... ..	156
On the Tenses of the Indicative ... ..	158
XXXII. On the Subjunctive Mood ... ..	162
XXXIII. On the Form and Use of Passive Verbs ... ..	169
XXXIV. On "Volere," "Dovere," "Potere," and "Sapere" ...	172
On the Negation ... ..	174
XXXV. On the Past Participle ... ..	177
XXXVI. On the Complements of Verbs ... ..	181
XXXVII. On the Verbs "Avere," "Essere," "Andare," "Dare," "Fare," "Stare," "Sapere," "Tenere," "Volere," and "Venire," used idiomatically ... ..	185
XXXVIII. On the Adverbs ... ..	194
XXXIX. On the Prepositions ... ..	201
XL. On the Conjunctions ... ..	209
On the Interjections ... ..	211
Italian Idioms and Sayings ... ..	213
Italian Proverbs ... ..	214
Italian Prose ... ..	215
Italian Poetry ... ..	223
A Guide to Italian Composition ... ..	231
Titles and Expressions used in Italian letters ... ..	242
Italian-English Vocabulary ... ..	244
English-Italian Vocabulary ... ..	250

# ITALIAN GRAMMAR.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

### ON THE PRONUNCIATION AND SPELLING OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.

#### THE ALPHABET.

The Italian Alphabet consists of the following twenty-two letters :—

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, L,  
*ah, bee, chee, de, a, éffay, gee, ahkah, e, ee, éllay,*  
M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, Z,\*  
*émmay, énnay, o, pee, coo, érray, éssay, tee, ou, vee, zatah.*

A, E, I, O, U, are vowels, and the other seventeen letters are consonants.

There are no real diphthongs in the Italian language ; † every letter must be pronounced with its distinct sound, as indicated above ; the only letters that are subject to some slight modification in pronunciation are the vowels E and O, as will be explained further on. The Italian language is very nearly pronounced as it is written.

---

\* The letters, K, W, X, Y, are not made use of in Italian, except to spell words belonging to other languages.

† By “*dittonghi distesi*” (long diphthongs) Italian grammarians mean that two vowels, belonging to the same syllable, are pronounced separately, making a slight pause between them ; as the *e* and the *u* in “E...uropa,” Europe ; the *a* and the *u* in “a...utunno,” autumn, “a...urora,” dawn, “a...utore,” author ; and the *a* and the *e* in “pa...ese,” country, &c. Whilst by “*dittonghi raccolti*” (short diphthongs) the mean that two vowels, belonging to the same syllable, are pronounced quickly together ; as the *ie* in “cielo,” heaven, sky, “piede,” foot.

## ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS.

- A is pronounced as the English a, in *carpet*. Ex. "tavola,"\* table.
- B is pronounced as in English. Ex. "banco," bench.
- C followed by a, o, u, or a consonant, is pronounced like the English k. Ex. "camera," room; "cosa," thing; "cuna," cradle; "crosta," crust. But when c precedes e or i, it is pronounced soft—ce has the sound of the che, in *cherry*, and ci sounds like chi, in *chicory*. Ex. "certo," certain; "cibo," food; "ciarlare," to chat.
- D is pronounced as in English. Ex. "danaro," money.
- E is generally pronounced like the e, in *merry*. Ex. "merito," merit; "fedele," faithful. It is however to be observed that in many words this letter has a broader sound, something like the ai, in *fair*. The teacher is the best guide in this matter.

In the following words, and some others, the e has the sharp or broad sound, according to the meaning of the word.

<i>In the following words E has the sharp sound of E, in MERRY.</i>	<i>In the following words E has the broad sound of AI in FAIR.</i>
Creta, clay.	Creta, Crete (the island of).
Mezzo,† over-ripe.	Mezzo, half, middle, means.
Sei, six.	Sei, thou art.
La tema, fear.	Il tema, the exercise.
Venti, twenty.	Venti, winds.

\* As it is fully explained on page 8 of this Grammar, in pronouncing most Italian words the stress of the voice, or what is called the "Tonic Accent" falls upon the penultimate, or last syllable but one. Ex. "padre," father; "cappello," hat, etc., but in some words (perhaps one out of every twenty) the "Tonic Accent" instead of falling on the penultimate, it falls upon some of the preceding syllables, as is the case in the word "tavola," table. The way adopted to indicate the "Tonic Accent" throughout this grammar is this: ALL THE WORDS IN WHICH THE TONIC ACCENT DOES NOT FALL ON THE PENULTIMATE SYLLABLE, THE LETTER OR LETTERS UPON WHICH IT FALLS ARE PRINTED IN DARKER TYPE, as "fertile," fertile; "vendere," to sell; but no difference in the type is made in the words in which the "Tonic Accent" falls upon the penultimate, ("felice," happy; "parlare," to speak,) nor in those words in which it falls upon the last vowel, accented, as in "carità," charity; "parlò," he spoke; in this latter case the whole stress of the voice naturally falls upon the last vowel, which is strongly pronounced.

† See page 6 for the right pronunciation of the zz.

F\* is pronounced as in English. Ex. "fonte," fountain.

G, before *a*, *o*, and *u*, and before consonants (except *l* and *n*) is pronounced hard like the *g*, in the word *garden*. Ex. "gara," emulation; "gola," throat; "grande," great. Whilst before *e* and *i*, it has the soft sound of the *g*, in *general*, and *gin*; Ex. "genero," son-in-law; "giorno," day.

#### PRONUNCIATION OF *Gl*.

*Gl*, followed by *a*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, is pronounced like *gl*, in *glad*. Ex. "glandula," gland; "gleba," glebe; "gloria," glory; "glutine," glue.

But *gli* is pronounced almost like the English *illi*, in the word *postillion*; Ex. "gli," (article) the, (pronoun) to him; "egli," he; "eglino," they; "tagliare," to cut; "meglio," better.

Except in the words "Anglia," England; "Anglicano," Anglican; "geroglifico," hieroglyphical; and "negligere," to neglect, and its derivatives, "negligenza," negligence; "negligente," negligent; where *gli* sounds exactly like the English *gli*, in *glimmer*.

#### PRONUNCIATION OF *Gn*.

*Gn* is pronounced something like the English *gn*, in *poignard*.

Ex. "montagna," mountain; "magnifico," magnificent.

H, which has no sound by itself, and may be considered as an auxiliary letter, is used at the beginning of the words "ho," I have; "hai," thou hast; "ha," he, she, or it has; and "hanno," they have, in which words the *h* is retained only to distinguish them from "o," meaning or; "ai," to the; "a," to, or at; and "anno," year. The *h* is further used in interjections. Ex. "Ah!" "oh!"

But the principal use of the letter *h* in Italian is to give to the letters *c* and *g* a hard sound when they are followed by *e* and *i*—the Italian *che* has the sound of the English *ca*, in *cake*, and the Italian *chi* sounds like the English word *key*; whilst the Italian *ghe* sounds like the English *ga*, in *gate*, and the Italian *ghi* sounds like the English *gi*, in *give*. Ex. "cherubino," cherub; "chiesa," church; "duchi," dukes; "leghe," leagues; "ghiaccio," ice; "ghirlanda," garland; "luoghi," places.

---

\* F is used instead of *ph* in Italian. Ex. "filosofia," philosophy.



I is pronounced like the English *i*, in *sister*. Ex. "Io," I; "impero," empire.

J is pronounced like the Italian *i* (ee), only the sound of the *j* is longer, like the *y*, in *youth*. This letter is fast passing into disuse; the letter *i* has taken its place at the beginning and in the middle of a word, and two *i*'s, at the end of a word. Some grammarians however continue to use the *j*, instead of the two *i*'s, to form the plural of words which in the singular end in *io*. Ex. "libraj," booksellers; "fornaj," bakers; "calzolaj," shoemakers; "premj," rewards; "principj," principles.

L is pronounced as in English. Ex. "lago," lake.

M is pronounced as in English. Ex. "mare," sea.

N is pronounced as in English. Ex. "naso," nose.

O is generally pronounced like the *o*, in *vote*. Ex. "volto," face; "colpa," guilt; "molto," much. But in many words this letter has a broader sound, like the *o*, in *rod*. The teacher is the best guide in this matter.

In the following words and some others, the *o* has the close or the broad sound according to the meaning of the word.

*In the following words the o has the closed sound of o in VOTE.*

Botte, cask.  
Coppa, nape of the neck.  
Foro, hole.  
Ora, hour, now.  
Rocca, distaff.  
Voto, vow, vote.

*In the following words the o has the broad sound of o in ROD.*

Botte, blows.  
Coppa, cup.  
Foro, forum.  
Ora, breeze.  
Rocca, castle.  
Voto, empty.

P is pronounced as in English. Ex. "pietra," stone.

Q, which is always followed by *u*, is pronounced like the English *qu*, in *quire*. Ex. "qualità," quality; "questo," this; "cinque," five; "quando," when.

R is pronounced as in English. Ex. "radice," root.

S has two different sounds ; a sharp, hissing sound, like the *s*, in the word *spirit*, and a soft sound, like the *s*, in the word *rose*.

S has the sharp, hissing sound of *s*, in the word *spirit*, when it begins a word, and is followed by a vowel, or one of the following consonants, *c, f, p, q, t*. Ex. "scanno," bench ; "sforzo," effort ; "spia," spy ; "squadrone," squadron ; "storpio," lame.

S has the soft sound of *s*, in the word *rose*,

I. When it begins a word and is followed by one of the following consonants, *b, d, g, l, m, n, r, v*. Ex. "sbaglio," mistake ; "sdegno," disdain ; "sgabello," stool ; "sleale," disloyal ; "smalto," enamel ; "snello," nimble ; "sregolato," disorderly ; "svelare," to unveil.

II. When it is placed between two vowels. Ex. "rosa," rose ; "sposo," bridegroom.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

In the following cases, although the *s* is placed between two vowels, it has the sharp sound of the *s*, in the word *spirit*.

(a) In the words "disegno," drawing, and "disegnare," to draw.

(b) In the ending syllable of adjectives in "*oso*," "*osa*." Ex. "famoso," famous ; "valoroso," valiant.

(c) In compound words. Ex. "risonare," (ri-sonare), to resound ; "risovvenire" (ri-sovvenire), to remember ; "dicesi" (dice-si), it is said ; "preparandosi" (preparando-si), preparing himself.

The syllable *sce* is pronounced like the English *sha*, in *shape*, Ex. "scettro," sceptre ; "scelto," chosen ; "scegliere," to choose ; and the syllable *sci* is pronounced like the English word *she*. Ex. "sciocco," foolish ; "sciupare," to dissipate.

T \* is pronounced as the *t* in native. Ex. "natura," nature.

U † is pronounced like the *oo*, in *moon*. Ex. "universo," universe.

V is pronounced as in English. Ex. "vita," life.

It is to be observed that all the double consonants, *bb, cc, dd, ff, &c.*, must be pronounced distinctly—after having pronounced the first of the two consonants, the voice is kept lingering for a short while, and then the other consonant, with its accompanying vowel, is pronounced. Ex. "avreb...be," he, or she would have ; "ec...citare," to excite ; (the *cc* sound like the *chi*, in *chicory*) ; "zoc...colo," sandal ; (the *cc* sound like *kk*) ; "ad...dio," good-bye ; "ef...ficace," efficacious ; "corag...gio," courage ; "bel...lo," beautiful ; "fum...mo," we were ; "saran...no," they will be ; "cop...pa," cup, nape of the neck ; "tor...re," tower ; "buon...simo," very good ; "dot...to," learned ; "bev...vi," I drank.

---

\* T, in Italian, never has the sound of the English *t*, as in *nature*.

† U, in Italian, never has the sound of the English *u*, as in *union*.

Z, also, has two different sounds ; a soft sound, like the *ds*, in *Windsor*, and a sharp sound, like the *ts*, in *wits*.

Z has generally the soft sound when it is at the beginning of a word and followed by a single vowel. Ex. “zelo,” zeal ; “zero,” nought ; “zanzara,” gnat.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

From the above rule are excepted the following words and a few more, in which the *z* sounds like the *ts*, in *wits* :—

Zampa, paw.	Zolfo, sulphur.
Zappa, hoe.	Zoppo, lame.
Zingaro, gipsy.	Zucca, pumpkin.
Zio, uncle.	Zucchero, sugar.
Zoccolo, sandal.	Zuppa, soup.

Z has the sharp sound of *ts*, in *wits*

I. When it is followed by *ia*, *ie*, *io*, Ex. “amicizia,” friendship ; “spezie,” spices ; “protezione,” protection.

II. In all nouns ending in *anza* and *enza*. Ex. “costanza,” constancy ; “prudenza,” prudence.

III. When the *z* is doubled, in which case the pronunciation is very marked ;—after having pronounced the first *z*, the voice is kept lingering for a short while, and then other *z*, with its accompanying vowel, is pronounced. Ex. “bel...lez...za,” beauty ; “delicatez...za,” delicacy ; “prez...zo,” price.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

In the following words and a few more the *zz* are pronounced like the *ds* in *Windsor*.

Amaz...zone, amazon.	Magaz...zino, store-house.
Armoniz...zare, to harmonize.	Mez...zo, half, middle, means.
Autoriz...zare, to authorise.	Moraliz...zare, to moralize.
Az...zur...ro, azur.	Oriz...zonte, horizon.
Biz...zar...ro, fantastical.	Rez...zo, shady place.
Doz...zina, dozen.	Roz...zo, uncultivated.
Doz...zinale, common.	Ruz...zare, to play the fool.
Gaz...za, magpie.	Solen...niz...zare, to solemnize.
Gaz...zet...ta, gazette.	Ziz...zania, tare, discord. (fig).

## THE MODE OF DIVIDING WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

As it has already been stated, each of the letters of the Italian alphabet has its proper sound, never influenced by any other letter preceding or following it. If, therefore, proper attention be given to the formation of syllables, the matter of spelling in Italian becomes very easy.

## RULES.

I. One or two consonants at the beginning of a word, followed by one, two, or even three vowels, form a syllable. Ex. "ve-de-re," to see; "pre-ga-re," to pray; "fie-le," gall; "quie-to," quiet; "scuo-la," school. Except when the stress of the voice, or what is called the "Tonic Accent," falls upon one of the vowels; in that case that vowel marks the end of the syllable. Ex. "Di-o," God; "mi-o," my.

II. A consonant between two vowels makes a syllable with the second vowel. Ex. "a-mi-co," friend; "o-no-re," honour; "ri-de-re," to laugh.

III. When two consonants are in the middle of a word, one of them makes a syllable with the preceding, and the other with the following vowel. Ex. "mar-ti-rio," martyrdom; "al-ber-go," inn; "Fran-ce-se," French; "ab-bia-mo," we have; "ac-cen-to," accent; "squa-do," glance. But if the second of the two consonants is either l, m, n, or r, the two consonants are united to the following vowel. Ex. "con-siglio," counsel; "sti-gma," stigma; "cam-pa-gna," country; "ve-dre-mo," we shall see.

IV. When there are three consonants in the middle of a word, the first of them makes a syllable with the preceding, and the two others with the following vowel. Ex. "om-bra," shade; "sem-pre," always; "sor-pre-sa," surprise.

V. The consonant s, with all the other consonants which follow it, always form a syllable with the following vowel. Ex. "que-sto," this; "a-spet-to," aspect; "vo-stro," your. Except in compound words. Ex. "dis-por-re," to dispose; "dis-giun-ge-re," to unconnect, &c.

Finally, in compound words the initial preposition or adverb is spelt as one syllable. Ex. "dis-a-gio," discomfort; "tras-cu-ra-re," to neglect; "mal-a-ge-vo-le," difficult, &c.

## ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF WORDS.

"PAROLE PIANE," flat words.

As already stated (see p. 2, note \*) in most Italian words the "Tonic Accent" falls upon the penultimate, or last syllable but one. Ex. "prato," meadow; "cappello," hat; "fedele," faithful; "parlare," to speak; "finire," to finish; "canto," I sing; "giuocavamo," we were playing. These words are called "parole piane," flat words.

"PAROLE SDRUCCIOLE," slippery words.

In some words (perhaps one out of every twenty) the tonic accent falls on the ante-penultimate, that is to say on the last syllable but two. Ex. "tavola," table; "carcere," prison; "docile," docile; "vendere," to sell; "compravano," they were buying; "altissimo," very high. These words are called "parole sdrucchiole," slippery words.

"PAROLE BISDRUCCIOLE," very slippery words.

In a score of words (third persons plural of verbs of the first conjugation) the tonic accent falls upon the last syllable but three. Ex. "terminano," they end; "rotolano," they roll. These words are called "parole bisdrucchiole," very slippery words.

It is to be observed that the tonic accent in verbs never changes its place when a pronoun, or pronouns are joined to it, so that a "parola piana," by taking a pronoun after it, becomes "sdrucchiola," and when two pronouns are joined to it, it becomes "bisdrucchiola." Ex. "vendete," sell; "vendetelo," sell it; "vendetemelo," sell it to me.

"PAROLE TRONCHE," curtailed words.

There are besides the "parole piane," "sdrucchiole," and "bisdrucchiole," some words which have lost the final syllable, and are therefore called "parole tronche," curtailed words. The tonic accent in these words falls upon the last vowel, which is always marked by the grave accent (`), and is strongly pronounced. Ex.

Verità,	for veritade,	truth.
Virtù,	for virtue,	virtue.
Credè,	for credeo,	he believed.

Now, if the student will cast a glance over the paradigm of any Italian regular verb, (page 30 and following), he will see that all the forms in it are "parole piane," except three parole tronche, and eight "parole sdrucchiole," which fact clearly shows the great preponderance of "parole piane" in the Italian language.

## THE WRITTEN ACCENT.

There is only one written accent in Italian orthography, which is the grave accent, marked thus ( ` ), and which is placed

I. On the final vowel of the "parole tronche" (curtailed words), which have been explained in the previous page, such as "carità," charity; "bontà," kindness; "volontà," will.

II. On the words "più," more; "può," he, or she can; "già," already, of course; "giù," down, below; "qui," "quà," here, hither. The accent is used, in these words to prevent them being mispronounced.

Notice that there is no need of writing the accent on monosyllabic words, such; as "re," king; "fu," he, or she was; "su," on, or upon; except however on the following monosyllables, to distinguish them from others spelt in the same manner, but written without accent, and which have a different meaning.

## TABLE OF THE ACCENTED AND NON-ACCENTED MONOSYLLABLES.

È means he, she, or it is,	E means and.
DÀ means he, she, or it gives,	DA means from, by, &c.
Dì means day,	DI means of. <i>Di'</i> means <i>say (thou.)</i>
LÀ means there,	LA means the, (article) and her, it, (conjunctive pronouns).
Lì means there,	LI means them, (conj. pron.)
NÈ means neither and nor,	NE means of it, (relative pronoun), and to us, us, (conj. pron.)
SÈ means one's self, (conj. pron.)	SE means if.
Sì (short for <i>così</i> ) means yes,	SI means one's self, (conj. pron.)
TÈ means tea,	TE means thee, (conj. pron.)

III. The accent is also used in the following words to indicate where the stress of the voice should be laid in pronouncing them:—

ÀNCORA means anchor,	ANCÒRA means again.
BALÌA means magistrate, power,	una BÀLIA means a nurse.
CAPITÀNO means captain,	CÀPITANO means they happen.



## ON READING ITALIAN.

Now that the student is in possession of the rules for the pronunciation of Italian words, the following extracts from Italian classical writers are put before him, as reading exercises, because the first step to be taken when beginning to study a foreign language is to learn how to read it. In this respect the Italian language is most attractive ; it offers no serious difficulty to the student, who, with the guidance of an able teacher can, after two or three hours' practice, read it far better than an Italian could possibly know how to read English after as many weeks or months' practice.

The appended extracts will, moreover, give the student a very good idea of the harmony, imitative power, and of the expression of the Italian language.

NOTE.—In reading Italian great care must be taken not to pronounce the words separately, but rather to let them run into one another, except, of course, when they are divided by punctuation. The student must also remember that, although the vowels ending indicate the gender, number and verbal inflection of Italian words, yet in speaking and reading the last syllable of words must be pronounced softly, lowering the voice, except when the last vowel is accented ; in this latter case all the stress of the voice must be laid on the accented vowel, without however leaving any pause between it and the word which follows. Ex.

“ Parlerò a Carlo, e gli dirò la verità.”

I shall speak to Charles, and will tell him the truth.

Which must be pronounced as if it were written thus :—

“ Parlerò a Carlo, e gli dirò la verità.”

## FIRST READING EXERCISE.

Alcuno domandò a Lodovico Ariosto perchè avesse fatto fabbricare una casa così semplice egli che avea descritto nel suo *Orlando Furioso* tanti magnifici palazzi, tanti bei portici e gradevoli fontane—perchè, rispose egli, si radunano assai più presto parole che pietre.

## TRANSLATION.

Some one asked Lodovico Ariosto why he had had so simple a house built for himself, he, who had described in his *Orlando Furioso* so many magnificent palaces, so many beautiful porticos and charming fountains. —“ Because,” replied he, “ it is easier to build up with words than with stones.”



## SECOND READING EXERCISE.

BEGINNING OF ERMELINDA DEL BALZO'S LETTER TO MARCO VISCONTI.

(Taken from the *Marco Visconti* of Tommaso Grossi).

Marco,

"È una madre desolata che gettandosi ai vostri piedi, che stringendo e bagnando di amarissime lagrime la vostra mano gloriosa, vi scongiura per quanto v' ha di sacro in terra e in cielo, che le rendiate l' unica sua figlia, la gioia suprema, l'ultimo conforto de' s uoi giorni infelici. So che i potenti della terra sogliono qualche volta circondare i loro passi di tenebre, nascondere le loro vie, e consumata l'ingiustizia, per parere irreprensibili, far mostra d'irritarsi contra i gemiti stessi del misero che l' ha patita ; ma voi ! . . . no, voi avete un' anima temperata alla pietà, voi avete provato per tempo che cosa sia il dolore, e non rifiuterete la preghiera d'una povera tribolata. . . . ."

## TRANSLATION.

Marco,

It is a broken-hearted mother who, throwing herself at your feet, and grasping your glorious hand, and bathing it with very bitter tears, beseeches you, in the name of all that is most sacred on earth, and in heaven, to restore to her, her only daughter, the supreme joy, the last comfort of her unhappy days. I know that those who are powerful in this world are sometimes wont to surround their steps with darkness, to hide their ways, and, having committed the injustice, in order to appear blameless, they pretend to be irritated at the very groans of the unfortunate who has been the victim of it : but you ! . . . no, you have a soul tempered by pity, you early experienced what grief is, and will not unheed the prayer of a poor one who is in sorrow. . . . .

## THIRD READING EXERCISE.

BEGINNING OF THE DESCRIPTION OF THE TERRESTRIAL PARADISE.

(Taken from *La Divina Commedia*, of Dante ; Purgatorio, Canto xxviii.)

“Un' aura dolce, senza mutamento  
Avere in sè, mi feria per la fronte,  
Non di più colpo che soave vento ;  
Per cui le fronde, tremolando pronte,  
Tutte quante piegavano alla parte,  
U' la prim' ombra gitta il santo monte :  
Non però dal lor esser dritto sparte  
Tanto, che gli augelletti per le cime  
Lasciasser d'operare ogni lor arte :  
Ma con piena letizia l'aure prime,  
Cantando, riceveano intra le foglie,  
Che tenevan bordone, alle sue rime,  
Tal, qual di ramo in ramo si raccoglie  
Per la pineta in sul lito di Chiassi,  
Quand' Eölo Scirocco fuor discioglie.”

TRANSLATION (by B. W. Longfellow).

A softly-breathing air, that no mutation  
Had in itself, upon the forehead smote me  
No heavier blow than of a gentle wind,  
Whereat the branches, lightly tremulous,  
Did all of them bow downward toward that side  
Where its first shadow casts the Holy Mountain ;  
Yet not from their upright direction swayed,  
So that the little birds upon their tops  
Should leave the practice of each art of theirs ;  
But with full ravishment the hours of prime,  
Singing, received they in the midst of leaves  
That ever bore a burden to their rhymes,  
Such as from branch to branch goes gathering on  
Through the pine forest on the shore of Chiassi,  
When Eolus unlooses the Sirocco.

## FOURTH READING EXERCISE.

## IMAGE OF FRAUD.

(Taken from the *Orlando Furioso*, of Ariosto, Canto xiv.),

“Avea piacevol viso, abito onesto,  
Un umil volger d’occhi, un andar grave,  
Un parlar sì benigno, e sì modesto,  
Che pareva Gabriel che dicesse : Ave.  
Era brutta e deforme in tutto il resto :  
Ma mascondea queste fattezze prave  
Con lungo abito e largo ; e sotto quello,  
Attossicato avea sempre il coltello.”

## TRANSLATION (by W. S. Rose).

With pleasing mien, grave walk and decent vest,  
Fraud rolled her eye-balls humbly in her head,  
And such benign and modest speech possest,  
She might a Gabriel seem who Ave said.  
Foul was she and deformed, in all the rest ;  
But with a mantle, long and widely spread,  
Concealed her hideous parts ; and evermore  
Beneath the stole a poisoned dagger wore.

## FIFTH READING EXERCISE.

## SUMMONING OF THE INHABITANTS OF THE EVERLASTING SHADES.

(Taken from *La Gerusalemme Liberata*, of Tasso, Canto iv.).

“Chiama gli abitator dell’ ombre eterne  
Il rauco suon della Tartarea tromba ;  
Tremar le spaziose atre caverne  
E l’aër cieco e quel romor rimbomba.  
Nè sì stridendo mai, dalle superne  
Regioni del cielo il folgor piomba,  
Nè sì scossa giammai trema la terra  
Quando i vapori in sen gravida serra.”

## TRANSLATION (by J. Hoole).

The trumpet now, with hoarse-resounding breath,  
Convenes the spirits in the shades of death :  
The hollow caverns tremble at the sound ;  
The air re-echoes to the noise around !  
No louder terrors shake the distant pole,  
When through the skies the rattling thunders roll :  
Not greater tremors heave the labouring earth,  
When vapours, pent within, contend for birth !

## LESSON I.

## ON THE DEFINITE ARTICLE AND THE PREPOSITIONS

"DI," "A," "DA."

## ON THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. The Definite Article is a word placed before a noun to determine its signification. In English the word used as the definite article is *The*, which is invariable; but in Italian the definite article serves also to indicate the gender and number of nouns, and has, therefore, six forms: "Il," "Lo," "La," in the singular, and "I," "Gli," "Le," in the plural.

2. "Il," plural "i," is used before masculine words beginning with a consonant, except an *s* "*impure*," that is an *s* followed by another consonant. Ex.

"Il libro," the book,

"i libri,"\* the books.

3. "Lo," plural "gli," is used 1st, before masculine words beginning with an *s* "*impure*"; 2nd, before masculine words beginning with a vowel. In the latter case the *o*, in *lo* is suppressed and replaced by an apostrophe; the *i* of "gli" is replaced by an apostrophe only before a word beginning with an *i*.† Ex.

"Lo specchio,"	the looking-glass,	"gli specchi,"	the looking-glasses.
----------------	--------------------	----------------	----------------------

"L' albero,"‡	the tree,	"gli alberi,"	the trees.
---------------	-----------	---------------	------------

"L' idolo,"	the idol,	"gl' idoli,"	the idols.
-------------	-----------	--------------	------------

4. "La," plural "le," is used before feminine words, beginning with a consonant. If the feminine word begins with a vowel, the *a* in "la" is suppressed and replaced by an apostrophe; the *e* in "le" is replaced by an apostrophe only before a word beginning with *e*. Ex.

"La penna,"	the pen,	"le penne,"§	the pens.
-------------	----------	--------------	-----------

"L' anima,"	the soul,	"le anime,"	the souls.
-------------	-----------	-------------	------------

"L' elegia,"	the elegy,	"l'elegie,"	the elegies.
--------------	------------	-------------	--------------

5. \* Nouns ending in *o* are masculine, and form their plural by changing the *o* into *i*. Ex. "Il libro," the book. "I libri," the books.

6. † The only word before which *gli* is used for the sake of euphony instead of *i*, is "dei," gods. Ex.

"Al tempo degli dei falsi e bugiardi."—Dante.  
At the time of the false and lying gods.

‡ See page 8.

§ Most words ending in *a* are feminine, and form their plural by changing the *a* into *e*. Ex. "La penna," the pen. "Le penne," the pens.

NOTE.—There is no neuter in Italian. The rules for the gender of nouns, and the formation of the plural of nouns and adjectives are given further on.

**ON THE PREPOSITIONS "DI," OF; "A," TO, AT;  
"DA," FROM, BY.**

NOTE.—Italian grammarians call "di," "a," "da," "segnacasi," that is, signs of the cases, because these prepositions express the same thing in Italian as is expressed in Greek, Latin, and German, by the variations of the cases. There are no declensions in Italian.

**THE PREPOSITION "DI," OF.**

8. The preposition "di," like the preposition of, denotes relation of property and affinity, or connection between one thing and another. Ex.

"Il padrone di questa casa,"	the master of this house.
"Il regno di Spagna,"	the kingdom of Spain.
"Il duomo di Milano,"	the cathedral of Milan.

9. "D'," instead of "di," is used before words beginning with an *i* when the word begins with any other vowel "di" or "d'" may be used. Ex.

"Il regno d' Italia,"	the kingdom of Italy.
"La repubblica di, or d' America,"	the republic of America.

10. The English possessive case, expressed by 's, as *Peter's book*, is rendered in Italian by inverting the position of the two words, and placing the preposition "di," between them thus. "Il libro di Pietro."  
"The book of Peter."

**THE PREPOSITION, "A," TO, AT.**

11. The preposition "a," like the preposition *to*, indicates the end or object to which the action of the verb is directed. It corresponds also to the preposition *at*, and then it indicates a state. Ex.

"Vado a Parigi,"	I am going to Paris.
"Ho parlato a Carlo,"	I have spoken to Charles.
"Mio padre è a casa,"	My father is at home.

12. "Ad," may be used instead of "a," before a word beginning with a vowel, especially before an *a*. Ex.

"Sono stato ad Edinburgo,"	I have been to Edinburgh.
----------------------------	---------------------------

**THE PREPOSITION "DA," FROM, BY.**

13. The preposition "da," like the prepositions *from*, expresses the point from which a person, or a thing departs, or comes. Ex.

"Vengo da Firenze,"	I come from Florence.
---------------------	-----------------------

14. The *a* of "da" is never replaced by an apostrophe. Ex.

"È partito da Atene,"	He has left Athens.
-----------------------	---------------------

15. When the prepositions "di," "a," "da," and "in," in, precede the definite articles, "il," "lo," "la," "i," "gli," "le," they are contracted into "del," "al," "dal," "nel," "dei," &c. The prepositions "con," with; "per," for, through; and "su," on, upon; are sometimes used separately from the articles, but are often contracted with it, as it is shown in the subjoined table.

TABLE SHOWING THE PREPOSITIONS CONTRACTED  
WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLES.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
Il palazzo,	the	palace,	i	palazzi,	the	palaces.	
Del „	of the	„	dei or de'	„	of the	„	
Al „	to the	„	ai or a'	„	to the	„	
Dal „	{ from } by }	the „	dai or da'	„	{ from } by }	the „	
Nel „	in the	„	nei or ne'	„	in the	„	
Col „	with the	„	coi or co'	„	with the	„	
Pel „	for the	„	pei or pe'	„	for the	„	
Sul „	on the	„	sui or su'	„	on the	„	

Lo scrigno,	the box, or chest,	gli	scrigni,	the	chests.
Dello „	of the	„	degli	„	of the
Allo „	to the	„	agli	„	to the
Dallo „	{ from } by }	the „	dagli	„	{ from } by }
Nello „	in the	„	negli	„	in the
Collo „	with the	„	cogli	„	with the
Per lo „	for the	„	per gli	„	for the
Sullo „	on the	„	sugli	„	on the

La tavola,	the	table,	le	tavole,	the	tables.
Della „	of the	„	delle	„	of the	„
Alla „	to the	„	alle	„	to the	„
Dalla „	{ from } by }	the „	dalle	„	{ from } by }	the „
Nella „	in the	„	nelle	„	in the	„
Colla „	with the	„	colle	„	with the	„
Per la „	for the	„	per le	„	for the	„
Sulla „	on the	„	sulle	„	on the	„

## LESSON II.

## ON THE VERB "AVERE," TO HAVE.

16. The Verb is the principal word in a sentence; it expresses the existence and actions of beings and things, either in the present, past, or future time.

17. Verbs are divided into five kinds:—Active, Passive, Neuter, Pronominal, and Impersonal, or rather Unipersonal.

18. The verb "Avere," is an active verb, but, like the verb "Essere," is generally called an auxiliary verb, because the compound tenses of all other verbs are formed with the help of either of them.

## THE VERB "AVERE," TO HAVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Avere, *to have*.Aver\* avuto, *to have had*.

GERUND.†‡ PAST PARTICIPLES.

COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

Avendo, *having*. Avuto-a-i-e,§ *had*.Avendo avuto, *having had*.

\* The *e* of "avere," is cut off for the sake of euphony.

19. † The Gerund in Italian always remains invariable.

20. ‡ "Avere," and many other Italian verbs, besides a Gerund, have a present participle, ending in "ante," and "anti," or in "ente," and "enti." Ex. "Una finestra avente non vetri, ma carta." (Pellico). A window which had paper, instead of glass. "Gli Animali Parlanti." (Casti). The Speaking Animals. As this form of the verb is seldom used, modern grammarians do not give it in the conjugation; but still it should, at least, be mentioned for the guidance of the student.

21. § The past participle in Italian is variable; it ends in *o*, when it is used in connection with a noun masculine singular; in *a* for the feminine singular; in *i* for the masculine plural; and in *e* for the feminine plural. The rules for the past participle are given further on.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	PRETERITE DEFINITE.		
Io* ho,	} ha ; <i>I have, &amp;c.</i>	Aveva, or avevo,†	Ebbi,	} <i>I had, &amp;c.</i>	
Tu hai,		Avevi,	Avesti,		
Egli† ella,		Aveva ;§	Ebbe ;		
Esso, essa					
Noi abbiamo,		Avevamo,	Avemmo,		
Voi avete,		Avevate,	Aveste,		
Egolino elleno,		Avevano.§	Ebbero.		
Essi, esse					
PRETERITE INDEFINITE.		PLUPERFECT.	PRETERITE ANTERIOR.		
Ho avuto, &c.		Aveva avuto, &c.	Ebbi avuto, &c.		
<i>I have had, &amp;c.</i>		<i>I had had, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I had had, &amp;c.</i>		
FUTURE.		CONDITIONAL.			
Avrò,	} <i>I shall have, &amp;c.</i>	Avrei,	} <i>I shall have, &amp;c.</i>		
Avrai,		Avresti,			
Avrà ;		Avrebbe ;			
Avremo,		Avremmo,			
Avrete,		Avreste,			
Avranno.		Avrebbero.			
FUTURE ANTERIOR.		CONDITIONAL PAST.			
Avrò avuto, &c.		Avrei avuto, &c.			
<i>I shall have had, &amp;c.</i>		<i>I should have had, &amp;c.</i>			

22. \* As the termination of the verb is sufficient to indicate the person and number of the subject in the sentence, the personal pronouns, used as subjects, are not expressed in Italian, except either to avoid ambiguity, or when two or more pronouns (used as subjects), are employed in the same sentence, or when a particular stress is to be laid on the pronoun ; so the Italian for "I have the book," is simply "Ho il libro." This note is given in full further on.

The personal pronouns are given above simply that the student may know them, in case he wants to use them for the purpose just explained.

† "Egli," "ella," "egolino," "elleno," are used in reference to persons, whilst "esso," "essa," "essi," "esse," are generally used in reference to animals and things.

23. ‡ The first person singular of the Imperfect Indicative ends either in *a* or in *o*, but in conversation the latter form is more used, because it marks the distinction between the first and the third person singular, without the aid of the personal pronoun.

24. § The letter *v* in the third persons of the Imperfect Indicative of all verbs, except those of the first conjugation, is often omitted. Ex. "avea" ; "credeano."



## IMPERATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

MOOD.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Abbi,	Che io abbia,	Che io avessi,
Abbia ;	Che tu abbia, or abbi,	Che tu avessi,
Abbiamo,	Che {egli} abbia ;	Che {egli} avesse ;
Abbate,	Che {ella} abbia ;	Che {ella} avesse ;
Abbiano.	Che abbiamo,	Che avessimo,
	Che abbiate,	Che aveste,
	Che {eglino} abbiano.	Che {eglino} avessero.
	PRETERITE.	PLUPERFECT.
	Che io abbia avuto, &c.	Che io avessi avuto, &c.
	That I may have had, &c.	That I might have had, &c.

NOTE.—THE VOCABULARIES PRECEDING THE EXERCISES ARE TO BE LEARNT BY HEART, AS THEY WILL NOT BE REPEATED, EXCEPT AT THE END OF THIS GRAMMAR.

## VOCABULARY.

Carlo,	Charles.	Maria,	Mary.
Elisabetta,	Elizabeth.	Guglielmo,	William.
Enrico,	Henry.	Giovanni,	John.
Il libro,	the book.	Il tema,	the exercise.
La lezione,	the lesson,	Il dizionario,	the dictionary.
Il lapis,	the pencil.	La grammatica,	the grammar.
La penna,	the pen.	Il calamaio,	the ink-stand.
La carta,	the paper.	Il temperino,	the penknife.
Il quinterno,	the copy-book.	La lettera,	the letter.
La lavagna,	the slate.	Il sigillo,	the seal.
E,	and.	Già,	already.
Anche, pure,	also, too.	Oggi,	to-day.
		Ieri,	yesterday.
		Domani,	to-morrow.

## EXERCISE I.

I (22) have the book. Charles has the paper. Mary has the pen ; she has also the grammar. We have the dictionary. She has Henry's (10) copy-book. William and John have the ink-stand. I had (Imp. Ind.) already the pencil. Yesterday Elizabeth had (Imp. Ind.) the letter and\* the seal ; she had also the exercise. I shall have the lesson to-morrow. William and Charles will have the slate and (art.)† inkstand.

\* *Ed* instead of *e*, may be used before a word beginning with a vowel, for the sake of euphony. Ex. "Carlo ed io." Charles and I.

25. † In Italian the definite article must be repeated before each noun.

ON THE MODES OF ADDRESSING PEOPLE  
IN ITALIAN.

26. The Italians have three ways of addressing one another, they employ the second person singular, "Tu," thou ; or the second person plural, "Voi," you ; or the third person singular feminine, "Ella," she.

27. The second person singular, "tu," is used when parents speak to their children, and when husband and wife, brothers and sisters speak to each other. This form is used also when speaking to very intimate friends, and by masters in speaking to their servants, to show them special friendliness ; otherwise they address them in the second person plural, "voi." The Italian "tu" has, therefore, so far, a very different signification from the English *thou*.

28. In Italian "tu" is further used, as *thou* is in English, in poetry, and sometimes to express anger, or scorn towards the person addressed.

29. The second person plural, "voi," is used by ladies and gentlemen towards their inferiors. It is also employed in commerce.

30. But when the Italians wish to show respect to the person they address (whether man or woman) instead of "voi," you, they use the third person singular feminine, "ella," she, which pronoun, in that case, stands for "Vostra Signoria" (your lordship, or ladyship). Ex.

Ella ha il temperino ;	} <i>You have the penknife.</i>
instead of	
Voi avete il temperino.	

31. In speaking to more than one person "elleno," they, which stands for "le Vostre Signorie" (your lordships or ladyships), or "lor Signori," or "lor Signore" is used.\*

32. All the words in a sentence, employed in connection with "ella" and elleno," must, of course, be in keeping and agree with them. The student will better understand this point at a more advanced stage.

33. In consideration of the importance of this point, the student is strongly advised in writing the exercises in this grammar to write as many sentences as he can, both in the second person plural, and in the third person singular, as explained. When the sentences are in the Imperative Mood, it will benefit the student to write them in all the three forms.

---

34. \* What renders this matter more complicated is, that many Italians always employ, colloquially, "lei," her, "lui," him, and "loro," them, instead of "ella," she, "egli," he, and "eglino" and "elleno," they. The student is, however, advised to employ, *as a rule*, "ella," "egli," "eglino," and "elleno." Except after "come," "siccome," as, and before "stesso," "stessa," &c., "medesimo," &c., self.

## LESSON III.

ON THE INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS  
OF VERBS.

35. In Italian, a verb is conjugated interrogatively simply by placing the mark of interrogation after it; and, in speaking, by raising the voice towards the end of the sentence. The personal pronoun is sometimes required after the verb, to avoid ambiguity. Ex.

Abbiamo abbastanza denaro? Have we enough money?

Ha, or ha ella (30) il libro? Have you the book?

Ha Enrico avuto la penna? Did Henry have the pen?

36. A verb is conjugated negatively, by placing the negative particle "non" before it. Ex.

Non ho il libro. I have not the book.

Carlo non ha avuto l' orologio. Charles has not had the watch.

37. A verb is conjugated interrogatively-negatively simply by placing the mark of interrogation after it; and, in speaking, by raising the voice towards the end of the sentence. Ex.

Non ha ella il libro? Have you not the book?

Non ha Pietro veduto il quadro? Has not Peter seen the picture?

## VOCABULARY.

Il cappello, the hat.

La sciarpa, the scarf.

Il cappellino, the bonnet.

Il giornale, the newspaper.

L' abito, the coat.

Il francobollo, the postage-stamp.

La vesta, the dress.

Il denaro, the money.

Il gilè, the waistcoat.

Il tempo, the time.

---

Si, yes.	Ma, but.	o...o,	either,...or.
No, no.	Quando, when.	Non (verb) nè...nè,	neither...nor.

## EXERCISE II.

William has Henry's (10) coat. Elizabeth has Mary's bonnet. Has she (35) also the scarf? Yes. Charles has the money. We (22) have neither the newspaper nor the postage-stamp. Have you (30) the waistcoat? No, I have the hat, but I have not (36) the waistcoat. Yesterday Mary had (Imp. Ind.) the dress. John had already (Imper. Ind.) the letter. When shall we have (35) the dictionary? To-day or to-morrow. I had already had (Pluper. Ind.) the lesson. I shall have time to-morrow.

## VOCABULARY.

Mio* padre,	my father.	Il signore,	the gentleman.
Mia madre,	my mother.	La signora,	the lady.
Mio fratello,	my brother.	L'uomo,	the man.
Mia sorella,	my sister.	La donna,	the woman.
Mio figlio,	my son.	Il fanciullo,	the child.
Mio cugino,	my cousin.	Il mio* maestro,	my teacher.
Mio zio,	my uncle.	Lo (3), scolare,	the pupil.
Mio nipote,	my nephew.	Lo scrittoio,	the writing-desk.
Mio nonno,	my grandfather.	L'inchioostro,	the ink.

Gennaio,	January.	Luglio,	July.
Febbraio,	February.	Agosto,	August.
Marzo,	March.	Settembre,	September.
Aprile,	April.	Ottobre,	October.
Maggio,	May.	Novembre,	November.
Giugno,	June.	Dicembre,	December.

La primavera,	Spring.	L'autunno,	Autumn.
L'estate, (f.)	Summer.	L'inverno,	Winter.

Eccolo,	here he is,	Eccoli,	here they are.	Prima di, before.
Eccola,	here it is,	Eccole,	here they are.	Dopo, after.
	here she is.			

## EXERCISE III.

My sister has the inkstand, but she has not (36) the ink. Charles has my (38) money. My brother has Henry's (10) hat. The teacher had (Imp. Ind.) my book. The woman had (Imp. Ind.) my mother's dress. We have already had our (38) uncle's letter. Have you (35) the postage-stamp, for the (15) newspaper? Yes, here it is. Have you William's copy-books (5)? Yes, here they are. Has John my pupil's pens (7)? Yes, here they are. I shall have time for my lesson before to-morrow. My nephew shall have my coat † and hat after May. We shall not have my father's writing-desk before (art.) Spring.

38 \* My, thy, his, her, our, your, are translated by "mio," "tuo," "suo," "nostro," "vostro," "mia," "tua," "sua," "nostra," "vostra," before names of kindred, and by "il mio," "il tuo," &c., "la mia," "la tua," &c., before other nouns. Ex. "Mio padre," my father. "La mia penna," my pen.

39. † "Mio," "tuo," &c., "il mio," "il tuo," &c., must be repeated before each noun, when there are several. "Ecco qui mia madre e mia sorella," here is my mother and sister.

## LESSON IV.

## ON THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

40. The Partitive Article is a word placed before a noun to indicate that it is taken in a partitive sense. The English partitive articles are *some*, and *any*, which are translated into Italian

41. (I.) By "del," "dello," "della," to express quantity. Ex.

Ho comprato della carta	I have bought some paper
e dell' inchiostro.	and ink.

(II.) By "dei," "degli," "delle," to express number. Ex.

Gli mandai degli abiti	I sent him some French
francesi e delle armi inglesi.	dresses and English arms.

42. But when *some* means a limited number, a few ("pochi"), it is translated either by "qualche," which is invariable and is followed by a noun in the singular, or by "alcuno," which agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers. Ex.

Vado a comprare qualche	I am going to buy some (a few)
libro spagnuolo.	Spanish books.

Non aveva seco che alcuni	He only had with him some
amici.	(a few) friends.

43. "Del," "dello," "della," "qualche," "alcuno," "alcuni," "alcune," are repeated before each noun, when there are several. Ex.

Ho comprato della carta	I have bought some paper
e dei libri.	and books.

44. When *some* or *any* is omitted, or could be omitted in English, the partitive article is omitted, or could be omitted in Italian. Ex.

V'erano uomini, donne, e	There were men, women,
persino fanciulli.	and even children.

Ho veduto in Inghilterra	I have seen in England
cavalli bellissimi.	very fine horses.

45.—When in a question there is a partitive article "del," "della," &c., in giving an answer in Italian, the partitive article must be represented by the pronoun "ne," which is always expressed in Italian, and the verb must be repeated in full. Ex.

Ha, or ha ella del denaro?	Have you any money?
Sì, ne ho.	Yes, I have.

Avremo dell' acqua?	Shall we have some water?
Sì, ne avremo.	Yes, we shall.

## VOCABULARY.

L'oro,	gold.	Il rame,	brass.
L'argento,	silver.	Il lottone,	copper.
L'acciaio,	steel.	Lo stagno,	lead.
Il ferro,	iron.	La latta,	tin.

## EXERCISE IV.

I have some (41) silver, but I have not (36) any gold. Has your brother any iron? Yes; he has some iron, copper, (43) and brass. Mary had (Imp. Ind.) some paper, but she had not any pens. Charles has neither the grammar, nor the dictionary. My father has some money. We have not any ink. Have we (35) any postage-stamps? Yes, we have; (45) here they are. Yesterday we had (Imp. Ind.) my uncle's dictionary. Have you (30) any pencils? No, I have not any. When shall I have some books? To-day, or to-morrow. Henry and William have money, but John has not any.

## ON THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

46. The Indefinite Article is a word placed before a noun to limit its signification. The English indefinite article is a or an, which is translated in Italian by

47. "Un," before any masculine noun beginning either with a consonant or a vowel. Ex.

Un giorno felice.	A happy day.
Un uomo amabile.	An amiable man.

48. "Uno," before a masculine noun beginning with *s* "*impure*," or the letter *z*. Ex.

Uno scolare diligente.	A diligent pupil.
Uno zio ricchissimo.	A very rich uncle.

49. "Una," before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant. Ex.

Una signora francese.	A French lady.
-----------------------	----------------

50. "Un'" before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel. Ex.

Un' anima sensibile.	A sensitive soul.
----------------------	-------------------

51. When in a question there is an indefinite article, "un," "uno," &c., in giving an answer, in Italian the indefinite article, preceded by the pronoun "ne" (of them), must be repeated, if the answer be in the affirmative; but if the answer be negative "ne," only, is expressed; "uno" is omitted. Ex:

Ha, or ha ella un dizionario italiano?	Have you an Italian dictionary?
Sì, ne ho uno.	Yes, I have.
No, non ne ho.	No, I have not.

## VOCABULARY.

L'aria,	air.	Il fuoco,	fire.		
La luce,	light.	L'acqua,	water.		
<hr/>					
Lunedì,	Monday.	Una chiesa,	a church.		
Martedì,	Tuesday.	La mia casa,	my house.		
Mercoledì,	Wednesday.	Il giardino,	the garden.		
Giovedì,	Thursday.	La strada,	the street.		
Venerdì,	Friday.	Una stanza, or camera,	a room.		
Sabato,	Saturday.	La finestra,	the window.		
Domenica,	Sunday.	La mia sedia,	my chair,		
<hr/>					
Perchè ?	why ?	Non (verb) mai,	} never.	Sempre,	always.
Perchè,	because.	No mai,		Subito,	at once.
Mai ?	ever ?	Giammai.		Fra poco,	very soon.

## EXERCISE V.

Mary has a pencil. We have a writing-desk. Have you (35) ever had a lesson from my (38) master ? \* Never. Charles has never had a penknife. When shall I have my dictionary ? Very soon, on † Friday, or on Saturday. To-morrow Elizabeth will have a dress, and Mary will have a bonnet. Henry shall not have my brother's slate. Shall we not (37) have some water ? Yes, we shall. (45) William do not have (thou) (27-33) ‡ any fire in your room to-day. He had his book on § a chair, in my cousin's garden.

\* Master is translated into Italian by "maestro," when it means a teacher, and by "padrone," when it means a master, (an owner).

52. † On is not translated into Italian before Monday, Tuesday, &c., nor before any name of time. Ex. "Il primo gennaio." On the first of January.

53. ‡ In Italian the present tense of the Infinitive Mood is used instead of the second person singular of the Imperative Mood, used negatively. Ex.

Guglielmo, non aver tanta  
confidenza in te stesso.

William, do not have so  
much confidence in yourself.

54. § The preposition "su," takes an r ("sur"), for the sake of euphony, before a vowel. Ex.

"Sur una tavola." On a table.

## LESSON V.

## THE VERB "ESSERE," TO BE.

55. The verb **Essere** is a neuter verb, but, like "avere," it is generally called an auxiliary verb, because the compound tenses of all other verbs are formed with the help of either of them.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PAST.
<b>Essere, to be.</b>		<b>Essere stato,* to have been.</b>
GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.
<b>Essendo, being.</b>	<b>Stato-a-i-e, been.</b>	<b>Essendo stato, having been.</b>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	PRETERITE DEFINITE.	
Sono,	} <i>I am, &amp;c.</i>	Era, or ero,	Fui,	} <i>I was, &amp;c.</i>
Sei,		Eri,	Fasti,	
È ;		Era ;	Fu ;	
Siamo,		Eravamo,	Fummo,	
Siete,		Eravate,	Foste,	
Sono.		Erano.	Furono.	

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.	PLUPERFECT.	PRETERITE ANTERIOR.
Sono stato, &c.	Era stato, &c.	Fui stato, &c.
<i>I have been, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I had been, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I had been, &amp;c.</i>

## FUTURE.

Sarò,	} <i>I shall be, &amp;c.</i>
Sarai,	
Sarà ;	
Saremo,	
Sarete,	
Saranno.	

## CONDITIONAL.

Sarei,	} <i>I should be, &amp;c.</i>
Saresti,	
Sarebbe ;	
Saremmo,	
Sareste,	
Sarebbero.	

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Sarò stato, &c.
<i>I shall have been, &amp;c.</i>

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

Sarei stato, &c.
<i>I should have been, &amp;c.</i>

56. \* Notice that the compound tenses of "essere," are formed by using the same verb as auxiliary, and that its past participle "stato," is variable, so that the Italian for "I have been," is "Sono stato, or stata," (literally "I am been").



IMPERATIVE  
MOOD.

Sii,  
Sia ;  
Siamo,  
Siate,  
Siano or sieno.

*Be (thou), &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Che io sia,  
Che tu sia, or sii,  
Che <sup>[enti]</sup><sub>[ella]</sub> sia ;  
Che siamo,  
Che siate,  
Che <sup>[eglino]</sup><sub>[e] sieno</sub> siano, or sieno.

*That I may be, &c.*

## IMPERFECT.

Che io fossi,  
Che tu fossi,  
Che <sup>[enti]</sup><sub>[ella]</sub> fosse ;  
Che fossimo,  
Che foste,  
Che <sup>[eglino]</sup><sub>[e] siano</sub> fossero.

*That I might be, &c.*

## PRETERITE.

Che io sia stato, &c.  
That I may have been, &c.

## PLUPERFECT.

Che io fossi stato, &c.  
That I might have been, &c.

## VOCABULARY.

Buono,*	good.	Uno,	I.	Primo,	I.
Grande,	tall, large.	Due,	2.	Secondo,	II.
Piccolo,	small, little.	Tre,	3.	Terzo,	III.
Bello,	beautiful, fine.	Quattro,	4.	Quarto,	IV.
Felice,	happy.	Cinque,	5.	Quinto,	V.
Orgoglioso,	proud.	Sei,	6.	Sesto,	VI.

Dove,	where.	Se,	if.	Dentro,	in, within.
Qui,	here.	Molto,	very, much.	Fuori (di),	out, without.

Questo, mas.	} this.	Questi, mas.	} these.
Questa, fem.		Queste, fem.	

## EXERCISE VI.

John is tall, but his brother Charles is little. This church is very beautiful. Where is Elizabeth? She (22) is here. These tables are small, but they are good. Where are Henry and John? They are not (36) here; they are in our uncle's garden. Where shall we be on Thursday? We shall be in our uncle's castle. Where have you been (30 and 56)? I have been in my brother's room. Will you be here on Wednesday? Yes; I shall be either here, or at my sister's house. Be (33) good, William, and you will be happy. Do (33 and 53) not be so proud.

57. \* Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun they qualify; those ending in *o*, change the *o* into *a*, for the feminine, and form their masculine plural by changing *o* into *i*, and their feminine plural by changing *a* into *e*, as "buono," "buona," "buoni," "buone." Adjectives ending in *e* do not change for the feminine; the plural for both genders is formed by changing the *e* into an *i*; as "grande," "grandi."

## THE VERB "ESSERE," WITH "CI" AND "VI."

58. The verb "Essere" is very often employed as an impersonal verb, with the words "ci," and "vi."

59. When "ci" and "vi" (used with *essere*) are adverbs of place, they signify *here* (ci), and *there* (vi), but when they are relative pronouns, they stand for the English *in it*, *in them*.

THE VERB *ESSERE*," WITH "CI" AND "VI."

## AFFIRMATIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.	PRESENT.	Esserci, or <i>esservi</i> , <i>to be there, or in it, &amp;c.</i>
	PAST.	Esserci stato, <i>to have been there, &amp;c.</i>
	GERUND.	Essendoci, <i>being there, &amp;c.</i>
	COMP. OF G.	Essendoci stato, <i>having been there, &amp;c.</i>
INDICATIVE MOOD.	PRESENT.	{ C'è, or v'è, <i>there is, or there is in it, &amp;c.</i> Ci sono, <i>there are, &amp;c.</i>
	IMPERFECT.	{ C'era, <i>there was, &amp;c.</i> C'erano, <i>there were, &amp;c.</i>
	PRET. INDEF.	{ C'è stato, or stata, <i>there has been, &amp;c.</i> Ci sono stati, or state, <i>there have been, &amp;c.</i>
	FUTURE.	{ Ci sarà, Ci saranno, } <i>there will be, &amp;c.</i>

## INTERROGATIVELY.

C'è? *is there?* &c.  
Ci sono, *are there?* &c.

## NEGATIVELY.

Non c'è, *there is not, &c.*  
Non ci sono, *there are not, &c.*

## VOCABULARY.

Un anno,	a year.	Una settimana,	a week.
Un mese,	a month.	Un giorno,	a day.

Poco, little.      Troppo, too much.      Troppo poco, too little.

## EXERCISE VII.

Charles is the first, I am the second, and Elizabeth is the third. My brother's house is too large. Where is Mary? She is in my sister's room. Is there a man in the street? Yes; there is a man and a child. Is there a table in our garden? No; there are three chairs, but there is no (36) table. There are seven days in the week; Monday is the first day. There was a beautiful looking-glass in my uncle's room. There is too much ink in this inkstand. Is there a pencil in my brother's writing desk? No, there are three pens, and some paper. There will be a book for the pupil, and a beautiful writing-desk for the teacher.

## LESSON V.

## ON THE VERBS.

60. As stated on page 18, the verb is the principal word in the sentence—it is *its very soul*;—it expresses the existence and actions of beings, and things, either in the present, past, or future time.

61. Verbs are divided into five kinds—Active, Passive, Neuter, Pronominal, and Impersonal, or rather Unipersonal; besides the two Auxiliaries, which have already been given.\*

62. Verbs are either Regular, Irregular, or Defective.

63. Italian regular verbs are now generally classified into three† conjugations; which are distinguished by the termination of the Present of the Infinitive Mood.

The first ends in ARE, as COMPRARE, to buy.

„ second „ „ ERE, as CRĒDERE, to believe.

„ third „ „ IRE, as SERVIRE, to serve.

\* There are altogether 7,000 † verbs in Italian, of which 6,000 are of the first conjugation, and are all regular, except four:—“Andare,” to go; “Dare,” to give; “Fare,” to do, and to make; and “Stare,” to be in health, to dwell, and to remain.

The second conjugation, includes 500 verbs, of which only 60 are regular;—of the 440 irregular, 60 end in “ere,” long, (Parole piane, like temere, to fear), and 380 in “ere,” short; (Parole sdrucciole, like “Crēdere,” to believe).

There are 500 verbs of the third conjugation, in “ire,” of these 430 are regular, conjugated either like “Servire,” (40 of them), or like “Unire,” (390 of them);—70 are irregular.

† Several Italian grammarians, in imitation of the Latin grammarians, have classified the Italian verbs into four conjugations;—the 1st in “are,” like amare; the 2nd in “ere,” long, like “temere”; the 3rd in “ere,” short, like “crēdere,” and the 4th in “ire,” like “sentire.” But this classification offers no advantage soever; for the regular verbs of both classes in “ere,” are conjugated alike; the Preterite Definite is in “ei,” or “etti,” “esti,” “è,” or “ette,” in the singular; and in “emmo,” “este,” “erono,” or “ettero,” in the plural, whether the “ere,” in the Infinitive be long or short.

Besides, the attempted division has no advantage for the Classical student, in as much as very few of the Italian verbs, which are derived from the second Latin conjugation, preserve the original quantity in “ere,” long. Many have changed the Latin “ere,” long, into an Italian “ere,” short; thus “mordere,” has become “mordere”; “ardere”; “ardere,” “respondere,” “rispondere”; “ridere,” “ridere.” On the other hand, a few of the third Latin conjugation have changed the “ere,” short, into an Italian “ere,” long; thus “sapere,” has become “sapere”; “cadere,” “cadere.” Again some verbs which end in “ere,” long, in Latin, have become Italian verbs of the first conjugation, thus “exercere,” has become “esercitare,”; whilst others, which in Latin end in “ere,” long, or short, have become Italian verbs in “ire”; as “reverere,” “riverire”; “florere,” “fiorire”; “concupere,” “concepire”; &c.

† These figures are only approximately correct.

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF \*ACTIVE VERBS.

## MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION IN "ARE."

## "COMPRARE," TO BUY.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Compr are, *to buy*

## PAST.

Avert† compr ato, *to have bought*.

## GERUND.

Compr ando,  
*buying.*

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Compr ato-a-i-e.‡  
*bought.*

## COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

Avendo compr ato,  
*having bought.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Compr o,  
Compr i,  
Compr a;  
Compr iamo,  
Compr ate,  
Compr ano.§*I buy, &c.*

## IMPERFECT.

Compr ava-o,  
Compr avi,  
Compr ava;  
Compr avamo,  
Compr avate,  
Compr avano.*I bought, &c.*

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Compr ai,  
Compr asti,  
Compr ò;  
Compr ammo,  
Compr aste,  
Compr arono.*I bought, &c.*

64. \* Active Verbs are either Active Transitive, or Active Intransitive.

65. An Active Transitive Verb is a verb expressing an action which passes to the object in the sentence, without the help of a preposition. In the phrase "Giovanni ha comprato il libro," John bought the book, "Giovanni" is the subject, "ha comprato," is the verb, *active transitive*, and "il libro" is the object, called *direct object*.66. An active intransitive verb is a verb expressing an action which passes to the object in the sentence through a preposition. In the phrase, "Maria ha parlato a Carlo," "Maria" is the subject, "ha parlato," the verb, *active intransitive*, and "a Carlo" is the object, in this case called *indirect object*.

67. † The compound tenses of all active verbs are formed with "avere."

68. ‡ The past participle of active transitive verbs remains invariable, that is to say ends in o, when the *direct object* in the sentence follows it. Ex. "Ho comprato tre libri." I have bought three books. But when the *direct object* precedes the past participle, the latter is variable. Ex. "Ecco i libri che ho comprati." Here are the books I have bought.

69. The past participle of active intransitive verbs always remains invariable. Ex.

"Ci hanno parlato." They spoke to us.

§ See page 8.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.	PLUPERFECT.	PRETERITE ANTERIOR.
Ho comprato, &c. <i>I have bought, &amp;c.</i>	Aveva comprato, &c. <i>I had bought, &amp;c.</i>	Ebbi comprato, &c. <i>I had bought, &amp;c.</i>
FUTURE.	CONDITIONAL.	
Compr erò, Compr erai, Compr erà ; Compr eremo, Compr erete, Compr eranno. } <i>I shall buy, &amp;c.</i>	Compr erei, * Compr eresti, Compr erebbe ; Compr eremmo, Compr ereste, Compr erebbero. }	<i>I should buy, &amp;c.</i>
FUTURE ANTERIOR.	CONDITIONAL PAST.	
Avrò comprato, &c. <i>I shall have bought, &amp;c.</i>	Avrei comprato, &c. <i>I should have bought, &amp;c.</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Compr a, } <i>Buy (don't), &amp;c.</i> Compr i ; } Compr iamo, } Compr ate, } Compr ino. }	Che io compr i, Che tu compr i, Che [chi] compr i ; Che compr iamo, Che compr iate, Che [chiano] compr ino. }	Che io compr assi,* Che tu compr assi, Che [chi] compr asse ; Che compr assimo, Che compr aste, Che [chiano] compr assero. }
PRETERITE.	PLUPERFECT.	
Che io abbia comprato, &c. <i>That I may have bought, &amp;c.</i>	Che io avessi comprato, &c. <i>That I might have bought, &amp;c.</i>	

### OBSERVATIONS ON SOME VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

70. Verbs ending in "care," and "gare," as "Peccare," to sin, and "Pregare," to pray, require an *h* after the *c* and *g*, when followed by *e* or *i* ; because those two consonants (*c* and *g*), are to be pronounced hard through the whole conjugation. Ex. "pecco," "pecchi," "pecca," "pecchiamo," &c. ; "prego," "preghi," "prega," "preghiamo," &c.

71. Verbs ending in "ciare" and "giare," as "Scacciare," to drive away, and "Mangiare," to eat, drop the *i* before another *i*, or an *e* ; as "Scaccero," &c. ; "Mangerei," &c.

72. \* Before or after a verb employed in the Conditional, there is always another verb preceded by the conjunction "se," if ; this latter verb has the same form as the Imperfect Subjunctive. Ex.

Se io avessi denaro, comprarei questa casa.

If I had money, I would buy this house.

# ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT REGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

NOTE.—The appended list does not contain the regular verbs of the first conjugation exemplified in the five following exercises ;—they are given, in the Infinitive form, underneath the exercises in which they occur. This plan has been adopted to avoid useless repetition.

Abbondare (di),	to abound (with).	Notare,	to note.
Alloggiare,	to lodge.	Nuotare,	to swim.
Amare,	to love, to like.	Onorare,	to honour.
Ammazzare,	to kill.	Osservare,	to observe.
Aumentare,	to augment.	Perdonare (a),	to forgive.
Baciare,	to kiss.	Pesare,	to weigh.
Ballare,	to dance.	Portare,	to carry.
Cercare,	to look for.	Presentare,	to present.
Coniugare,	to conjugate.	Privare,	to deprive.
Copiare,	to copy.	Pronunciare,	to pronounce.
Disprezzare,	to despise.	Raccontare,	to relate.
Durare,	to last, to endure.	Rassomigliare (a),	to resemble.
Evitare,	to avoid.	Rispettare,	to respect.
Fumare,	to smoke.	Rubare,	to steal.
Giudicare,	to judge.	Rovinare,	to ruin.
Gridare,	to cry.	Scancellare,	to erase.
Guadagnare,	to earn.	Scappare,	to escape.
Guardare,	to look.	Scherzare,	to joke.
Guastare,	to spoil.	Sigillare,	to seal.
Guidare,	to guide, to drive.	Spaventare,	to frighten.
Impegnare,	to pledge.	Sperare,	to hope.
Imparare,	to learn.	Stampare,	to print.
Ingannare,	to deceive.	Stimare,	to esteem.
Invidiare,	to envy.	Stracciare,	to tear.
Licenziare,	to dismiss.	Svegliare,	to awake.
Meritare,	to deserve.	Tagliare,	to cut.
Migliorare,	to improve.	Trascurare,	to neglect.
Minacciare,	to threaten.	Volare,	to fly.
Mirare,	to gaze, to look at.	Voltare,	to turn.

## VOCABULARY.

L' Inghilterra,	England.	Inglese,	English.
La Francia,	France.	Francese,	French.
La Germania,	Germany.	Tedesco,	German.
L' Italia,	Italy.	Italiano,	Italian.
La Spagna,	Spain.	Spagnuolo,	Spaniard.
<hr/>			
La situazione,	the situation.	La porta,	the door, gate.
Questa città,	this town, city.	La lingua,	the language.
<hr/>			
Facile,	easy.	Difficile,	difficult.

NOTE.—In this and the following exercises, the verbs are given in the Present of the Infinitive Mood ; it is left to the student to put them in the proper mood, tense, number, and person.

## EXERCISE VIII.

I do\* not (36) find (a) the Italian† language difficult. William speaks (b) French,‡ but does\* not speak German. I am buying§ some (41) books for my brother. I blame (c) my sister, because she was listening (d)§ at the door. Shall you (30 and 35) vote (e) to-morrow? Yes. John found|| this letter on (54) a chair, in my brother's room. I have sent (f) Henry's Spanish grammar to my mother. Charles always¶ studies (g) in our uncle's garden. We admire (h) the situation of this town. I have left (i) William's book on my writing-desk.

(a) Trovare. (b) Parlare. (c) Biasimare. (d) Ascoltare. (e) Votare. (f) Mandare. (g) Studiare. (h) Ammirare. (i) Lasciare.

73. \* The auxiliaries *do*, *does*, *did*, are not translated into Italian.

74. † Adjectives indicating nationality are put after the noun they qualify, in Italian. Ex.

La lingua italiana.

The Italian language.

75. ‡ English, French, &c., meaning the English, the French language, &c., are also translated by "l' inglese," "il francese," &c., or "la lingua inglese," "la lingua francese," &c.

76. § The participial Anglicisms "I am buying," "She was listening," "I shall be writing," &c., are translated into Italian as if they were "I buy," "she listened," (Imp. Ind.) "I shall write," &c.

77. || Translate as if it were "has found," because, in Italian, a verb is used in the Preterite Definite only when the time at which an action occurred, is stated.

78. ¶ "Sempre," always, and "mai," ever, never, are generally placed after the verb.

## VOCABULARY.

L'Europa,	Europe.	Europeo,	European.
L'America,	America.	Americano,	American.
La Scozia,	Scotland.	Scozzese,	Scotch.
L'Irlanda,	Ireland.	Irlandese,	Irish.

---

Una carta geografica,	a map.	Un quadro,	a picture.
Il mondo,	the world.	La larghezza,	the breadth.
Una scoperta,	a discovery.	La lunghezza,	the length.
Una rivoluzione,	a revolution.	Una pera,	a pear.
La riunione,	the meeting.	Una ciriegia,	a cherry.
Una regola,	a rule.	Dell' uva,	some grapes.
Il pianoforte,	the pianoforte.	Dell' acquavite,	some brandy.
Questa sera,	this evening.	Del vino,	some wine.
Ieri sera,	last night.	Della birra,	some beer.

---

Sociale,	social.	Letterario,	literary.
Politico,	political.	Scientifico,	scientific
Commerciale,	commercial.	Artistico,	artistic.

## EXERCISE IX.

Elizabeth plays (a) and sings, (b) but does not draw (c). I have bought two Italian (74) books, one for you, (30 and 33) and one for William. You were dining (76) (d) when I was studying. Charles was drawing a map of England. Mary was embroidering (e) a waistcoat for my father. The discovery of America caused (f) (Pret. Def.) a revolution in the commercial world. When I entered (g)\* the room he was working (h). Did you speak (Pret. Def.) at the meeting last night? No, I did not (36) speak. (Pret. Def.) I shall explain (i) this rule this evening. I shall have built (j) my house before October. Measure (k) (33) the length and (25) breadth of this room, before† buying the pianoforte. We shall preserve (l) these cherries with (in) brandy. If (72) I had money, I would buy this fine picture.

(a) Suonare. (b) Cantare. (c) Disegnare. (d) Pranzare, or desinare. (e) Ricamare. (f) Cagionare. (g) Entrare. (h) Lavorare. (i) Spiegare. (j) Fabbricare, or Edificare. (k) Misurare. (l) Conservare.

79. \* "Entrare," to enter, is a neuter verb, and is always followed by "in." Ex. "Entrai nel teatro alle sei." I entered the theatre at six o'clock.

80. † All Prepositions in Italian are followed by the Present of the Infinitive Mood. Ex.

"Prima di andare a Parigi." Before going to Paris.  
 Except the preposition "dopo," after, which precedes the Past of the Infinitive. Ex.  
 "Partirò dopo aver pranzato." I shall start after dinner.



## LESSON VI.

## ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns are words which take the place of names of persons, in order to avoid the repetition of those names.

There are three persons,—the first who speaks, the second who is spoken to, and the third who is spoken of.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
SUBJECT.	Io,*	I.	Noi,	we.
DIR. OBJ.†	Me, or mi,	me.	Noi, or ci, or ne,‡	us.
INDIR. OBJ.	{ Di me,	of me.	{ Di noi,	of us.
	{ A me, or mi,	to me.	{ A noi, or ci, or ne,†	to us.
	{ Da me,	[from by] me.	{ Da noi,	[from by] us.
	{ Con me,§	with me.	{ Con noi,	with us.
	{ Per me, or mi,	for me.	{ Per noi,	for us.
	{ In me,	in me.	{ In noi,	in us.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
SUBJECT.	Tu,	thou.	Voi,	you.
DIR. OBJ.	Te, or ti,	thee.	Voi, or vi,	you.
INDIR. OBJ.	{ Di te, or ti,	of thee.	{ Di voi, or vi,	of you.
	{ A te, or ti,	to thee.	{ A voi, or vi,	to you.
	{ Da te,	[from by] thee.	{ Da voi,	[from by] you.
	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

\* The personal pronouns "Io," "di me," &c., are sometimes accompanied by "stesso," "stessa," or "medesimo," "medesima," (self), to express emphasis, or discrimination. Ex.

L'ho scritto, io stesso.

I wrote it myself.

† See Rules 65 and 66.

‡ "Ne" is used instead of "ci" only in the lofty style, and for the sake of euphony.

Ex.

Egli ne lasciò privi dei  
mezzi di vivere.

He left us without the  
means of living.

Lasciandoci ne disse: "Che  
Dio vi protegga!"

On leaving us he said:  
"May God protect you!"

§ "Meco," "teco," "seco," are sometimes used instead of "con me," "con te," "con se."

Ex.  
Li condussi meco.

I took them with me.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

## MASCULINE.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
SUBJECT.	Egli, or esso,*	Eglino, or essi,	
	ei, e',†	he, or it.	e',‡ they.
DIR. OBJECT.	Lui, or lo,§	him.	Loro, or li,¶ them.
	Di lui,	of him.	Di loro, of them.
INDIR. OBJ.	{ A lui, or gli,	to him.	A loro, to them.
	{ Da lui,	[ <sup>from</sup> <sub>by</sub> ] him.	Da loro, [ <sup>from</sup> <sub>by</sub> ] them.

## FEMININE.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
SUBJECT.	Ella, (30) or	she, or it,	Elleno, (31) or they, or
	essa,	or you (sing.)	esse, you (plur.)
DIR. OBJECT.	Lei, (34) or la,	her, you.	Loro, (34) or le, them, you.
	Di lei,	of her, you.	Di loro, of them.
INDIR. OBJ.	{ A lei, or le,	to her, you.	A loro, to them.
	{ Da lei,	[ <sup>from</sup> <sub>by</sub> ] her.	Da loro, [ <sup>from</sup> <sub>by</sub> ] them.
	&c.	&c.	&c. &c.

81. \* "Egli," "Ella," "Eglino," "Elleno," are used only in speaking of persons, whilst "Esso," "Essa," "Essi," "Esse," serve for persons and things. The latter pronouns, "esso," "essa," &c., remain invariable, and are used as "Objects," as well as "Subjects" of the verb. Ex. "di esso," "ad esso," &c., "di essi," "ad essi," &c.

† "Ei," or "e'," are abbreviations of "egli."

‡ "E'," which is an abbreviation of both "egli" and "eglino," is now only used in poetry.

82. "Desso," "dessa," "dessi," "desse," are elegantly used instead of "egli," "ella," &c., "esso," "essa," &c., with the verbs "Essere," and "Parere." Ex.

Quegli è desso, e non parla. It is he, himself, and does not speak.

Tu mi pari dessa, davvero. You seem to me the very person.

§ In poetry, "il" is sometimes used instead of "lo."

83. || "Non lo" is often contracted into "nol." Ex.

Nol disse a nessuno. He did not say it to anybody.

84. ¶ "Gli" is used instead of "li," as "Direct Object," in the plural, only before a word beginning with a vowel, or an *s* "impure." Ex. "Gli odo," I hear them; "Gli stimo," I esteem them.

## THE REFLECTIVE PRONOUN "SÈ."

NOTE.—The pronoun "sè" is not used as subject of the verb. When used as a Direct or Indirect object, it serves for both genders and numbers.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
DIRECT OBJECT.	Sè, or si,	Himself, herself, one's self, themselves.
INDIR. OBJECT.	{ Di sè,	{ Of himself, or of herself, one's self, themselves.
	{ A sè, or si,	{ To himself, or to herself, one's self, themselves.
	{ Da sè,	{ From or by himself, or herself, one's self, themselves.
	. &c.	&c.

## ON THE USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## § I. AS SUBJECTS OF VERBS.

85. As the termination of the verb, in Italian, is sufficient to indicate the person and number of the subject in the sentence, the personal pronouns, used as *Subjects*, "Io," "Tu," "Egli," "Ella," &c., are not expressed, except

## I. To avoid ambiguity. Ex.

Non credo che tu parli bene. (27).	I do not think that you speak well (that thou speakest) well.
Se tu parlassi, sarei ruinato.	If you were (thou wert) to speak I should be ruined.

Notice that the above sentences without the "tu" would be ambiguous.

## II. When two or more pronouns, used as Subjects, are employed in the same sentence. Ex.

Mentre io scrivo questa lettera, Whilst I write this letter, you will  
voi preparerete i miei bauli. prepare my trunks.

## III. When a particular stress is laid on the pronoun. Ex.

Io parlo quando bisogna. I do speak when it is needful.

## § II. AS OBJECTS OF THE VERB.

86. The pronouns "me," "te," "lui," "lei," "sè," "noi," "voi," "loro," which are used as *Direct Objects*, (65) (Accusatives, in the Classical languages) and "a me," "a te," "a lui," "a lei," "a sè," "a noi," "a voi," "a loro," which are used as *Indirect Objects* (66) (Datives, in the Classical languages) are called "Disjunctive Personal Pronouns," because they are never joined to the verb.\*

87. The pronouns "mi," "ti," "gli," "le," "si," "lo," "la," "ci," "vi," "li," and "le," are called "Conjunctive Personal Pronouns," because when they follow the verbs by which they are governed, they are joined to them.

## ON THE DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

88. The Disjunctive Personal Pronouns "me," "te," "lui," &c., and "a me," "a te," "a lui," &c., are always placed after the verb, and are used

I. When in the same phrase there are two or more pronouns, relating to different persons, used as direct, or indirect objects. Ex.

Il generale parlò a me, ma	The general spoke to me, but he
non volle parlare a mio co-	would not speak to my brother-
gnato.†	in-law.

Diede una* ghinea a me, e dieci	He gave me a guinea, and ten
scellini a mio nipote.	shillings to my nephew.

Fece la statuetta per me, e non per	He made the statuette for me,
voi.	and not for you.

II. When we desire to lay a particular stress on the pronoun. Ex.

Parlo a Lei, Signor Conte; perchè	I speak to you, Count; why do
non mi risponde?	you not answer me?

---

\* "Di me," "di te," "di lui," &c., "a me," "a te," &c., "da me," "da te," &c., "con me," &c., "per me," &c., are also *Indirect Objects*, and called "Disjunctive Personal Pronouns."

† NOTE.—The student is advised to learn by heart the examples appended to the rules.

## ON THE CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## § I. PLACED BEFORE THE VERB.

89. The Conjunctive Personal Pronouns “mi,” “ti,” “gli,” &c., are used when there is only one *Direct*, or *Indirect Object* in the same phrase ;—they are, as a rule, placed before the verb. Ex.

Egli mi parla con rispetto.	He spoke to me with respect.
Perchè mi parlate rozzamente?	Why do you speak to me rudely?
Non ci hanno mai invitati d'andar da loro.	They never invited us to their house.
Gli dipinse un bellissimo ritratto di suo padre.	He painted a beautiful portrait of his father for him.

90. When the verb ends with an accented vowel, as “parlò,” he or she spoke, “crederò,” I shall believe, the conjunctive pronoun may be placed after the verb and joined to it ; in which case the consonant of the pronoun, except the *g* of *gli*, is doubled and the accent suppressed. Ex.

Egli mandommi a Milano.	He sent me to Milan.
Appena ci vide, invitocci a pranzo.	As soon as he saw us he invited us to dinner.

## § II. PLACED AFTER THE VERB.

91. The Conjunctive Personal Pronouns “mi,” “ti,” “gli,” &c., are placed after the verb, and joined to it in the following cases.

I. When they come with a verb in the Infinitive ; in which case the final *e* of the Infinitive is dropped, and if the Infinitive ends in *re*, the final *re* is omitted. Ex.

Mi promise di accompagnarmi fino a Livorno.	He promised to accompany me as far as Leghorn.
Voglio condurlo a vedere il Palazzo di Cristallo.	I will take him to see the Crystal Palace.
Vuol' ella prestarmi il suo temperino?	Will you lend me your pen-knife?

92. II. With the Gerund. Ex.

Scrivendogli, gli farò sapere la mia intenzione.	In writing to him, I shall let him know my intention.
Partì, promettendole di venire l'indomani.	He left, promising her to return on the morrow.

93. III. With the Compound of the Gerund; in which case the auxiliary "essendo," or "avendo," is omitted, and the past participle alone is expressed, and is inflected, according to the subject in the sentence (when "essendo" is omitted), or the object (when "avendo" is omitted).  
Ex.

Datami la chiave dell'uscio di casa, andò via.	Having given me the key of the street-door he went away.
Messosi a sedere sur un panchetto, si mise a raccontarci novelle.	Having seated himself on a stool, he began to tell us tales.

94. IV. With the second person singular, and first and second persons plural of the Imperative, used affirmatively.\* Ex.

Parlami schiettamente, caro fratello.	Speak to me frankly, dear brother.
Fammi il piacere di tradurmi questo sonetto.	Please translate this sonnet for me.
Vestiamoci presto.	Let us dress ourselves quickly.
Portatemi carta, penna e calamaio.	Bring me a pen, ink, and paper.

95. When several verbs govern the same pronouns, the pronouns are generally repeated after each verb. Ex.

Gli stimiamo e gli amiamo (84). We esteem and love them.

96. The English neuter objective pronouns, *it, them*, are rendered in Italian by the conjunctive pronouns, "lo," "la," "li," and "le," which in this case, serve as relative pronouns, and agree with the antecedent to which they relate. They precede or follow the verb according to the rules given for the Conjunctive Personal Pronouns. Ex.

Che bel cavallo! quanto lo avete pagato?	What a fine horse! how much did you pay for it?
Se avessi buoni libri, li leggerei.	If I had some good books, I would read them.
In Roma vi sono bellissime chiese; le ha vedute?	In Rome there are some very fine churches; have you seen them?

---

\* Here the student must be reminded of what has been stated on page 21 (rule 30) concerning the modes of addressing people in Italian. The *third* person singular, feminine, (*Ella*) is used more often than "Voi"; in the former case the Conjunctive Personal Pronouns precede the verb. If it were not for this fact, the Personal Pronouns, used as *Objects*, would almost always be placed after the verb.

## VOCABULARY.

Londra,	London.	Firenze,	Florence.
Parigi,	Paris.	Berlino,	Berlin.
Federico,	Frederick.	Filippo,	Philip.
Giorgio,	George.	Margherita,	Margaret.
Odoardo,	Edward.	Luigia,	Louisa.
Questo caffè,	this coffee.	Il latte,	the milk.
Questo tè,	this tea.	La crema,	the cream.
Questacioccolata,	this chocolate.	Il, or lo zucchero,	the sugar.

## EXERCISE X.

Where did you (30) buy (have you bought) this coffee? I bought it (96) in \*London. Does (73) Edward speak Italian? Yes, he does.† Where did you study (have you studied) the French Language? I studied it in France. He always (78) speaks of me, but I never speak of him. Has Louisa sent to-day's newspaper to my father? Yes; she sent (has sent) it this morning. Charles always speaks to me, (89) when he meets (a) me. William spoke to me (88) but did not speak to my sisters. My father taught (b) us yesterday, and will teach us to-day. My grandfather never (78) sends us here. I speak to you Philip. I shall not speak to him to-day. Will you buy some pears? Yes, I shall.

(a) Incontrare.

(b) Insegnare.

97. \* The preposition *in* is translated into Italian by "a," before the name of a town, and by "in," before the name of a continent, an empire, a kingdom, a duchy, or a province.

98. † In answering a question, the verb contained in the question, and not merely the translation of "I do," "he does," "I have," "he did," "I will," &c., must be expressed in the answer, in Italian, and the verb must be in the same tense and person as in the question; and if there is a noun in the question, that noun also must be represented in the answer, by a pronoun, agreeing in gender and number with the noun it represents. Ex.

92. Giovanni, parla italiano? Does John speak Italian?  
 Scriva Sì, lo parla. Yes, he does.

This rule holds good also when "I do," "I did," "I have," &c., refer to a Part, or verb in the sentence. Ex.

l'indomani gli promise di dargli il mio orologio, I had promised to give him my watch,  
 diedi ieri. and I did so yesterday.

## LESSON VII.

## ON DOUBLE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

99. When two conjunctive pronouns are governed by the same verb, and one is an "indirect" and the other a "direct object," the "indirect" precedes the "direct object," and the *i* of "mi," "ti," "ci," "vi," is changed into *e*. When these pronouns come before the verb they are written separately, but when they are placed after the verb, they are written together and joined to it.\* Ex.

Prometteva sempre di prestarmi il suo fucile, ma non me lo prestò mai. He always promised to lend me his gun, but he never lent it me.

Voleva vendermelo a qualunque prezzo. He wanted to sell it to me at any price.

Aspettiamo i quadri; mandateceli il più presto possibile. We are waiting for the pictures; send them to us as soon as possible.

TABLE SHOWING A VERB IN THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, GOVERNING  
TWO CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

THE VERB IN THE 2ND  
PERSON PLURAL.

Mandatemelo,  
——— la,  
——— li,  
——— le,

Send him, or it, to me,  
,, her ,, ,,  
Send them to me,  
,, ,, ,,

THE VERB IN THE 3RD  
PERSON SINGULAR.

Me lo mandi.  
,, la ,,  
,, li ,,  
,, le ,,

100. The pronoun "gli," to him, to her, to you, (30) when followed by a relative pronoun, instead of changing the final *i* into *e*, like the other conjunctive pronouns, takes an *e*, after the final *i*, and forms one word with the relative pronoun. In this case "glielo," "gliela," &c., are used instead of "le lo," "le la," which would not sound well. Ex.

Glielo presterò, ma non posso darglielo.\*† I will lend it to him, or to her, or to you, but I cannot give it to him.

Mi ha promesso di mandarglieli quanto prima.\*† He promised that he would send them to him, or to her, or to you, presently.

\* The pronouns "me lo," "te lo," "ce lo," "ve lo," are sometimes contracted into "mel," "tel," "cel," "vel." Ex. Vel dissi ieri. I told it to you yesterday.

† The sense of the sentence always helps to clear up much of the ambiguity of phrases such as this.



TABLE SHOWING THE VERB IN THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, GOVERNING  
"GLI," AND ANOTHER CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUN.

THE VERB IN THE 2ND  
PERSON PLURAL.

Mandateglielo,  
&c.

Send him, or it, to him,  
or to her, &c.

THE VERB IN THE 3RD  
PERSON SINGULAR.

Glielo mandi,  
&c.

101. "A loro," to them, serves for both genders, and is used with or without the preposition "a;" it always follows the verb, and is never joined to any other word. Ex.

Mi promise di dar loro, or a loro tutto l'aiuto che potrebbe. He promised to give them all the help he could.

A che serve dar loro, or a loro buoni consigli? What is the use to give them good advice?

Presentai loro, or a loro il mio socio. I introduced my partner to them.

TABLE SHOWING THE VERB IN THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, GOVERNING  
"LORO," (OR A LORO) AND A CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUN.

THE VERB IN THE 2ND  
PERSON PLURAL.

Mandatelo loro,  
———la „  
———li „  
———le „

Send him, or, it to them,  
„ her „ „  
„ them „ „  
„ „ „ „

THE VERB IN THE 3RD  
PERSON SINGULAR.

Lo mandi loro.  
La „ „  
Li „ „  
Le „ „

102. In Italian an answer must contain the noun expressed in the question, or a pronoun in its stead; the verb, also, must be repeated in the answer. Ex.

Ha, or ha ella preso la mia ombrella? Have you taken my umbrella?

No, non l'ho presa. No, I have not.

Ha ella, or avete comprato questi bei fiori? Have you bought these beautiful flowers?

Sì, li ho comprati. Yes, I have.

## VOCABULARY.

Dio,	God.	Il sole,	the sun.
Il cielo,	Heaven, the sky.	La luna,	the moon.
La terra,	the earth.	Le stelle,	the stars.
Caro amico, dear friend.		Un album,	the album.
Un regalo, a present.		Il giorno di nascita, the birthday.	
Ora, adesso, now.		Volontieri,	willingly.

## EXERCISE XI.

Speak to me (90) now, because I shall not have time to-morrow. He was speaking (76) to his master when you called (a) him. When will you send her (89) the pictures? I will send them to her (100) this evening. Do not forget (b). Will you help (c) me, (91) my dear friend? Yes, willingly, I will not abandon (d) you in this danger. You never pay attention to (e) me. Will you lend (f) me your pen-knife? Yes, I will (98). Shall you send him a present for his birthday? Yes, we shall send him a fine album. I have brought Henry's book to\* show it to you (100) and to your sister. Send them to her at once. They have ordered (g) him to speak (104) to his uncle's friend.

(a) Chiamare. (b) Dimenticare. (c) Aiutare. (d) Abbandonare.  
(e) Badare a. (f) Prestare. (g) Comandare.

103. \* When the preposition "to" means "in order to," it is translated into Italian by "per" or "onde." Ex.

Sono venuto per parlarle di un affare. I have come to speak to you about an important affair.

Egli abbandonò la moglie per (or onde) He abandoned his wife to save his mother.

104. When "to" is a mere verbal prefix, it is translated into Italian either by "di," or "a."

I. By "di," when it is preceded by an adjective, or a past participle (except "pronto," *ready*, "disposto," *disposed*, "prono," *inclined*, "preparato," prepared), and a verb expressing an idea of rest, or state. Ex.

Sono decisi di andare a Venezia. They have decided to go to Venice.

105.—II. To is translated by "a," when it is preceded by a verb expressing motion, or "pronto," "disposto," "prono," and "preparato." Ex.

Venga a trovarmi fra un paio di mesi. Come to see me in a couple of months,

Andate ad impostare queste lettere. Go and post these letters.

## LESSON VIII.

## ON THE WORDS "CI," "VI," AND "NE."

106. Besides being used as conjunctive personal pronouns, (see page 36) "ci," "vi," and "ne," are used as relative pronouns, and as adverbs.

"Ci," and "vi," used as relative pronouns, signify *of it, of them; about it, about them; to it, to them; for it, for them.* Ex.

Non indovinerei, se ci pensassi I could not guess it, if I thought a  
un anno. year about it.

Questo quadro mi va a genio; I like this picture very much; I  
ci ho fatto fare una bella have had a fine frame made  
cornice. for it.

Ci ho dato una mano di vernice. I have given it a coat of varnish.

107. When "ci" and "vi" are used as adverbs, they must refer to an antecedent; "ci" means *here*, and "vi" means *there*.\* Ex.

Non sono mai stato in Italia, ma I have never been to Italy, but  
faccio i conti d'andarvi questa I intend to go there next  
primavera. Spring.

Francesco vien qui tutte le mat- Francis comes here every morn-  
tine, e ci sta fino alle otto della ing, and stays till eight o'clock in  
sera. the evening.

108. "Ne," used as a relative pronoun, means *some, any, of it, of them; concerning him, her, it; for it, for them, from it, from them.*

As stated already, (Rule 45) "ne," in an answer, must always be expressed in Italian, (although *some, any, of it, of them, &c.*, are seldom expressed in English), and the verb, in the answer, must be expressed in full. Ex.

Avrebbe per caso qualche libro Have you perchance any Italian  
italiano, da prestarmi? books to lend me?

Sì, ne ho due o tre, e glieli pre- Yes, I have two or three, which I  
sterò volentieri. shall be very glad to lend you.

Sono certo che le piace la I am certain that you are fond of  
musica, perchè ne parla sem- music, for you are always speak-  
pre. ing about it.

Vado ai bagni di mare ogni anno, I go to the sea-side every year, and  
e ne derivo molto bene. I derive great benefit from it.

109. \* For the sake of euphony "ci" is sometimes used instead of "vi." Ex.  
Andatevi, e ci troverete Carlo. Go there, and you will find Charles.

110. When "ne" is used as an adverb, it means *hence* or *thence*. Ex.  
 Le domandai se fosse mai stata a Parigi. I asked her if she had ever been to Paris.

Ne vengo appunto, rispose ridendo. I have just returned from there, she replied with a smile.

111. When "ci," "vi," and "ne," are used as relative pronouns, and as adverbs, they occupy the same position with regard to the verb as when they are conjunctive personal pronouns (From rule 89-103) and the *i* of "ci," "vi," is changed into *e* (99) when "lo," "la," "li," "le," "ne," follow them. Ex.

Egli va sovente al teatro, e vi mena anche sua sorella. He often goes to the theatre and takes also his sister with him.

Non l'ho mai condotto a casa nostra; ma ho promesso di condurcelo quanto prima. I have never taken him to our house, but I have promised to do so very soon.

#### ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS USED REFLECTIVELY.

112. We have seen (page 36, note \*) that when *myself*, *thysself*, &c., are used merely to express emphasis, or to indicate discrimination, they are translated by "stesso," "stessa," &c., or "medesimo," "medesima," &c.; But when these pronouns are used as Reflective Pronouns, they are expressed by "mi," "ti," "si;" "ci," "vi," "si," and are subject to all the rules given above, about the personal and relative pronouns. Ex.

Non mi vesto mai prima delle dieci. I never dress before ten o'clock.

Preparati, or preparatevi, or si prepari (33) subito. Get ready without losing a moment.

Afferro i panni di suo fratello, e se ne vesti in meno che non si dice. He took hold of his brother's clothes, and dressed himself with them in less than no time.

#### ON THE WORD "ECCO," USED WITH THE PERSONAL, AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

113. When a conjunctive pronoun, personal, or relative, is joined to the word "ecco," *here is*, *there is*, *here are*, *there are*, it must be placed after it, and joined to it; as, "ecco mi," "eccoti," "eccoci," "eccoli," "eccole," "eccone." \* Ex.

Eccomi qui, che cosa commanda? Here I am, what do you wish?  
 Eccoci pronti a seguirvi. Here we are ready to follow you.  
 Se ama le incisioni, eccone delle bellissime. If you are fond of engravings, here are some beautiful ones.

---

\* Sometimes "ecco" is followed by two pronouns. Ex.  
 Eccoteli umiliati. Here they are humbled.

## VOCABULARY.

Un orologio,	a clock.	Il fiore,	the flower.
Il mio orioło,	my watch.	Il frutto,	the fruit.
Una catena,	a chain.	Questo paese,	this country.
Un' ombrella,	an umbrella.	Alla campagna,	into the country.
Un ombrellino,	a parasol.	Una casa di campagna,	a country house.
Un porta-lapis,	a pencil-case.	Uno sbaglio,	a mistake.
Questo canestro,	this basket.	Alla posta,	to the past.
<hr/>			
Rosso,	red.	Giallo,	yellow.
Turchino, or azzurro,	blue.	Bianco,	white.
Verde,	green.	Nero,	black.

## EXERCISE XII.

I have brought (a) my exercise to (103) show (b) it to you (99); you will not find many mistakes in it. Henry's uncle has brought us (89) a basket of flowers. I should not have spoken to her, if I had thought (c) of \* it (107). Before (88) speaking to us, speak to my father. He was speaking to us, when they called him into the garden. Have you an English watch? Yes, I have (51). If I had thought of it, I should never have lent him my pencil-case. When will you take (a) these letters (7) to the post? I will take them at once, if you will lend me your umbrella. Have you spoken to William? No, I have not, but I will speak to him as soon as † I have time. Where did (73) you buy (Pret. Indef.) this beautiful basket? I bought it in ‡ Spain. Have you paid (c) for § your parasol? No, but I will pay for it when Henry returns (e).

(a) Portare. (b) Mostrare. (c) Pensare. (d) Pagare. (e) Ritornare.

114. \* *To think of* is translated by "*pensare a.*" "*Pensare di,*" means *to have an opinion about.* Ex.

"Che pensa di questo poema?" What do you think of this poem?

115. † A verb, preceded by the adverbs *as soon as, when, &c.*, indicates a future time; therefore the future, and *not* the present tense, must be used in Italian. Ex.

"Quando avrò tempo." When I have time.

116. ‡ When a word begins with an *s* "*impure,*" (2) and is preceded by a word ending with a consonant, an *i* is put before the *s*, for the sake of euphony. Ex.

"L' ho comprato in Ispagna." I bought it in Spain.

117. § For *is not* translated in Italian.

## LESSON IX.

## MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN "ERE."

## "CREDERE," TO BELIEVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Cred ere, *to believe.*

## PAST.

Aver cred uto, *to have believed.*

## GERUND.

Cred endo,  
*believing.*

## PART PARTICIPLE.

Cred uto-a-i-e,  
*believed.*

## COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

Avendo cred uto,  
*having believed.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Cred o,  
Cred i,  
Cred e ;  
Cred iamo,  
Cred ete,  
Cred ono. } *I believe, &c.*

## IMPERFECT.

Cred eva-o,  
Cred evi,  
Cred eva ;  
Cred evamo,  
Cred evate,  
Cred evano. } *I believed, &c.*

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Cred ei, or etti,  
Cred esti,  
Cred è, ette ;  
Cred emmo,  
Cred este,  
Cred erono, or ettero. } *I believed, &c.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Ho creduto, &c.  
*I have believed, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Aveva creduto, &c.  
*I had believed, &c.*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Ebbi creduto, &c.  
*I had believed, &c.*

## FUTURE.

Cred erò,  
Cred erai,  
Cred erà ;  
Cred eremo,  
Cred erete,  
Cred eranno. } *I shall believe, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL.

Cred erei,  
Cred eresti,  
Cred erebbe ;  
Cred eremmo,  
Cred ereste,  
Cred erebbero. } *I should believe, &c.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Avrò creduto, &c.  
*I shall have believed, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

Avrei creduto, &c.  
*I should have believed, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

MOOD.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Cred i,	Che io cred a,	Che io cred essi,
Cred a ;	Che tu cred a,	Che tu cred essi,
Cred iamo,	Che [e <sup>gli</sup> <sub>ella</sub> ] cred a ;	Che [e <sup>gli</sup> <sub>ella</sub> ] cred esse ;
Cred ete,	Che cred iamo,	Che cred <del>ess</del> imo,
Cred ano.	Che cred iate,	Che cred este,
	Che [e <sup>gli</sup> <sub>ella</sub> ] cred ano.	Che [e <sup>gli</sup> <sub>ella</sub> ] cred <del>ess</del> ero.

*That I may believe, &c.*

*That I might believe, &c.*

## PRETERITE

## PLUPERFECT.

Che io abbia creduto, &c.

Che io avessi creduto, &c.

*That I may have believed, &c. That I might have believed, &c.*

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT OF THE 60 (SEE PAGE 30)

## REGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION, LIKE "CREDERE."

Assistere, (a)	to assist.	Pendere,	to hang up.
Battere,	to beat.	Precedere,*	to precede.
Cedere,*	to yield.	Premere,*	to press.
Dipendere,	to depend.	Procedere,	to proceed.
Eccedere,*	to exceed.	Resistere, (e)	to resist.
Fendere, (b)	to split.	Ricevere,*	to receive.
Fremere,*	to rage.	Riflettere,	to reflect.
Gemere,	to groan.	Ripetere,	to repeat.
Godere,	to enjoy.	Spandere,*	to shed.
Mescere, (c)	to pour out.	Splendere,	to shine.
Mietere,	to reap.	Temere,	to fear.
Pascere, (d)	to feed.	Vendere,	to sell.

\* Those verbs in the above list, marked thus\*, form their Preterite Definite either in *ei*, or in *etti*; as "Cedei," or "cedetti," "cedesti," "cedè," or "cedette;," "cedemmo," "cedeste," "cederono," or "cedettero." But all the others have only the termination *ei*.

## IRREGULARITIES.

- (a) The Past Participle of "Assistere" is "assistito."
- (b) ... .. "Fendere" is "fesso."
- (c) ... .. "Mescere" is "mesciuto."
- (d) ... .. "Pascere" is "pasciuto."
- (e) ... .. "Resistere" is "resistito."

## VOCABULARY.

Il generale,	the general.	La vista,	the sight.
Il colonello,	the colonel.	Il Natale,	Christmas.
Un soldato,	a soldier.	La Pasqua,	Easter.
Un ordine,	an order.	Il medico,	the doctor.
Una fortezza,	a fortress.	Questo dono,	this gift.
La guarnigione,	the garrison.	L' abilità,	ability.
Un cannone,	a cannon.	La confidenza,	confidence.
Un fucile,	a gun.	Qual pegno,	as a mark.
Il campanello,	the bell.	Una volta,	once.
La folla,	the crowd.	Due volte,	twice.

Signore,	{ Mr. Sir. gentleman.	Signora,	{ Mrs. Madam. lady.	Signorina,	{ Miss. Madam. young lady.
----------	-----------------------------	----------	---------------------------	------------	----------------------------------

## EXERCISE XIII.

I receive (a) letters from Mr.\* James. The soldiers have received the general's orders. My sister enjoys (b) good health in this country. He groans (c) at the sight of the doctor. Receive (33) this gift as a mark of my confidence. Believe me, (33) general,† we shall beat (d) them. Who is knocking at (e) (76) the door? Charles; he has already knocked twice, and rang (f) the bell. The cannon beat down (g) the fortress. I have received a letter from my father; he thinks (h) that he will be in London before Christmas. I have sold (i) my (38) country-house to Mr. John. Yesterday he lost (j) his umbrella in the crowd. We have resolved (k) not to yield (l) to him (89.)

(a) Ricevere. (b) Godere. (c) Gemere. (d) Sconfiggere. (e) Battere, or Bussare a. (f) Suonare. (g) Buttar giù (to beat down). (h) Credere. (i) Vendere. (j) Perdere. (k) Risolvere. (l) Cedere.

118. \* In speaking, or writing to persons the words Mr., Sir, Messrs., Gentlemen, Mrs., Madam, Miss, \*Misses, Mesdames, Ladies, are translated by "Signore," "Signori," "Signora," "Signorina," "Signorine," "Signore." But in speaking or writing about persons, Mr., Sir, &c., are translated by "il Signore," "i Signori," "la Signora," "la Signorina," "le Signorine," "le Signore." When "Signore" is followed by the name of the person referred to, the *e* is omitted. • Ex.

Il Signor John ha ricevuto una lettera dalla Signora James. Mr. John has received a letter from Mrs. James.

I Signori John sono amici delle Signorine James. Messrs. John are friends of the Misses James.

119. † The Italians, out of politeness, use the words Signor and Signora before titles, dignities, and names of rank, when they address a person equal or superior to themselves. Ex.

"Caro Signor Marchese." Dear Marquis.



## VOCABULARY.

Questo bicchiere,	this glass.	Questa capra,	this goat.
La mia volontà,	my will.	La montagna,	the mountain.
Fortificazioni,	entrenchments.	La notizia,	the news.
Il tumulto,	the turmoil.	Questa rosa,	this rose.
Il mio pensiero,	my thought.	La bellezza,	the beauty.
Il suo successo,	his success.	La freschezza,	the freshness.
Un' intrapresa,	an undertaking.	Una fragola,	a strawberry.
<hr/>			
Contento,	glad.	Insieme,	together.
Valorosamente,	bravely.	Tutto,	everything.
Quietamente,	quietly.	Ad onta di,	in spite of.
Che cosa?	what?	Per piacere,	if you please.

## EXERCISE XIV.

What does (73) this boy sell? He sells fruit and flowers; yesterday he sold me some beautiful roses, and some fine strawberries. Who will succeed\* him (89) in the business?† I think his brother Edward will succeed him. He and his sister have left London, and are enjoying the beauty of the country, and the freshness of the air. She shudders (a) at the thought of seeing (b) (89) him. Do you believe the news‡ he told us? No, I do not believe it (96). It does not depend upon (c) my sister. The French fought (d) bravely, but they were driven (e) (Pret. Def.) from the (15) entrenchments. The goats will browse (f) quietly on the mountains in spite of the turmoil of men. I shall never forget (g) the happy days we have enjoyed together. Everything will depend upon the success of the undertaking. Shall I pour (h) you out a glass of wine, Mr. John? Yes, if you please. If (72) I had lost this letter, I should have been ruined (i).

- (a) *Fremere*. (b) *Vedere*. (c) *Dipendere da*. (d) *Combattere*.  
 (e) *Scacciare*. (f) *Pascere*. (g) *Dimenticare*. (h) *Mescere*, (to pour out).  
 (i) *Rovinare*.

120. \* When *to succeed* means *to take the place of*, it is translated by "Succedere;" but when it means *to be successful*, it is translated by "Riuscire."

121. † *Business* is translated by "Affare," "Affari," when it means *concern, affair*; but it is translated by "Negozio," when it means *shop, trade*.

122. ‡ In Italian the relative pronoun "che," or "il quale," &c., *that*, or *which* cannot be omitted before the personal pronoun. Ex.

Le notizie che ci recò. The news (that) he brought us.

## LESSON X.

## MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN "IRE."

## "SERVIRE," TO SERVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Serv ire, *to serve.*

## PAST.

Aver serv eto, *to have served.*

## GERUND.

Serv endo,  
*serving.*

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Serv ito-a-i-e,  
*served.*

## COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

Avendo serv ito,  
*having served.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Serv o,  
Serv i,  
Serv e ;  
Serv iamo,  
Serv ite,  
Serv ono.*I serve, &c.*

## IMPERFECT.

Serv ivo, or serv ivo,  
Serv ivi,  
Serv iva ;  
Serv ivamo,  
Serv ivate,  
Serv ivano.

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Serv ii,  
Serv isti,  
Serv i ;  
Serv immo,  
Serv iste,  
Serv irono.*I served, &c.**I served, &c.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Ho servito, &c.,  
*I have served, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Aveva servito, &c.,  
*I had served, &c.*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Ebbi servito, &c.  
*I had served, &c.*

## FUTURE.

Serv irò, &c.  
Serv irai,  
Serv irà ;  
Serv iremo,  
Serv irete,  
Serv iranno.*I shall serve, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL.

Serv irei, &c.  
Serv iresti,  
Serv irebbe ;  
Serv iremmo,  
Serv ireste,  
Serv irebbero.*I should serve, &c.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Avrò servito, &c.  
*I shall have served, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

Avrei servito, &c.  
*I should have served, &c.*

IMPERATIVE  
MOOD.

Serv i,  
Serv a ;  
Serv iamo,  
Serv ite,  
Servv ano.

*Serve (thou), &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Che io serva,  
Che tu serva,  
Che <sup>[egli]</sup> serva ;  
Che serviamo,  
Che serv iate,  
Che <sup>[egli]</sup> servano.

*That I may serve, &c.*

## IMPERFECT.

Che io serv issi,  
Che tu serv issi,  
Che <sup>[egli]</sup> serv isse ;  
Che serv issimo,  
Che serv iste,  
Che <sup>[egli]</sup> serv issero.

*That I might serve, &c.*

## PRETERITE.

Che io abbia servito, &c.  
*That I may have served, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Che io avessi servito, &c.  
*That I might have served, &c.*

NOTE.—There are but a few of the verbs in "ire" (about 40) that are conjugated exactly like "Servire." The following are the most important.

Aprire,	to open.	Offrire,	to offer.
Coprire,	to cover.	Partire,	to depart.
Consentire,	to consent.	Seguire,	to follow.
Cucire,	to sew.	Sentire,	to hear, to feel.
Dissentire,	to dissent.	Soffrire,	to suffer.
Divertire,	to amuse.	Vestire,	to dress.

Most verbs in "ire" (about 430 out of 500) are conjugated regularly, like "Servire," except that in some persons of the Present Indicative, of the Imperative Mood, and of the Present Subjunctive, they retain the *i* and require the syllable *sc* before the termination.

The following tenses of the verb "Finire," to finish, are given to show how most verbs in "ire" are conjugated.

INDICATIVE  
MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Fin isco,  
Fin isci,  
Fin isce ;  
Fin iamo,  
Fin ite,  
Fin iscono.

*I finish, &c.*

IMPERATIVE  
MOOD.

Fin isci,  
Fin isca ;  
Fin iamo,  
Fin ite,  
Fin iscano.

*Finish (thou), &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE  
MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Che io fin isca,  
Che tu fin isca,  
Che <sup>[egli]</sup> fin isca ;  
Che fin iamo,  
Che fin iate,  
Che <sup>[egli]</sup> fin iscano.

*That I may finish, &c.*

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS CONJUGATED  
LIKE "FINIRE."

Abbellire,	to embellish.	Incivilire,	to civilize, polish.
Abolire,	to abolish.	Indebolire,	to weaken.
Aderire,	to adhere.	Inferocire,	to become ferocious.
Agire,	to act.	Infievolire,	to weaken.
Apparire,	to appear.	Ingerirsi,	to meddle with.
Ardire,	to dare.	Inghiottire,	to swallow.
Arricchire,	to enrich.	Inorgogliare,	to become proud.
Arrossire,	to blush.	Intenerire,	to touch, move.
Bandire,	to banish.	Invaghire,	to enchant, charm.
Capire,	to understand.	Istruire,	to instruct.
Colorire,	to colour.	Languire,	to languish.
Colpire,	to strike.	Marcire,	to rot.
Condire,	to season.	Muggire,	to bellow.
Conferire,	to confer.	Munire,	to furnish.
Definire,	to define.	Nitrire,	to neigh.
Differire,	to differ, delay.	Obbedire,	to obey.
Digerire,	to digest.	Patire,	to suffer.
Diminuire,	to diminish.	Perire,	to perish.
Distribuire,	to distribute.	Profferire,	to proffer.
Eseguire,	to execute.	Progredire,	to progress.
Esibire,	to offer.	Proibire,	to prohibit.
Fallire,	to fail.	Pulire,	to clean.
Favorire,	to favour.	Punire,	to punish.
Ferire,	to wound.	Riverire,	to reverence.
Finire,	to finish.	Sbigottire,	to disconcert.
Fiorire,	to flourish.	Schernire,	to despise.
Garantire,	to guarantee.	Scolorire,	to discolour.
Guarire,	to cure.	Sparire,	to disappear.
Impallidire,	to turn pale.	Starnutire,	to sneeze.
Impaurire,	to frighten.	Stupire,	to astonish.
Impazzire,	to become mad.	Suggerire,	to suggest.
Impedire,	to hinder.	Svanire,	to vanish.
Incallire,	to harden.	Tradire,	to betray.

## VOCABULARY.

Questo ragazzo,	this boy.	Un bosco,	a wood.
Questa fanciulla,	this girl.	Una foresta,	a forest.
Una scienza,	a science.	Una sorgente,	a spring.
La scuola,	the school.	Un fiume,	a river.
Il mio dovere,	my duty.	L'uccello.	the bird.
Un articolo,	an article	Il piacere,	the pleasure.
Questa famiglia,	this family.	L'animo,	the mind.
La mia condotta,	my conduct.	L'anima,	the soul.
La fragranza,	fragrance.	Una legge,	a law.
<hr/>			
Nuovo,	new.	Dolce,	sweet.
Vecchio,	old.	Amaro,	bitter.
<hr/>			
Severamente,	severely.	Giornalmente,	daily.
Probabilmente,	probably.	Onestamente,	honestly.

## EXERCISE XV.

They punish (a) him too severely. He has enriched (b) science with \* new discoveries. Does this boy understand (c) Italian? Yes, he understands it (96) but he does not speak it. Will you have finished (d) before to-morrow? Probably I shall. (98) I shall finish this exercise before (80) going to school. He fulfils (e) his duty honestly. He inserts (f) daily a small article in the newspapers. They will never betray (g) us. He will inform (h) my family of my bad conduct. Yesterday my sister was sewing (i) from morning to night. The singing† of the birds, the coolness of the woods, the murmuring (j) of the springs, the fragrance of the flowers contribute (k) greatly to the pleasure of the mind. He will obey (l) the laws of this country. We shall start (m) for the country on Thursday.

(a) Punire. (b) Arricchire. (c) Capire. (d) Finire. (e) Adempiere. (f) Inserire. (g) Tradire. (h) Istruire. (i) Cucire. (j) Mormorare. (k) Contribuire. (l) Obbedire. (m) Partire.

123. \* "With," preceded by a past participle, is translated by "di," of, except when it means *in company with*, or *by means of*; then it is translated by "con." Ex. "Uno scettro adorno di gioie." A sceptre adorned with jewels.

124. † To translate into Italian the participial Anglicisms "the singing of the birds," "the murmuring of the springs," &c., the verb must be employed in the present of the Infinitive Mood; or the participle, "singing," &c., must be changed into a noun. Ex.

Il cantare, or il canto degli ucelli mi diletta oltremodo.

The singing of birds delights me immensely.

## LESSON XI.

## ON VERBS USED PASSIVELY.

A verb used passively expresses an action received by the subject in the sentence. The passive voice, in Italian, is formed by using the auxiliary "essere," followed by the past participle (variable) of the verb to be expressed passively. Ex.

"I suoi fratelli sono molto stimati."

His brothers are much esteemed.

## THE VERB "STIMARE," TO ESTEEM.

## CONJUGATED PASSIVELY.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Essere stimato-a,  
*to be esteemed.*

## PAST.

Essere stato stimato-a,  
*to have been esteemed.*

## GERUND.

Essendo stimato-a,  
*being esteemed.*

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

Stimato-a-i-e,  
*esteemed.*

## COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

Essendo stato stimato-a,  
*having been esteemed.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Sono stimato-a,  
Sei stimato-a,  
È stimato-a ;  
Siamo stimati-e,  
Siete stimato-a-i-e,  
Sono stimati-e.

## IMPERFECT.

Ero or stimato-a,  
Eri stimato-a,  
Era stimato-a ;  
Eravamo stimati-e,  
Eravate stimato-a-i-e,  
Erano stimati-e.

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Fui stimato-a,  
Fosti stimato-a,  
Fu stimato-a ;  
Fummo stimati-e,  
Foste stimato-a-i-e,  
Furono stimati-e.

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Sono stato stimato, &c. *I have been esteemed, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Ero stato stimato, &c. *I had been esteemed, &c.*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Fui stato stimato, &c. *I had been esteemed, &c.*

## FUTURE.

Sarò stimato-a,  
Sarai stimato-a,  
Sarà stimato-a ;  
Saremo stimati-e,  
Sarete stimato-a-i-e,  
Saranno stimati-e.

## CONDITIONAL.

Sarei stimato-a,  
Saresti stimato-a,  
Sarebbe stimato-a ;  
Saremmo stimati-e,  
Sareste stimato-a-i-e,  
Sarebbero stimati-e.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Sarò stato stimato, &c.  
*I shall have been esteemed, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

Sarei stato stimato, &c.  
*I should have been esteemed, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Sii stimato-a, *be (thou) esteemed, &c.*  
 Sia stimato-a ;

## PLURAL.

Siamo stimati-e,  
 Siate stimato-a-i-e,  
 Siano stimati-e.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Che io sia stimato-a,  
 Che tu sia stimato-a,  
 Che [eg<sup>li</sup>la] sia stimato-a ;  
 Che siamo stimati-e,  
 Che siate stimato-a-i-e,  
 Che [eg<sup>li</sup>no] siano stimati-e.

*That I may be esteemed,  
 &c.*

## IMPERFECT.

Che io fossi stimato-a,  
 Che tu fossi stimato-a,  
 Che [eg<sup>li</sup>ella] fosse stimato-a ;  
 Che fossimo stimati-e,  
 Che foste stimato-a-i-e,  
 Che [eg<sup>li</sup>no] fossero stimati-e.

*That I might be es-  
 teemed, &c.*

## PRETERITE.

Che io sia stato stimato-a, &c.

*That I may have been esteemed, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Che io fossi stato stimato-a, &c.

*That I might have been esteemed, &c.*

## VOCABULARY.

Il re,	the king.	Una battaglia,	a battle.
La regina,	the queen.	Un pericolo,	a danger.
Un principe	a prince.	Un ballo,	a ball (party).
Una principessa,	a princess.	Un travestimento,	a disguise.
Il popolo, la gente,	the people.	Un' invitazione,	an invitation.

Tutti,                      everybody.      Parecchi-e,      several, many.

## EXERCISE XVI.

She is loved and esteemed (a) by\* everybody. The city of Rome has been sacked (b) several times. Have you been invited (c) to the ball? No ; but I expect (d) an invitation. His son, and his brother were wounded (e) (Pret. Def.) in the battle. Margaret would have been blamed by my mother, if (72) she had spoken. Are those ladies known (f) in this town? I believe they are.† William will not be recognised (g) in this disguise. They will be presented (h) to the Queen by the Prince. We should be despised, if we abandoned him (89) in this danger.

(a) Stimare. (b) Saccheggiare. (c) Invitare. (d) Aspettare.  
 (e) Ferire. (f) Conoscere. (g) Riconoscere. (h) Presentare.

125.\* The preposition *by*, preceded by a past participle, is translated into "da," in Italian. Ex.

"Egli è ammirato da tutti. He is admired by everybody.

126.† The English expressions *I believe he is, I believe they are, I think so*, are elegantly translated into Italian by "Credo di sì." And *I believe they are not, I do not think so*, are translated by "Credo di no."

## LESSON XII.

## ON NEUTER VERBS.

A neuter verb, properly speaking, is a verb which is neither active nor passive ; in that case “*essere*,” to be, is the only *real* neuter verb ; but any active verb which can be used without any object (direct or indirect) is *now* called a neuter verb. Ex. “*Abbiamo riso*.” We laughed:

## THE NEUTER VERB “NUOTARE,” TO SWIM.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Nuotare, *to swim*,

## PAST.

Aver nuotato, *to have swam*.

## GERUND.

Nuotando,  
*swimming*.

## PAST PARTICIPLE. COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

Nuotato,  
*swam*.Avendo nuotato,  
*having swam*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Nuoto,	} <i>I swim, &amp;c.</i>
Nuoti,	
Nuota ;	
Nuotiamo,	
Nuotate.	
Nuotano.	

## IMPERFECT.

Nuotava-o,	} <i>I swam, &amp;c.</i>
Nuotavi,	
Nuotava ;	
Nuotavamo,	
Nuotavate,	
Nuotavano.	

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Nuotai,	} <i>I swam, &amp;c.</i>
Nuotasti,	
Nuotò ;	
Nuotammo,	
Nuotaste,	
Nuotarono.	

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Ho nuotato, &c.  
*I have swam, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Aveva nuotato, &c.  
*I had swam, &c.*

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Ebbi nuotato, &c.  
*I had swam, &c.*

## FUTURE.

Nuoterò, &c.  
*I shall swim, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL.

Nuoterei, &c.  
*I should swim, &c.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Avrò nuotato, &c.  
*I shall have swam, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

Avrei nuotato, &c.  
*I should have swam, &c.*



## IMPERATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

MOOD.		PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
Nuota,	} <i>Swim (thou), &amp;c.</i>	Che io nuoti,	} <i>That I may swim, &amp;c.</i>	Che io nuotassi,	} <i>That I might swim, &amp;c.</i>
Nuoti ;		Che tu nuoti,		Che tu nuotassi,	
Nuotiamo,		Che [eg <sup>li</sup> ella] nuoti ;		Che [eg <sup>li</sup> ella] nuotasse ;	
Nuotate,		Che nuotiamo,		Che nuotassimo,	
Nuotino.		Che nuotate,		Che nuotaste,	
		Che [eg <sup>li</sup> elleno] nuotino.		Che [eg <sup>li</sup> elleno] nuotassero.	

## PRETERITE.

## PLUPERFECT.

Che io abbia nuotato, &c.	Che io avessi nuotato, &c.
<i>That I may have swam, &amp;c.</i>	<i>That I might have swam, &amp;c.</i>

127. There are about 600 neuter verbs in the Italian language, upwards of 550 of which require "Avere" for auxiliary. Ex.

Abbiamo dormito fino alle nove antimeridiane.	We slept till nine o'clock in the morning.
--	---

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE NEUTER VERBS WHICH ARE  
CONJUGATED WITH "AVERE."

Camminare,	to walk.	Regnare,	to reign.
Dormire,	to sleep.	Ridere,	to laugh.
Gridare,	to cry.	Sbadigliare,	to yawn.
Passeggiare,	to take a walk.	Tacere,	to be silent.
Piangere,	to weep.	Tossire,	to cough.
Pranzare,	to dine.	Viaggiare,	to travel.

128. The following eighteen neuter verbs require "essere" for auxiliary, because they indicate a state, rather than an action.

Andare, to go.	Giungere, to arrive.	Restare, }	} to remain.
Apparire, to appear.	Morire, to die.	Rimanere, }	
Arrivare, to arrive.	Nascere, to be born.	Sorgere,	to rise.
Cadere, to fall.	Partire, to depart.	Sortire, }	} to go out.
Divenire, to become.	Perire, to perish.	Uscire, }	
Entrare, to enter.	Pervenire, to arrive at.	Venire,	to come.

## EXAMPLES.

Sono andati alla campagna,	They have gone into the country.
Sono divenute ricchissime,	They have become very rich.

129. There are about 30 neuter verbs, like "Salire," to ascend, to go up; "Scendere," to descend, to go down; "Fuggire," to run away; "Passare," to pass; "Correre," to run; "Cessare," to cease; "Sedere," to sit down; "Crescere," to grow; "Vivere," to live; which require either "avere," or "essere" as auxiliary; "avere," when an action is expressed; "essere," when a state is denoted. Ex.

Abbiamo salito il monte con gran facilità. We ascended the mountain with great facility.

Andrea è salito sulla torre. Andrew is on the tower.

La processione aveva passato il ponte. The procession had passed over the bridge.

La cattiva stagione è passata. The bad season is passed.

## VOCABULARY.

Questa istituzione,	this institution.	Questo ponte,	this bridge.
La sua bontà,	his kindness.	Questo parco,	this park.
Una prigione,	a prison.	Una pecora,	a sheep.

Mentre,	whilst.	Molto,	a great deal.
Di mano in mano che,	in proportion as.	Abbastanza,	enough.

## EXERCISE XVII.

I have travelled a great deal. I have passed over the bridge with my brother. It was a pretty sight in the park, the sheep were browsing, the goats were skipping about, (a) the birds were warbling, (b) and the children were playing (c). This institution has been established (d)\* these ten years. Has your sister arrived? Yes, she arrived last night. He escaped from prison by† jumping (e) from a window. He slept (Pret. Def.) whilst we were working (76) (Pret. Def.). We lived (f.) three years in America, and received a great deal of kindness from the Americans.

(a) Saltellare. (b) Cantare. (c) Giuocare. (d) Stabilire. (e) Saltare. (f) Dimorare.

130. \* When the verb expresses an action which has lasted for some time past, and is still lasting, it must be put in the present Indicative in one of the two following ways:—

Sto in questa casa da cinque anni, or	}	I have been living in this house these five years.
Sono cinque anni che sto in questa casa.		

131. † The Italian Gerund is never preceded by any preposition; instead of the Gerund the present of the Infinitive may be used. Ex.  
Saltando, or col saltare da una finestra. By jumping from a window.

## LESSON XIII.

## ON THE REFLECTIVE AND RECIPROCAL VERBS.

A reflexive (reflexive, pronominal, or reciprocal) verb is a verb the action of which reacts upon its subject (called the Nominative, in the Classical languages).

132. The compound tenses of reflexive and reciprocal verbs are formed with the auxiliary "essere," which in this case is used instead of "avere." Ex.

"Francesco si è vestito." Francis has dressed himself.

## THE VERB "LODARSI," TO PRAISE ONE'S-SELF.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Lodarsi, *to praise one's-self.* Essersi lodato, *to have praised one's-self.*

## GERUND.

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

## COMPOUND OF THE GERUND.

Lodandosi,  
*praising one's-self.*

Lodato-a-i-e,  
*praised.*

Essendosi lodato,  
*having praised one's-self.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## IMPERFECT.

## PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Mi lodo, .  
Ti lodi,  
Si loda ;  
Ci lodiamo,  
Vi lodate,  
Si lodano. } *I praise myself, &c.*

Mi lodavo-o,  
Ti lodavi,  
Si lodava ;  
Ci lodavamo,  
Vi lodavate,  
Si lodavano. } *I praised myself, &c.*

Mi lodai,  
Ti lodasti,  
Si lodò ;  
Ci lodammo,  
Vi lodaste,  
Si lodarono. } *I praised myself, &c.*

## PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

## PLUPERFECT.

## PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Mi seno lodato, &c. Mi era lodato, &c. Mi fui lodato, &c.  
*I have praised myself, &c. I had praised myself, &c. I had praised myself, &c.*

## FUTURE.

## CONDITIONAL.

Mi loderò,  
Ti loderai,  
Si loderà ;  
Ci loderemo,  
Vi loderete,  
Si loderanno, } *I shall praise myself, &c.*

Mi loderei,  
Ti loderesti,  
Si loderebbe ;  
Ci loderemmo,  
Vi lodereste,  
Si loderebbero, } *I should praise myself, &c.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Mi sarò lodato, &amp;c.

*I shall have praised myself, &c.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

Mi sarei lodato, &amp;c.

*I should have praised myself, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE

## MOOD.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## IMPERFECT.

Lodati,	{ <i>Praise myself, &amp;c.</i>	Che io mi lodi,	{ <i>That I may praise myself, &amp;c.</i>	Che io mi lodassi,	{ <i>That I might praise myself, &amp;c.</i>
Si lodi ;		Che tu ti lodi,		Che tu ti lodassi,	
Lodiamoci,		Che <sup>[eglit]</sup> <sub>ella</sub> si lodi ;		Che <sup>[eglit]</sup> <sub>ella</sub> si lodasse ;	
Lodatevi,		Che ci lodiamo,		Che ci lodassimo,	
Si lodino.		Che vi lodate,		Che vi lodaste,	
		Che <sup>[eglino]</sup> <sub>glieno</sub> si lodino.		Che <sup>[eglino]</sup> <sub>glieno</sub> si lodassero.	

## PRETERITE.

Che io mi sia lodato, &amp;c.

*That I may have praised myself, &c.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Che io mi fossi lodato, &amp;c.

*That I might have praised myself, &c.*

“Lodarsi” might mean *to praise one's-self*, or *to praise one another* ; hence many reflective verbs are used as reciprocal verbs.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS, AND A FEW MORE, ARE REFLECTIVE IN ITALIAN AND NOT REFLECTIVE IN ENGLISH.

Accorgersi,*	} to perceive.	Appoggiarsi a,	to lean against.
Avvedersi,*		Approssimarsi,	} to approach.
Addormentarsi,	to fall asleep.	Accostarsi,	
Affrettarsi,*	} to hasten.	Avvicinarsi,	} to surrender.
Sbrigarsi,		Arrendersi,	
Spicciarsi,	} to rise.	Astenersi,	to abstain.
Alzarsi,		Attristarsi,	to get sad.
Levarsi,	} to get married.	Avanzarsi,	to advance.
Ammogliarsi,		Avviarsi,	to set out.
Maritarsi,	} to get tired.	Bagnarsi,	to bathe, to get wet.
Annoiarsi,		Compiacersi,*	to take pleasure.

\* Reflective Verbs marked with an asterisk (\*) govern the preposition “di.”

Contentarsi,*	to be satisfied.	Offendersi,*	to take offence.
Crucciarsi,	} to get angry.	Opporsi a,	to oppose.
Adirarsi,		Pentirsi,*	to repent.
Arrabbiarsi,		Querelarsi,	{ to complain. to dispute.
Dilettarsi,	to delight.	Rallegrarsi,*	to rejoice.
Dimenticarsi,*	} to forget.	Ricordarsi,*	to remember.
Scordarsi,*		Riposarsi a,	to rest.
Dolersi,*	to grieve.	Rompersi,	to break.
Fidarsi,*	to trust.	Sbagliarsi,	to mistake.
Imbarcarsi,	to embark.	Sentirsi bene,	to feel well.
Impadronirsi,*	to seize.	Sentirsi male,	to feel unwell.
Infastidirsi,*	to get weary.	Svegliarsi,	to awake.
Ingegnarsi,	to endeavour.	Vantarsi,*	to boast.
Innamorarsi,*	to fall in love with.	Vestirsi,	to dress.
Lamentarsi,*	to complain.	Vergognarsi,*	to be ashamed.
Maravigliarsi,*	to wonder.		

## VOCABULARY.

L'assemblea,	the assembly.	Un bastimento, va-	} a ship.
Questa spesa,	this expense	scello, una nave.	
L'economia,	economy.	Una barca,	a bark.
Lo spirito,	wit, the mind.	Un porto di mare,	a harbour.
Il sapere,	learning.	Questa canzone,	this song.
L'imprudenza,	imprudence.	La chitarra,	the guitar.

Ogni,	every, each.	Alle sei,	at six o'clock.
-------	--------------	-----------	-----------------

## EXERCISE XVIII.

I rise every morning at six o'clock. Are the children dressing themselves? No, they are not (98). The French approached the town to (103) besiege (a) it (91). I presented myself (b) to the assembly. Do you remember Charles' birthday? Yes I do (98). They embarked in an English ship. They have enriched themselves (c) at my expense. They pride themselves on† their wit and learning. I shall remember to bring my mother's umbrella. He has not repented (132) of his imprudence. She sang Spanish (74) songs accompanying herself (d) with the guitar. Children, make haste, we shall start at noon.

(a) Assediare. (b) Presentarsi. (c) Arricchirsi. (d) Accompanarsi.

\* Reflective Verbs marked with an asterisk (\*) govern the preposition "di."

133.† The preposition *on* is never translated literally in Italian ("su," "sopra,") except when it is taken in a literal sense. Ex. "Sulla tavola." On the table.

## LESSON XIV. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

134. Impersonal Verbs are only used in the third person.

135. There are two kinds of Impersonal Verbs, in Italian; those expressive of the state of the weather, like "Piovere," to rain, which are used without pronouns, and only in the third person singular. But there is another class of Impersonal Verbs, like "Accadere," to happen, which may be used either without pronouns, or with the conjunctive personal pronouns "mi," to me, "ti," to thee, "gli," to him, &c., and in the third person, both singular and plural.

136. The compound tenses of Impersonal Verbs like "Piovere," are formed either with "Essere," or with "Avere;" whilst those like "Accadere," are formed with "Essere," only.

Subjoined are examples of both classes of Impersonal Verbs.

### THE IMPERSONAL VERB "PIOVERE," TO RAIN.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Piovere, <i>to rain.</i>	Essere, or aver piovuto, <i>to have rained.</i>
GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
Piovendo, <i>raining.</i>	Piovuto, Essendo, or avendo piovuto, <i>rained. having rained.</i>

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PRETERITE DEFINITE.
Piove, <i>it rains.</i>	Pioveva, <i>it rained.</i>	Piovve, <i>it rained.</i>
PRETERITE INDEFINITE.	PLUPERFECT.	PRETERITE ANTERIOR.
È, or ha piovuto. <i>It has rained.</i>	Era, or aveva piovuto. <i>It had rained.</i>	Fu, or ebbe piovuto. <i>It had rained.</i>

FUTURE.	CONDITIONAL.
Pioverà, <i>it will rain.</i>	Pioverebbe, <i>it would rain.</i>
FUTURE ANTERIOR.	CONDITIONAL PAST.
Sarà, or avrà piovuto. <i>It will have rained.</i>	Sarebbe, or avrebbe piovuto. <i>It would have rained.</i>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Che piovà.	Che piovesse.
<i>That it may rain.</i>	<i>That it might rain.</i>
PRETERITE.	PLUPERFECT.
Che sia, or abbia piovuto. <i>That it may have rained.</i>	Che fosse, or avesse piovuto. <i>That it might have rained.</i>

The following Impersonal Verbs are conjugated like "Piovere."

Piovigginà, <i>it drizzles.</i>	Digela, <i>it thaws.</i>
Nevica, <i>it snows.</i>	Balena, <i>it lightens.</i>
Grandina, <i>it hails.</i>	Lampeggia, <i>it lightens.</i>
Tuona, <i>it thunders.</i>	Albeggia, <i>it dawns.</i>
Gela, <i>it freezes.</i>	Annotta, <i>it grows dark.</i>

### THE IMPERSONAL VERB "ACCADERE," TO HAPPEN.

INDICATIVE MOOD.  PRESENT.	{	Mi accade,	it happens to me.
		Ti accade,	" " " thee.
		Gli accade,	" " " him.
		Le accade,	" " " her, to it, or to you. (sing.)
		Ci accade,	" " " us.
		Vi accade,	" " " you.
		Accade (a) loro,	" " " them, or to you. (plur.)

### EXAMPLES.

Mi accade sovente d' incontrarlo. It often happens that I meet him.  
Gli sono accadute disgrazie. Misfortunes have happened to him.

The following Impersonal Verbs are conjugated like "Accadere."

Avvenire,	{	<i>to happen.</i>	Capitare,	<i>to happen, to end.</i>
Arrivare,			Addirsi,	<i>to be becoming.</i>
Essere mestieri,	{	<i>to be necessary.</i>	Disdire,	<i>to be unbecoming.</i>
Essere d' uopo,			Parere,	{ <i>to appear.</i>
Essere necessario,			Sembrare,	
Bisognare,			Piacere,	<i>to please.</i>
Abbisognare,	{	<i>to be useful.</i>	Dispiacere,	<i>to displease.</i>
Convenire,			Rincrescere,	<i>to be sorry for.</i>
Occorrere,	{	<i>to be in need of.</i>	Dolere,	<i>to ache.</i>
			Calere,	<i>to care about.</i>

137. When a verb is governed by one of the verbs in the last list, above, it must be put either in the Subjunctive, or the Infinitive Mood, according to the sense of the sentence. Ex.

Che cosa le occorre, Signora?	What do you want, Madam?
Mi occorrono guanti.	I want gloves.
Bisogna ch' io parta.	I must go away.
Bisogna parlargli tedesco.	One must speak German to him.

## VOCABULARY.

Unlibro diletatura, a reading-book.	Il castello, the castle.
Il mio motivo, my motive.	Accomodamento, arrangement.
Prossimo, next.	Ordinario, ordinary.
Sapiente, wise.	Straordinario, extraordinary.
Quanto? quanta? how much?	Quanti? quante? how many?
Rozzamente, rudely.	Niente, nothing.
Correttamente, correctly.	Non ancora, not yet.
Prudentemente, prudently.	Ecco tutto, that is all.

## EXERCISE XIX.

Does (73) it rain now? No, it does not (36) rain, but it has been raining (76). Does it not lighten? Yes, it lightens and thunders. Did it freeze last night? Not much. It is getting dark; we must (it is necessary) (137) to (104) return to the castle. I must sell my horse before Saturday. You must speak at once. It was necessary to consent to the bad arrangement. What do you want (a)? I want some French books. How many do you want? (108) I want Becherelle's dictionary, and a good French reading-book. I have the dictionary, but I have not the reading-book. What has happened? Nothing extraordinary; it snows, that is all. It is unbecoming of you to speak rudely to my father. It is not necessary to be very wise, to (103) guess (b) his motive. It appears (137) that you have not attended (c) to the business. No, not yet. It is not enough (d) to (104) speak correctly, one must also speak prudently. How do you like this palace? I do not like it (96) much. Has anything happened to George? Nothing; he is in the garden playing\* with William.

(a) Occorrere. (b) Indovinare. (c) Acudire a. (d) Bastare.

138. \* When the participial Anglicisms *speaking, playing, &c.*, are used separately from their auxiliary, *I am, He is, He was, I shall be, &c.*, they are translated by the simple tenses ("parlo," "giuocava," &c.) preceded by the conjunction "che." Ex.

Era nel suo studio che lavorava	He was in his studio working
al suo quadro.	at his picture.



## LESSON XV.

## IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

NOTE.—Only the irregular forms are given.

**"ANDARE," TO GO.***The Compound Tenses are formed with "Essere."*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

- PRESENT. Vo, or vado, via, va ; andiamo, andate, vanno.  
 FUTURE. Andrò, andrai, andrà ; andremo, andrete, andranno, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Va, vada ; andiamo, andate, vadano.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

- PRESENT. Che io vada, che tu vada ; ch' egli, or ch' ella vada ;  
 che andiamo, che andiate, che vadano.

**"DARE," TO GIVE.***The Compound Tenses are formed with "Avere."*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

- PRESENT. Do, dai, dà ; diamo, date, danno.  
 PRET. DEF. Diedi, or detti, desti, diede, or dette ; demmo, deste,  
 diedero, or dettero.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Dà, dia ; diamo, date, diano, or dieno.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. •

- PRESENT. Che io dia, che tu dia, ch' egli, or ch' ella dia ; che  
 diamo, che diate, che diano, or dieno.  
 IMPERFECT. Che io, or se io dessi, che tu, or se tu dessi, ch' egli,  
 or ch' ella desse, &c.

**"FARE," TO DO, or TO MAKE.***The Compound Tenses are formed with "Avere."*

- GERUND. Facendo. PAST PARTICIPLE. Fatto-a-i-e.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

- PRESENT. Fo, fai, fa ; facciamo, fate, fanno.  
 IMPERFECT. Faceva, facevi, faceva ; facevamo, facevate, facevano.  
 PRET. DEF. Feci, fecesti, fece ; facemmo, faceste, fecero.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Fa, faccia ; facciamo, fate, facciano.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

- PRESENT. Che io faccia, che tu faccia, ch' egli, or ch' ella faccia ;  
 che facciamo, che facciate, che facciano.  
 IMPERFECT. Che io, or se io facessi, che tu, or se tu facessi, &c.

**"STARE," TO BE IN HEALTH, (TO DO) TO DWELL, TO STAY.***The Compound Tenses are formed with "Essere."*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. Sto, stai sta ; stiamo, state, stanno.

PRETERITE. Stetti, stesti, stette ; stemmo, steste, stettero.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sta, stia ; stiamo, state, stiano, or stieno.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. Che io stia, che tu stia, ch' egli or ch' ella stia ; che stiamo, che stiate, che stiano or stieno.

IMPERFECT. Che io, or s' io stessi, che tu, or se tu stessi, &amp;c.

## VOCABULARY.

Un villaggio,	a village.	La sua salute,	his health.
L' indirizzo,	the address.	La stazione,	the station.
Un discorso,	a speech.	Una visita,	a visit.
Come,	how.	Vicino,	near.
Però,	but still.	Presto, tosto,	soon.
Non così bene,	not quite so well.	Con piacere,	with pleasure

Buon giorno, Signore. Good morning, sir.

## EXERCISE XX.

Good morning, sir, how do you do (30)? I am quite well to-day, thank (a) you, (30 and 89) and how are you? Not quite so well as yesterday, but still my health is improving (76). Where do you live now? I live in the country ; in a small village near Canterbury. Why do you give him (89) this dictionary? I give it to him because he has asked (c) me for it (99). Have you been (56) to Paris? No, I have not been there (107). He never went to (97) Italy, but he will go there soon. Now that he has the book, he will not give it to me (89 and 99). I am going to pay (d) some visits, will you accompany me (99 and 111)? Yes ; with pleasure. Give me William's address. Here it is (113). What are you doing now? I am making a copy-book for little Charles. If I had (72) an umbrella I would go\* with you to the station.

(a) Ringraziare. (b) Migliorare. (c) Domandare. (d) Fare.

139. \* When *to go* is used in the sense of *to accompany*, it is translated *not* by "Andare," but by "Accompagnare" *to accompany*, or "Venire," *to come*. Ex.

Vuol' ella venire in Italia con me? Will you go to Italy with me?

## LESSONS XVI. AND XVII.

## ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF ALL THE IMPORTANT IRREGULAR, AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION; BOTH IN "ERE" LONG, LIKE "TEMERE," TO FEAR; AND IN "ERE" SHORT, LIKE "CRĒDERE,"\* TO BELIEVE.†

ONLY THE IRREGULAR FORMS OF THE VERBS ARE GIVEN.

## NOTE.

Most of the Italian irregular verbs are irregular only in past participle, and in the Preterite Definite. Of the six persons in an irregular Preterite Definite, only three can be irregular;—the first person singular, which always ends in *i*, the third person singular, which always ends in *e*, and the third person plural, which always ends in *ero*; so that one of the three persons being known, the others are known, as a matter of course. "Accendere," the first verb in the subjoined list, illustrates the rule.

Accendere, *to light*. Past Part. acceso. Pret. Ind. accesi, accendesti, accese; accendemmo, accendeste, accesero.

Accadere, *to happen* (Impersonal, 135). Pret. Ind. accadde, &c. Fut. accadrà, &c.‡

Accingersi, *to prepare one's-self*. Past Part. accinto. Pret. Ind. mi accinsi, &c.‡

Accludere, *to enclose*. Past Part. accluso. Pret. Ind. acclusi, &c.

Accogliere (bene), *to receive (kindly)*. Past Part. accolto. Pret. Ind. accolgo, accogli, accoglie; accogliamo, accogliete, accolgono. Pret. Ind. accolsi, &c. Imperative, accogli, accolga; accogliamo, accogliete, accolgano. Pres. Subj. che io accolga, &c.

Accorgersi, *to perceive*. Past Part. accorto. Pret. Ind. mi accorsi, &c.‡

Accorrere, *to run to*. Past Part. accorso. Pret. Ind. accorsi, &c.‡

Accrescere, *to augment*. Past Part. accresciuto. Pret. Ind. accrebbi, &c.

\* See page 8.

† Having united the regular verbs of the second conjugation in "ere" long and in "ere" short into one conjugation, (See page 30,) it seems but logical to unite their respective irregular verbs into one single list; because if the reasons adduced in one case were held to be good, they should hold good in the other.

‡ The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

**Addurre, to bring forth, to allege,** is contracted from "Adducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. adducendo. Pres. Ind. adduco, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. addotto. Pret. Ind. addussi, &c. Fut. addurrò. Ex.

**Affiggere, to afflict.** Past Part. afflitto. Pret. Ind. afflissi, &c.

**Aggiungere, to add.** Past Part. aggiunto. Pret. Ind. aggiunsi, &c.

**Alludere, to allude.** Past Part. alluso. Pret. Ind. allusi, &c.

**Ammettere, to admit.** Past Part. ammesso. Pret. Ind. ammisì, &c.

**Anteporre, to prefer,** is contracted from "Anteponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. antepoendo. Imp. Ind. anteponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. anteposto. Pret. Ind. antepongo, anteponi, antepone; anteponiamo, anteponetè, antepongono. Pret. Ind. anteposi, &c. Fut. anteporrò, &c. Imperative, anteponi, anteponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io anteponga, &c.

**Appartenere, to belong.** Pres. Ind. appartengo, appartieni, appartiene; apparteniamo, appartenete, appartengono. Pret. Ind. appartenni, &c. Fut. apparterrò, &c. Imperative, appartieni, appartenga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io appartenga, &c.

**Apprendere,\* to learn.** Past Part. appreso. Pret. Ind. appresi, &c.

**Ardere, to burn.** Past Part. arso. Pret. Ind. arsi, &c.

**Arrendersi, to surrender.** Past Part. arreso. Pret. Ind. mi arresi, &c.†

**Arridere, to smile.** Past Part. arriso. Pret. Ind. arrisi, &c.

**Ascendere, to ascend.** Past Part. asceto. Pret. Ind. ascesi, &c.

**Assistere, to assist.** Past Part. assistito.

**Assolvere, to absolve.** Past Part. assolto, (or assoluto).

**Assorbere, to absorb.** Past Part. assorto.

**Assumere, to assume.** Past Part. assunto. Pret. Ind. assunsi, &c.

**Attingere, to draw up.‡** Past Part. attinto. Pret. Ind. attinsi, &c.

**Attorcere, to twist.** Past Part. attorto. Pret. Ind. attorsi, &c.

**Attrarre, to attract,** is contracted from "Attrahere." Ger. attraendo. Past Part. attratto. Pres. Ind. attraggo, attrai, attrae; attraiamo, (or attraggiamo), attraete, attraggono. Imp. Ind. attraeva, &c. Pret. Ind. attrassi, attraesti, &c. Fut. attrarrò, &c. Imperative, attrai, attraggia; attraiamo, attraete, attraggano. Imp. Subj. che io attraessi, &c.

**Avvincere, to bind.** Past Part. avvinto. Pret. Ind. avvinsi, &c.

**Avvolgere, to wrap round.** Past Part. avvolto. Pret. Ind. avvolsi, &c.

\* "Apprendere" means *to learn* (a fact); *to learn* (a lesson, a language,) is translated by "Imparare."

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

‡ "Attingere" means *to draw up*, like water from a well.

**Bere, to drink,** is contracted from "Bevere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. bevendo. Pres. Ind. bevo, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Pret. Ind. bevvi, &c. Fut. berò, &c.

**Cadere, to fall.** Pret. Ind. caddi, &c. Fut. cadrò, &c.\*

**Calere, to care for** (Impersonal, 135), is only used in the following tenses : Pres. Ind. mi cale, &c. Imp. Ind. mi caleva, &c. Pret. Ind. mi calse, &c. Pres. Subj. che mi caglia, &c. Imp. Subj. che mi calesse, &c.

**Chiedere, to ask.** Past Part. chiesto. Pres. Ind. chiedo, (or chieggo), chiedi, &c. Pret. Ind. chiesi, &c. Imperative, chiedi, chieda, (or chiegga), &c. Pres. Subj. che io chieda, or chiegga, &c.

**Chiudere, to shut.** Past Part. chiuso. Pret. Ind. chiusi, &c.

**Cingere, to gird.** Past Part. cinto. Pret. Ind. cinsi, &c.

**Circondare, to limit.** Past Part. circondato. Pret. Ind. circondasti, &c.

**Cogliere** (contracted into "Corre") **to gather.** Past Part. colto. Pres. Ind. colgo, cogli, coglie; cogliamo, cogliete, **colgono.** Pret. Ind. colsi, &c. Fut. coglierò, (or corrò), &c. Imperative, cogli, colga; cogliamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io colga, &c.

**Coincidere, to coincide** (Impersonal, 135). Past Part. coinciso. Pret. Ind. coincise, &c.

**Commettere, to commit.** Past Part. commesso. Pret. Ind. commisi, &c.

**Commuovere, † to affect, to move.** Past Part. commosso. Pret. Ind. commosi, &c.

**Compiacere, to comply with.** Past Part. compiaciuto. Pres. Ind. compiacio, compiaci, compiace; compiaciamo, compiacete, **compiacciono.** Pret. Ind. compiacqui, &c. Imperative, compiaci, compiacia; compiaciamo, compiacete, **compiacciano.**

**Compiangere, to pity, to lament.** Past Part. compianto. Pret. Ind. compiansi, &c. Pres. Subj. che io compianga, &c.

**Comporre, to compose,** is contracted from "Componere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. componendo. Imp. Ind. componeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. composto. Pres. Ind. compongo, componi, compone; componiamo, componete, **compongono.** Pret. Ind. composi, &c. Fut. comporrò, &c. Imperative, componi, componga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io componga, &c.

**Comprendere, to comprehend, to contain, to impress.** Past Part. compreso. Pret. Ind. compresi, &c.

**Comprimere, to compress.** Past Part. compresso. Pret. Ind. compressi, &c.

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

† When in the verb "Commuovere" the tonic accent does not fall on the second o, the letter u may be omitted; as *commuovendo, commuoviamo, commuoverò*, instead of *commuovendo, &c.*

**Compromettere**, *to compromise*. Past Part. compromesso. Pret. Ind. compromisi, &c.

**Compungere**, *to grieve*. Past Part. compunto. Pret. Ind. compunsi, &c.

**Conchiudere**, *to conclude*. Past Part. conchiuso. Pret. Ind. conchiusi, &c.

**Concludere**, *to conclude*. Past Part. concluso. Pret. Ind. conclusi, &c.

**Concorrere**, *to concur, to compete*. Past Part. concorso. Pret. Ind. concorsi, &c.

**Condiscendere**, *to condescend*. Past Part. condisceso. Pret. Ind. condiscesi, &c.

**Condurre**, *to lead*, is contracted from "Conducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. conducendo. Pres. Ind. conduco, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. condotto. Pret. Ind. condussi, &c. Fut. condurrò, &c.

**Confondere**, *to confound, to confuse*. Past Part. confuso. Pret. Ind. confusi, &c.

**Congiungere**, *to join*. Past Part. congiunto. Pret. Ind. congiunsi, &c.

**Connettere**, *to connect*. Past Part. connesso. Pret. Ind. connessi, &c.

**Conoscere**, *to know, to be acquainted with* (through the senses). Past Part. conosciuto. Pret. Ind. conobbi, &c.

**Consistere**, *to consist* (Impersonal, 135). Past Part. consistito.\*

**Contendere**, *to quarrel*. Past Part. conteso. Pret. Ind. contesi, &c.

**Contenere**, *to contain*. Pres. Ind. contengo, contieni, contiene; conteniamo, tenete, contengono. Pret. Ind. contenni, &c. Fut. conterrò, &c. Imperative, contieni, contenga; conteniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io contenga, &c.

**Contorcere**, *to distort, to twist*. Past Part. contorto. Pret. Ind. contorsi, &c.

**Contrapporre**, *to oppose*, is contracted from "Contrapponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. contrapponendo. Imp. Ind. contrapponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. contrapposto. Pres. Ind. contrappongo, contrapponi, contrappone; contrapponiamo, contrapponete, contrappengono. Pret. Ind. contrapposi, &c. Fut. contrapporrò, &c. Imperative, contrapponi, contrapponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io contrapponga, &c.

**Contrarre**, *to contract*, is contracted from "Contrahere." Ger. contraendo. Past Part. contratto. Pres. Ind. contraggo, contrai, contrae; contraiamo (or contraggiamo), contraete, contraggono. Imp. Ind. contraeva, &c. Pret. Ind. contrassi, contraesti, &c. Fut. contrarrò, &c. Imperative, contrai, contragga; contraiamo, contraete, contraggano. Pres. Subj. che io contragga, &c. Imp. Subj. che io contraessi, &c.

---

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

- Convincere, *to convince*. Past Part. convinto. Pret. Ind. convinsi, &c.  
 Correggere, *to correct*. Past Part. corretto. Pret. Ind. corressi, &c.  
 Correre, *to run*. Past Part. corso. Pret. Ind. corsi, &c.\*  
 Corrispondere, *to correspond*. Past Part. corrisposto. Pret. Ind. corrisposi, &c.  
 Corrodere, *to corrode*. Past Part. corrosivo. Pret. Ind. corrosi, &c.  
 Corrompere, *to corrupt*. Past Part. corrotto. Pret. Ind. corruppi, &c.  
 Costringere, *to constrain*. Past Part. costretto. Pret. Ind. costrinsi, &c.  
 Crescere, *to grow*. Past Part. cresciuto. Pret. Ind. crebbi, &c.\*  
 Cuocere,† *to cook*. Past Part. cotto. Pret. Ind. cossi, &c.  
 Decadere, *to decay*. Past Part. decaduto. Pret. Ind. decaddi, &c. Fut. decadrò, &c.\*  
 Decidere, *to decide*. Past Part. deciso. Pret. Ind. decisi, &c.  
 Dedurre, *to deduce, to deduct*, is contracted from "Deducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. deducendo. Pres. Ind. deduco, &c.  
 Its irregular forms are : Past Part. dedotto. Pret. Ind. dedussi, &c. Fut. dedurrò, &c.  
 Deludere, *to delude*. Past Part. deluso. Pret. Ind. delusi, &c.  
 Deporre, *to depose*, is contracted from "Deponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. deponendo. Imp. Ind. deponeva, &c.  
 Its irregular forms are Past Part. deposto. Pres. Ind. depongo, deponi, depone ; deponiamo, deponete, deponono. Pret. Ind. deposi, &c. Imperative, deponi, deponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io deponga, &c.  
 Deprimere, *to depress*. Past Part. depresso. Pret. Ind. depressi, &c.  
 Deridere, *to deride*. Past Part. deriso. Pret. Ind. derisi, &c.  
 Descrivere, *to describe*. Past Part. descritto. Pret. Ind. descrissi, &c.  
 Detrarre, *to detract*, is contracted from "Detrahere." Ger. detraendo. Past Part. detratto. Pres. Ind. detraggo, detrai, detrae; detraiamo (or detraggiamo), detraete, detraggono. Imp. Ind. detraeva, &c., Pret. Ind. detrassi, detraesti, &c. Fut. detrarò, &c. Imperative, detrai, detragga ; detraiamo, (or detraggiamo), detraete, detraggano. Pres. Subj. che io detragga, &c. Imp. Subj. che io detraessi, &c.  
 Difendere, *to defend*. Past Part. difeso. Pret. Ind. difesi, &c.  
 Diffondere, *to spread out*. Past Part. diffuso. Pret. Ind. diffusi, &c.  
 Dipingere, *to paint*. Past Part. dipinto. Pret. Ind. dipinsi, &c.

---

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

† When in the verb "Cuocere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted ; as *cocendo, cociamo, cocerò*, instead of *cuocendo, &c.*

*Dirigere, to direct.* Past Part. diretto. Pret. Ind. diressi, &c.  
*Discendere, to descend.* Past Part. disceso. Pret. Ind. discesi &c.  
*Discorrere, to speak, to discourse.* Past Part. discorso. Pret. Ind. discorsi, &c.

*Discutere, to discuss.* Past Part. discusso. Pret. Ind. discussi, &c.

*Dispergere, to disperse.* Past Part. disperso. Pret. Ind. dispersi, &c.

*Dispiacere, to displease.* Past Part. dispiaciuto. Pres. Ind. dispiaccio, dispiaci, dispiace; dispiacciamo, dispiacete, dispiacciono. Pret. Ind. dispiacqui, &c. Imperative, dispiaci, dispiaccia; dispiacciamo, dispiacete, dispiacciano. Pres. Subj. che io dispiaccia, &c.

*Disporre, to dispose,* is contracted from "*Disponere*," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. disponendo. Imp. Ind. disponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. disposto. Pres. Ind. dispongo, disponi, dispone; disponiamo, disponete, dispongono. Fut. disporrò, &c. Pret. Ind. disposi, &c. Imperative disponi, disponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io disponga, &c.

*Dissolvere, to dissolve.* Past Part. dissolto, (or assolto).

*Dissuadere, to dissuade.* Past Part. dissuaso. Pret. Ind. dissuasi, &c.

*Distendere, to extend, to stretch out.* Past Part. disteso. Pret. Ind. distesi, &c.

*Distinguere, to distinguish.* Past Part. distinto. Pret. Ind. distinti &c.

*Distogliere* (contracted into "*Distorre*"), *to divert from.* Past Part. distolto. Pres. Ind. distolgo, distogli, distoglie; distogliamo, distogliete, distolgono. Pret. Ind. distolsi, &c. Fut. distoglierò, (or distorrò), &c. Imperative, distogli distolga; distogliamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io distolga, &c.

*Distruggere, to destroy.* Past Part. distrutto. Pret. Ind. distrussi, &c.

*Dividere, to divide.* Past Part. diviso. Pret. Ind. divisi, &c.

*Dolere, to ache.* Past Part. doluto. Pres. Ind. dolgo, duoli, duole; dogliamo, dolete doglono. Pret. Ind. dolsi, &c. Fut. doglierò, &c. Pres. Subj. che io doglia, &c.

*Dolersi, to complain,* is conjugated like "*Dolere*," but it is used also in the Imperative: duoliti, si dolga; dogliamoci, doletevi, si doglano.\*

---

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "*Essere*."



**Dovere, to owe, to be obliged.** Past Part. dovuto. Pres. Ind. devo, (debbo, or deggio), devi, deve ; dobbiamo, dovete, devono, (or debbono). Fut. dovrò, &c. Pres. Subj. che io debba (or deggia), che tu debba, ch' egli debba ; che dobbiamo, che dobbiate, che debbano, (or deggiano).

**Eleggere, to elect.** Past Part. eletto. Pres. Ind. eleksi, &c.

**Emergere, to emerge.** Past Part. emerso. Pret. Ind. emersi, &c.

**Ergere, to erect.** Past Part. erto. Pret. Ind. ersi, &c.

**Erlgere, to erect.** Past Part. eretto. Pret. Ind. eressi, &c.

**Escludere, to exclude.** Past Part. escluso. Pret. Ind. esclusi, &c.

**Esigere, to exact.** Past Part. esatto.

**Espellere, to expel.** Past Part. espulso. Pret. Ind. espulsi, &c.

**Esporre, to expose,** is contracted from "Esponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. esponendo. Imp. Ind. esponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. esposto. Pres. Ind. espongo, esponi, espone, esponiamo, esponete, esponono. Pret. Ind. esposi, &c. Fut. esporrò, &c. Imperative, esponi, esponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io esponga, &c.

**Esprimere, to express.** Past Part. espresso. Pret. Ind. espressi, &c.

**Estendere, to extend.** Past Part. esteso. Pret. Ind. estesi, &c.

**Estinguere, to extinguish.** Past Part. estinto. Pret. Ind. estinsi, &c.

**Estrarre, to extract,** is contracted from "Estrare." Ger. estraendo.

Past Part. estratto. Pres. Ind. estraggo, estrai, estraee, estraiano, (or estraigiamo), estraete, estraigono. Imp. Ind. estraeva, &c. Pret. Ind. estrassi, estraesti, &c. Fut. estrarrò, &c. Imperative, estrai, estragga ; estraiano, (or estraigiamo), estraete, estraigano. Imp. Subj. che io estraessi, &c.

**Fendere, to split.** Past Part. fesso.

**Fingere, to feign.** Past Part. finto. Pret. Ind. finsi, &c.

**Fondere, to melt.** Past Part. fuso. Pret. Ind. fusi, &c.

**Frammettere, to interpose.** Past Part. frammesso. Pret. Ind. frammisi, &c.

**Frangere, to break.** Past Part. franto. Pret. Ind. fransi, &c.

**Friggere, to fry.** Past Part. fritto. Pret. Ind. frissi, &c.

**Giacere, to lie down.** Past Part. giaciuto. Pret. Ind. giacqui, &c.\*

**Giungere, to arrive.** Past Part. giunto. Pret. Ind. giunsi, &c.

**Illudere, to illude.** Past Part. illuso. Pret. Ind. illusi, &c.

**Immergere, to immerge.** Past Part. immerso. Pret. Ind. immersi, &c.

---

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

**Imporre, to impose,** is contracted from "Imponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. imponendo. Imp. Ind. imponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. imposto. Pres. Ind. impongo, imponi, impone ; imponiamo, imponete, impongono. Pret. Ind. imposi, &c. Imperative, imponi, imponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io imponga, &c.

**Imprimere, to impress.** Past Part. impresso. Pret. Ind. impressi, &c.

**Incidere, to engrave.** Past Part. inciso. Pret. Ind. incisi, &c.

**Includere, to include.** Past Part. incluso. Pret. Ind. inclusi, &c.

**Incorrere, to incur.** Past Part. incorso. Pret. Ind. incorsi, &c.

**Indurre, to induce,** is contracted from "Inducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. inducendo. Pres. Ind. induco, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. indotto. Pret. Ind. indussi, &c. Fut. indurrò, &c.

**Infondere, to infuse.** Past Part. infuso. Pret. Ind. infusi, &c.

**Inscrivere, to inscribe.** Past Part. iscritto. Pret. Ind. iscrissi, &c.

**Insistere, to insist.** Past Part. insistito.

**Intendere, to understand.** Past Part. inteso. Pret. Ind. intesi, &c.

**Interporre, to interpose,** is contracted from "Interponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. interponendo. Imp. Ind. interponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. interposto. Pres. Ind. interpongo, interponi, interpone ; interponiamo, interponete, interpongono. Pret. Ind. interposi, &c. Fut. interporrò, &c. Imperative, interponi, interponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io interponga, &c.

**Interrompere, to interrupt.** Past Part. interrotto. Pret. Ind. interruppi, &c.

**Intraprendere, to undertake.** Past Part. intrapreso. Pret. Ind. intrapresi, &c.

**Introdurre, to introduce,** is contracted from "Introducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. introducendo. Pres. Ind. introduco, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. introdotto. Pret. Ind. introdussi, &c. Fut. introdurrò, &c.

**Intrudere, to intrude.** Past Part. intruso. Pret. Ind. intrusi, &c.

**Invadere, to invade.** Past Part. invaso. Pret. Ind. invasi, &c.

**Involgere, to involve.** Past Part. involto. Pret. Ind. involsi, &c.

**Ledere, to offend.** Past Part. leso. Pret. Ind. lesi, &c.

**Leggere, to read.** Past Part. letto. Pret. Ind. lessi, &c.

**Mantenere, to maintain.** Pres. Ind. mantengo, mantieni, mantiene ;  
manteniamo, mantenete, mantengono. Pret. Ind. man-  
tenni, &c. Fut. manterrò, &c. Imperative, mantieni,  
mantenga, manteniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io man-  
tenga, &c.

**Mettere, to put.** Past Part. messo. Pret. Ind. misi, &c.

**Mordere, to bite.** Past Part. morso. Pret. Ind. morsi, &c.

**Mungere, to milk.** Past Part. munto. Pret. Ind. munsì, &c.

**Muovere,\* to move.** Past Part. mosso. Pret. Ind. mossi, movesti, &c.

**Nascere, to be born.** Past Part. nato. Pret. Ind. nacqui,† &c.

**Nascondere, to hide.** Past Part. nascosto, (or nascoso). Pret. Ind.  
nascosi, &c.

**Nuocere,‡ to hurt.** Past Part. nociuto. Pret. Ind. nocui, &c.

**Occorrere, to be in need of, to happen** (Impersonal, 135). Past Part. occorso. Pret.  
Ind. occorse.†

**Offendere, to offend.** Past Part. offeso. Pret. Ind. offesi, &c.

**Ommettere, to omit.** Past Part. ommesso. Pret. Ind. ommisi, &c.

**Opporre, to oppose,** is contracted from "Opponere," and is, therefore,  
conjugated thus: Ger. opponendo. Imp. Ind. op-  
poneva, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. opposto. Pres. Ind.  
oppongo, opponi, oppone ; opponiamo, opponete, op-  
pongono. Pret. Ind. opposi, &c. Fut. opporrò, &c.  
Imperative, opponi, opponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io  
opponga, &c.

**Opprimere, to oppress.** Past Part. oppresso. Pret. Ind. oppressi, &c.

**Ottenere, to obtain.** Pres. Ind. ottengo, ottieni, ottiene ; otteniamo,  
ottenete, ottengono. Pret. Ind. ottenni, &c. Fut. ot-  
terrò, &c. Imperative, ottieni, ottenga ; otteniamo, &c.  
Pres. Subj. che io ottenga, &c.

\* When in the verb "Muovere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted ; as *movendo*, *moviamo*, *moverò*, instead of *muovendo*, &c.

† The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

‡ When in the verb "Nuocere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted ; as *nocendo*, *nociamo*, *nocerò*, instead of *nuocendo*, &c.

**Parere, to appear.** Past Part. parso. Pres. Ind. paio, pari, pare ; paiamo, parete, paiono. Pret. Ind. pavsì, &c. Imperative, pari, paia ; paiamo, parete, paiano. Pres. Subj. che io paia, &c.

**Pendere, to hang up, to incline.** Past Part. peso. Pret. Ind. pesì, &c.

**Percorrere, to go over.** Past Part. percorso. Pret. Ind. percorsi, &c.

**Percuotere,\* to strike.** Past Part. percosso. Pret. Ind. percossi, &c.

**Permettere, to permit.** Past Part. permesso. Pret. Ind. permisi, &c.

**Persistere, to persist.** Past Part. persistito.

**Persuadere, to persuade.** Past Part. persuaso. Pret. Ind. persuasi, &c.

**Piacere, to please.** Past Part. piaciuto. Pres. Ind. piaccio, piaci, piace ; piacciamo, piacete, piacciono. Pret. Ind. piacqui, &c. Imperative, piaci, piaccia ; piacciamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io piaccia, &c.

**Piangere, to weep.** Past Part. pianto. Pret. Ind. piansi, &c.

**Pingere, to paint.** Past Part. pinto. Pret. Ind. pinsi, &c.

**Piovere, to rain (Impersonal, 135).** Past Part. piovuto. Pret. Ind. piovve.

**Porgere, to present, to hand.** Past Part. porto. Pret. Ind. porsi, &c.

**Porre, to put,** is contracted from "Ponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. ponendo. Imp. Ind. poneva, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. posto. Pres. Ind. pongo, poni, pone ; poniamo, ponete, pongono. Pret. Ind. posi, &c. Fut. porrò, &c. Imperative, poni, ponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io ponga, &c.

**Posporre, to postpone,** is contracted from "Posponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. posponendo. Imp. Ind. posponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. posposto. Pres. Ind. pongo, posponi, pospone ; posponiamo, posponete, pospongono. Pret. Ind. posposi, &c. Fut. posporrò, &c. Imperative, posponi, posponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io posponga, &c.

**Possedere, to possess.** Past Part. posseduto. Pres. Ind. possiedo, (or posseggo), possiedi, possiede ; possediamo, possedete, possiedono, (or posseggono). Imperative, possiedi, possegga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io possegga, &c.

---

\* When in the verb "Percuotere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted ; as *percotendo*, *percotiamo*, *percoterò*, instead of *percuotendo*, &c.

**Potere, to be able.** Pres. Ind. posso, puoi, può; possiamo, potete, possono. Fut. potrò, &c. Pres. Subj. che io possa, &c.

**Precidere, to cut off, to shorten.** Past part. preciso. Pret. Def. precisi, &c.

**Precorrere, to forerun.** Past Part. precorso. Pret. Ind. precorsi, &c.

**Prefiggere, to prefix.** Past Part. prefisso. Pret. Ind. prefissi, &c.

**Premettere, to place before.** Past Part. premesso. Pret. Ind. premisi, &c.

**Prendere, to take.** Past Part. preso. Pret. Ind. presi, &c.

**Preporre, to prefer,** is contracted from "Preponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. preponendo. Imp. Ind. preponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. preposto. Pres. Ind. prepongo, preponi, prepone; preponiamo, preponete, prepongono. Pret. Ind. preposi, &c. Fut. preporrò, &c. Imperative, preponi, preponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io preponga, &c.

**Prescrivere, to prescribe.** Past Part. prescritto. Pret. Ind. prescrissi, &c.

**Presumere, to presume.** Past Part. presunto. Pret. Ind. presunsi, &c.

**Prendere, to claim.** Past Part. preteso. Pret. Ind. pretesi, &c.

**Prevalere, to prevail.** Past Part. prevaluto. Pres. Ind. prevalgo, prevali, prevale; prevagliamo, prevaletе, prevalgono. Pret. Ind. prevalsi, &c. Imperative, prevali, prevalga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io prevalga, &c.

**Prevedere, to foresee.** Past Part. preveduto (or previsto). Pres. Ind. prevedo, (preveggo, or preveggió), prevedi, prevede; prevediamo (or preveggiamo), prevedete, prevedono, (or preveggono). Pret. Ind. prevedi, &c. Fut. prevedrò, &c. Imperative, prevedi, prevegga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io prevegga, &c.

**Produrre, to produce,** is contracted from "Producere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. producendo. Pres. Ind. produco, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. prodotto. Pret. Ind. produssi, &c. Fut. produrrò, &c. Imperative, produci, produca, &c. Pres. Subj. che io produca, &c.

**Profondere, to dissipate.** Past Part. profuso. Pret. Ind. profusi, &c.

**Promettere, to promise.** Past Part. promesso. Pret. Ind. promisi, &c.

**Promuovere,\* to promote.** Past Part. promosso. Pret. Ind. promossi, &c.

\* When in the verb "Promuovere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted; as *promovenào*, *promoviamo*, *promoverò*, instead of *promuovendo*, &c.

**Proporre, to propose**, is contracted from "Proponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. proponendo. Imp. Ind. proponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. proposto. Pres. Ind. propongo, proponi, propone ; proponiamo, proponete, propongono. Pret. Ind. proposi, &c. Fut. proporrò, &c. Imperative, proponi, proponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io proponga, &c.

**Prorompere, to break forth**. Past Part. prorotto. Pret. Ind. proruppi, &c.

**Proscrivere, to proscribe**. Past Part. proscritto. Pret. Ind. proscrissi, &c.

**Proteggere, to protect**. Past Part. protetto. Pret. Ind. protessi, &c.

**Provvedere, to provide**. Past Part. provveduto, (or provvisto). Pres. Ind. provvedo, (proveggo, or provveggo), provvedi, provvede ; provvediamo, (or provveggiamo), provvedete, provvedono, (or provveggono). Pret. Ind. provvidi, &c. Fut. provvedrò, &c. Imperative, provvedi, provvegga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io provvegga, &c.

**Protrarre, to protract**, is contracted from "Protraere." Ger. protraendo. Past Part. protratto. Pres. Ind. protraggo, protrai, protrae ; protraiamo, (or protraggiamo), protraete, protraggono. Imp. Ind. protraeva, &c. Pret. Ind. protrassi, protraesti, &c. Fut. protrarrò, &c. Imperative, protrai, protragga ; protraiamo, (or protraggiamo), protracte, protraggano. Imp. Subj. che io protraessi, &c.

**Pungere, to prick**. Past Part. punto. Pret. Ind. punsi, &c.

**Raccogliere, to pick up, to collect**. Past Part. raccolto. Pres. Ind. raccolgo, raccogli, raccoglie ; raccogliamo, raccogliete, raccolgono. Pret. Ind. raccolsi, &c. Fut. raccoglierò (or raccorrò), &c. Imperative, raccogli, raccolga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io raccolga, &c.

**Radere, to shave**. Past Part. raso. Pret. Ind. rasi, &c.

**Raggiungere, to overtake**. Past Part. raggiunto. Pret. Ind. raggiunsi, &c.

**Redimere, to redeem**. Past Part. redento. Pret. Ind. redensi, &c.

**Reggere, to rule, to support**. Past Part. retto. Pret. Ind. ressi, &c.

**Rendere, to render, to restore**. Past Part. reso. Pret. Ind. resi, &c.

**Resistere, to resist**. Past Part. resistito.

**Reprimere, to repress**. Past Part. represso. Pret. Ind. repressi, &c.

**Ricomporre, to compose again**, is contracted from "Ricomponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. ricomponendo. Imp. Ind. ricomponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are : Past Part. ricomposto. Pres. Ind. ricompongo, ricomponi, ricompone ; ricomponiamo, ricomponete, ricompongono. Pret. Ind. ricomposi, &c. Fut. ricomporrò, &c. Imperative, ricomponi, ricomponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io ricomponga, &c.

Riconoscere, *to recognise*. Past Part. riconosciuto. Pret. Ind. riconobbi, &c.

Ricorrere, *to have recourse*. Past Part. ricorso. Pret. Ind. ricorsi, &c.

Ridere, *to laugh*. Past Part. riso. Pret. Ind. risi, &c.

Ridurre, *to reduce*, is contracted from "Riducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. riducendo. Pres. Ind. riduco, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. ridotto. Pret. Ind. ridussi, &c. Fut. ridurrò.

Rimanere, *to remain*. Past Part. rimasto, (or rimaso). Pres. Ind. rimango, rimani, rimane; rimaniamo, rimanete, rimanono. Pret. Ind. rimasi, &c. Fut. rimarrò, &c. Imperative, rimani, rimanga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io rimanga, &c.

Rinchiudere, *to shut up*. Past Part. rinchiuso. Pret. Ind. rinchiusi, &c.

Rincrescere, *to be sorry for*, (Impersonal, 135), also *to be a burden to*. Past Part. rincresciuto. Pret. Ind. rincreschi, &c.

Riprendere, *to take back, to correct*. Past Part. ripreso. Pret. Ind. ripresi, &c.

Riscuotere,\* *to receive in payment, to exact*. Past Part. riscosso. Pret. Ind. riscossi, &c.

Risolvere, *to resolve*. Past Part. risoluto. Pret. Ind. risolsi, (or risolvei), &c.

Risorgere, *to rise again*. Past Part. risorto. Pret. Ind. risorsi, &c.

Rispondere, *to answer*. Past Part. risposto. Pret. Ind. risposi, &c.

Ritorcere, *to twist, to wring*. Past Part. ritorto. Pret. Ind. ritorci, &c.

Ritrarre, *to draw out, to portray*, is contracted from "Ritraere." Ger. ritraendo. Past Part. ritratto. Pres. Ind. ritraggo, ritrai, ritrae; ritraiamo, (or ritraggiamo), ritraete, ritraggono. Imp. Ind. ritraevo, &c. Pret. Ind. ritrassi, ritraesti, &c. Fut. ritrarrò, &c. Imperative, ritrai, ritragga, ritraiamo, ritraete, ritraggono. Imp. Subj. che io ritraessi, &c.

Rivolgere, *to turn over, to revolve*. Past Part. rivolto. Pret. Ind. rivolsi, &c.

Rivolversi, *to direct one's self to*, is conjugated like "Rivolgere."

Rodere, *to gnaw*. Past Part. roso. Pret. Ind. rosi, &c.

Rompere, *to break*. Past Part. rotto. Pret. Ind. ruppi, &c.

Sapere, *to know* (through the mind). Past Part. saputo. Pres. Ind. so, sai, sa; sappiamo, sapete, sanno. Pret. Ind. seppi, &c. Fut. saprò, &c. Imperative, sappi, sappia; sappiamo, sappiate,† sappiano. Pres. Subj. che io sappia, &c.

\* When in the verb "Riscuotere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u* may be omitted; as *riscotendo*, *riscotiamo*, *riscoterò*, instead of *riscuotendo*, &c.

† Notice the irregularity of "Sapere" in the Imperative.

**Scadere, to decline** (in value, health), *to come due*. Past Part. scaduto. Pret. Ind. scaddi, &c. Fut. scadrò, &c.\*

**Scegliere** (or **Scerre**), *to choose*. Past Part. scelto. Pres. Ind. scelgo, scegli, sceglie; scegliamo, scegliete, scegli~~o~~gono. Pret. Ind. scelsi, &c. Fut. sceglierò, (or scerrò), &c. Imperative, scegli, scelga; scegliamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io scelga. &c.

**Scendere, to descend**. Past Part. sceso. Pret. Ind. scesi, &c.

**Scogliere, to untie, to unravel**. Past Part. sciolto. Pres. Ind. scioglio, sciogli, scioglie; sciogliamo, sciogliete, sciogli~~o~~gono. Pret. Ind. sciolsi, &c. Fut. sciorrò, (or scioglierò) &c. Imperative, sciogli, sciolga; sciogliamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io sciolga, &c.

**Scommettere, to bet**. Past Part. scommesso. Pret. Ind. scommisi, &c.

**Scomporre, to discompose**, is contracted from "Scomponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. scomponendo. Imp. Ind. scomponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. scomposto. Pres. Ind. scomp~~o~~ngo, scomponi, scompone; scomponiamo, scomponete, scompon~~o~~gono. Pret. Ind. scomposi, &c. Fut. scomporrò, &c. Imperative, scomponi, scomp~~o~~nga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io scomponga, &c.

**Sconfiggere, to conquer, to defeat**. Past Part. sconfitto. Pret. Ind. sconfissi, &c.

**Sconvolgere, to overturn**. Past Part. sconvolto. Pret. Ind. sconvolsi, &c.

**Scorgere, to perceive, to discern, to guide**. Past Part. scorto. Pret. Ind. scorsi, &c.

**Scorrere, to flow hastily, to run quickly**. Past Part. scorso. Pret. Ind. scorsi, &c.

**Scrivere, to write**. Past Part. scritto. Pret. Ind. scrissi, &c.

**Scuotere,† to shake**. Past Part. scosso. Pret. Ind. scossi, &c.

**Sedere, to sit down**. Past Part. seduto. Pres. Ind. seggo, siedi, siede; sediamo, sedete, seggono. Imperative, siedi, segga; sediamo, sedete, seggano. Pres. Subj. che io segga, &c.

**Sedurre, to seduce**, is contracted from "Seducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. seducendo. Pres. Ind. seduco, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. sedotto. Pret. Ind. sedussi, &c. Fut. sedurrò, &c.

**Smettere, to leave off**. Past Part. smesso. Pret. Ind. smisi, &c.

**Socchiudere, to half shut**. Past Part. socchiuso. Pret. Ind. socchiusi, &c.

**Soccorrere, to succour**. Past Part. soccorso. Pret. Ind. soccorsi, &c.

**Soggiungere, to add**. Past Part. soggiunto. Pret. Ind. soggiunsi, &c.

**Sommergere, to submerge**. Past Part. sommerso. Pret. Ind. sommersi, &c.

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

† When in the verb "Scuotere" the tonic accent does not fall on the *o*, the letter *u*, may be omitted; as *scotendo*, *scotiamo*, *scoterò*, instead of *scuotendo*, &c.



**Solere, (or Esser solito) to be accustomed.** Past Part. solito. Pres. Ind. soglio, suoli, suole; [sogliamo, solete, sogliono; or sono solito, sei solito, &c. Imp. Ind. soleva, &c., or era solito, &c. Pres. Subj. che io soglia, &c., or che io sia solito, &c. Imp. Subj. che io solessi, &c., or che io fossi solito, &c.

**Sommettere, to submit.** Past Part. sommessio. Pret. Ind. sommessi, &c.

**Sopraggiungere, to come unexpectedly.** Past Part. sopraggiunto. Pret. Ind. sopraggiunsi, &c.

**Sopravvivere, to survive.** Past Part. sopravvivuto, (or sopravvissuto). Pret. Ind. sopravvissi, &c.

**Sopprimere, to suppress.** Past Part. soppresso. Pret. Ind. soppressi, &c.

**Sorgere, to rise.** Past Part. sorto. Pret. Ind. sorsi, &c.

**Sorprendere, to surprise.** Past Part. sorpreso. Pret. Ind. sorpresi, &c.

**Sorreggere, to support.** Past Part. sorretto. Pret. Ind. sorressi, &c.

**Sorridere, to smile.** Past Part. sorriso. Pret. Ind. sorrisi, &c.

**Sospendere, to suspend.** Past Part. sospeso. Pret. Ind. sospesi, &c.

**Sospingere, to push.** Past Part. sospinto. Pret. Ind. sospinsi, &c.

**Sostenere, to sustain.** Pres. Ind. sostengo, sostieni, sostiene; sosteniamo, sostenete, sostengono. Pret. Ind. sostenni, &c. Fut. sosterrò, &c. Imperative, sostieni, sostenga; sosteniano, &c. Pres. Subj. che io sostenga, &c.

**Sottintendere, to be understood.** Past Part. sottinteso. Pret. Ind. sottintesi, &c.

**Sottomettere, to submit.** Past Part. sottomesso. Pret. Ind. sottomisi, &c.

**Sottoporre, to subdue.** Past Part. sottoposto. Pret. Ind. sottoposi, &c.

**Sottoscrivere, to subscribe.** Past Part. sottoscritto. Pret. Ind. sottoscrissi, &c.

**Sottrarre, to draw away,** is contracted from "Sottraere." Ger. sottraendo. Past Part. sottratto. Pres. Ind. sottraggo, sottrai, sottrae; sottraiamo, (or sottraggiamo), sottraete, sottraggono. Imp. Ind. sottraeva, &c. Pret. Ind. sottrassi, sottraesti, &c. Fut. sottrarrò. Imperative, sottrai, sottragga; sottraiamo, (or sottraggiamo), sottraete, sottraggano. Imp. Subj. che io sottraessi, &c.

**Spandere, to spread.** Past Part. spanto. Pret. Ind. spansi, &c.

**Spargere, to scatter.** Past Part. sparso. Pret. Ind. sparsi, &c.

**Spegner**, *to extinguish*. Past Part. spento. Pres. Ind. spengo, spegni, spegne; spegnamo, spegnete, **spengono**. Pret. Ind. spensi, &c. Imperative, spegni, spenga; spegnamo, spegnete, spengano. Pres. Subj. che io spenga, &c.

**Spendere**, *to spend*. Past Part. speso. Pret. Ind. spesi, &c.

**Spingere**, *to push*. Past Part. spinto. Pret. Ind. spinzi, &c.

**Sporgere**, *to project*. Past Part. sporto. Pret. Ind. sporsi, &c.

**Stendere**, *to extend*. Past Part. steso. Pret. Ind. stesi, &c.

**Storcere**, *to twist*. Past Part. storto. Pret. Ind. storsi, &c.

**Straccoccare**, *to cook too much*. Past Part. straccotto. Pret. Ind. straccossi, &c.

**Stravolgere**, *to twist, to distort*. Past Part. stravolto. Pret. Ind. stravolsi, &c.

**Stringere**, *to tighten*. Past Part. stretto. Pret. Ind. strinsi, &c.

**Struggere**, *to melt, to dissolve*. Past Part. strutto. Pret. Ind. strussi, &c.

**Svellere**, *to pluck up*. Past Part. svelto. Pret. Ind. svelsi, &c.

**Suddividere**, *to subdivide*. Past Part. suddiviso. Pret. Ind. suddivisi, &c.

**Svolgere**, *to dissuade*. Past Part. svolto. Pret. Ind. svolzi, &c.

**Supporre**, *to suppose*, is contracted from "Supponere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. supponendo. Imp. Ind. supponeva, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. supposto. Pres. Ind. suppongo, supponi, suppone; supponiamo, supponete, **suppongo**. Pret. Ind. supposi, &c. Fut. supporrò, &c. Imperative, supponi, supponga, &c. Pres. Subj. che io supponga, &c.

**Tacere**, *to be silent*. Past Part. tacinto. Pres. Ind. taccio, taci, tace; tacciamo, tacete, **tacciono**. Pret. Ind. tacqui, &c. Imperative, taci, taccia; tacciamo, &c.

**Tendere**, *to tend, to incline to, to stretch*. Past Part. teso. Pret. Ind. tesi, &c.

**Tenere**, *to keep, to hold*. Pres. Ind. tengo, tieni, tiene; teniamo, tenete, **tengono**. Pret. Ind. tenni, &c. Fut. terrò, &c. Imperative, tieni, tenga; teniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io tenga, &c.

**Tergere**, *to clean, to dry up*. Past Part. terso. Pret. Ind. tersi, &c.

**Tingere**, *to dye*. Past Part. tinto. Pret. Ind. tinsi, &c.

**Togliere**, (or **Torre**), *to take away*. Past Part. tolto. Pres. Ind. tolgo, toglì, toglie; togliamo, togliete, **tolgono**. Pret. Ind. tolsi, &c. Fut. toglierò (or **torrò**), &c. Imperative, togli, tolga; togliamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io tolga, &c.

**Torcere**, *to twist*. Past Part. torto. Pret. Ind. torsi, &c.

**Tradurre, to translate,** is contracted from "Traducere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. traducendo. Pres. Ind. traduco, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. tradotto. Pret. Ind. tradussi, &c. Fut. tradurrò, &c.

**Trarre, to draw, to extract,** is contracted from "Traere." Ger. traendo. Past Part. tratto. Pres. Ind. traggo, trai, trae; traiamo, (or traggiamo), traete, **traggono**. Imp. Ind. traevo, &c. Pret. Ind. trassi, traesti, &c. Fut. trarrò, &c. Imperative, trai, tragga; traiamo, traete, **traggano**. Imp. Subj. che io traessi, &c.

**Trascendere, to go beyond.** Past Part. trasceso. Pret. Ind. trascesi, &c.

**Trascorrere, to elapse, to pass over quickly.** Past Part. trascorso. Pret. Ind. trascorsi, &c.

**Trasmettere, to transmit.** Past Part. trasmesso. Pret. Ind. trasmisi, &c.

**Trattenere, to stop, to entertain.** Pres. Ind. trattengo, trattieni, trattiene; tratteniamo, trattenete, **trattengono**. Pret. Ind. trattenni, &c. Fut. tratterò, &c. Imperative, trattieni, trattenga; tratteniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io trattenga, &c.

**Uccidere, to kill.** Past Part. ucciso. Pret. Ind. uceisi, &c.

**Ungere, to anoint.** Past Part. unto. Pret. Ind. unsi, &c.

**Valere, to be worth.** Pres. Ind. valgo, vali, vale; vagliamo, valetе, **valgono**. Pret. Ind. valse, &c. Fut. varrò, &c. Imperative, vali, valga; vagliamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io valga, &c.

**Vedere, to see.** Pres. Ind. vedo, (veggo, or veggio), vedi, vede; vediamo, vedete, **vedono**, (or **veggono**). Pret. Ind. vidi, &c. Fut. vedrò, &c. Imperative, vedi, veda, (or veggia); vediamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io vegga, &c.

**Vilipendere, to vilify.** Past Part. vilipeso. Pret. Ind. vilipesi, &c.

**Vincere, to win, to vanquish.** Past Part. vinto. Pret. Ind. vinsi, &c.

**Vivere, to live.** Past Part. vivuto, (or vissuto). Pret. Ind. vissi, &c.

**Volere, to be willing.** Pres. Ind. voglio, (or vo'), vuoi, vuole; vogliamo, volete, **vogliono**. Pret. Ind. volli, &c. Fut. vorrò, &c.

The Imperative of "Volere" is only used in the third person singular, and in the second and third persons plural: voglia, vogliate,\* **vogliono**. Pres. Subj. che io voglia, &c.

**Volgere, to turn.** Past Part. volto. Pret. Ind. volsi, &c.

---

\* Notice the irregularity of "Volere" in the Imperative.

## VOCABULARY.

Il suo ritratto,	his portrait.	Una margheritina,	a daisy.
Questa cornice,	this frame.	Un garofano,	a pink.
Il salotto,	the parlour.	Un giglio,	a lily.
La proposta,	the proposal.	Una viola,	a violet.
La serva,	the servant, (maid).	Un convolvolo,	a convolvulus.
I miei occhiali,	my spectacles.	Un giacinto,	a hyacinth.
La via, il cammino,	the road.	Una foglia,	a leaf.

Quasi,	almost.	Fino a,	until.
Forse,	perhaps.	D'allora in quà,	since then.

## EXERCISE XXI.

Where is the servant? She is in the parlour, lighting (138) the fire. Here is the picture; put a frame to it (106). I have some lilies, will you have any? I thank you, I will have one (108). I beg of you (30) to think over the proposal I have made to you (89). Yes, I will; (98) and when (115) I have thought over it, I will decide. Did you drink any good wine in Italy? No; we did not drink wine; we drank tea, coffee, and water. Perhaps you remember that on (52) Tuesday you promised to send me to (97) France. I know I have, (98) but you must wait until next month. Have you written to the girl's uncle? Yes, I wrote (Pret. Def.) to him yesterday. I should have read the woman's letter, if (72) I had had my spectacles with me. He had painted the lady's portrait. We shall discuss that question\* to-morrow. Do not shut the window, if you please. Does this road lead to the town? Yes, it does. He desired† me to paint him (89) a portrait of his brother. He could not answer (to) my question.\*

140. \* When *question* means *argument*, it is translated into Italian by "Questione;" when it means *dispute*, it is translated by "Lite;" but when it means *inquiry*, it is translated by "Domanda," "Interrogazione," "Quesito."

141. † When *to desire* means *to wish*, it is translated into Italian by "Desiderare;" but when it means *to ask, to beg*, it is translated by "Pregare." Ex.

Mi pregò d'assistere alla ceremonia.	He desired me to be present at the ceremony.
---	---

## VOCABULARY.

Questo colore,	this colour.	Un canto,	a canto.
La mia promessa,	my promise.	Versi sciolti,	blank verse.
Un cavallo,	a horse.	Il vicinato,	the neighbourhood.
Il mio cane,	my dog.	Questa vista,	this view.
Questo gatto,	this cat.	Un tappeto,	a carpet.
Un'ora,	an hour.	Il margine,	the border.
Un minuto,	a minute.	Una siepe,	a hedge.
Un nemico,	an enemy.	Un albero,	a tree.
<hr/>			
Regolarmente,	regularly.	Verso,	towards.
Sfrrenatamente,	recklessly.	Indietro,	behind.
Abbondantemente,	abundantly.	Alla moda,	in fashion.

## EXERCISE XXII.

Why did you remain behind us yesterday? I remained behind to (103) see if I could induce Frederick to go (139) with us. Has your brother read "La Gerusalemme Liberata?" Yes, he has; (98) and he is now reading (76) "La Secchia Rapita." Why have you chosen this colour? I chose (77) it because it is in fashion. Do you not remember that you promised to give me (91) your dog? Yes, and I will keep my promise. I would write to him regularly, if (72) I had time. Take this English carpet, and put a border to it (106). What is your cousin doing now? He is translating "La Divina Commedia," in blank verse. Yesterday he translated (Pret. Ind.) two cantos (108). If I had friends in this neighbourhood, I would remain here for a week.\* I should like to sketch some of these beautiful views. What flowers are these? They are convolvuli; they grow abundantly in these hedges. We perceived a man and a woman coming (138) towards us. We did not know if they were friends or enemies.

142. \* When *for* precedes a noun indicating time, it is either not translated into Italian, or it is translated by "Durante." Ex.

Parlò tre ore di seguito.

Sono stato a Parigi sei giorni.

He spoke for three hours consecutively.

I have been to Paris for six days.

## LESSON XVIII.

## ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF ALL THE IMPORTANT IRREGULAR, AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION, IN "IRE."

ONLY THE IRREGULAR FORMS OF THE VERBS ARE GIVEN.

Adempire, *to fulfil*. Pres. Ind. adempio, adempi, adempie, &c. Imperative, adempi, adempia, &c. Pres. Subj. che io adempia, &c.

Apparire, *to appear*. Past Part. apparso. Pret. Ind. apparvi, (or apparii), &c.\*

Aprire, *to open*. Past Part. aperto.

Assalire, *to assault*. Pres. Ind. assalgo, assali, assale; assagiamo, assalite, assalgoni. Imperative, assali, assalga, assagliamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io assalga, &c.

Benedire, *to bless*, is contracted from "Benedicere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. benedicendo. Pres. Ind. benedico, benedici, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. benedetto. Pret. Ind. benedissi, &c.

Comparire, *to appear suddenly*. Past Part. comparso. Pret. Ind. comparvi, &c.\*

Costruire, *to construct*. Past Part. costruito, (or costruito). Pret. Ind. costrussi, &c.

Contraddire, *to contradict*, is abbreviated from "Contraddicere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. contraddicendo. Pres. Ind. contraddico, contraddici, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. contraddetto. Pret. Ind. contraddissi, &c.

Convenire, *to suit, to agree upon, to meet by appointment*. Past Part. convenuto. Pres. Ind. convengo, convieni, conviene; conveniamo, convenite, convengono. Pret. Ind. convenni, &c. Fut. converrò, &c. Imperative, convieni, convenga, conveniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io convenga, &c.\*

Coprire, *to cover*. Past Part. coperto.

Cucire, *to sew*. Pres. Ind. cucio, cuci, cuce, &c. Imperative, cuci, cucia, &c. Pres. Subj. che io cucia, &c.

---

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

Dire, *to tell, to say*, is contracted from "Dicere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. dicendo. Pres. Ind. dico, dici, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. detto. Pret. Ind. dissi, &c. Imperative, di', dica; diciamo, dite, dicano. Pres. Subj. che io dica, &c.

Disdire, *to deny*.  
Disdirsi, \* *to unsay*. } Conjugated like "Dire."

Divenire, *to become*. Past Part. divenuto. Pres. Ind. divengo, divieni, diviene; diveniamo, divenite, divengono. Pret. Ind. divenni, &c. Fut. diverrò, &c. Imperative, divieni, divenga; diveniamo, &c. Pres. Subj. che io divenga, &c.\*

Gire, *to go*, is only used, in the lofty style, in the following forms:—Gito, *gone*. Gla, or giva, *I, he, or she used to go*. Givano, *they used to go*. Gi, or glo, *he, or she went*. Girono *they went*. Gite, *go (you)*.\*

Instruire, *to instruct*. Pret. Ind. instrussi, &c.

Ire, *to go*, is only used, in the lofty style, in the following forms:—Ito, *gone*. Iva, *I, he, or she used to go*. Ivano, *they used to go*. Ireto, *we shall go*. Irete, *you will go*. Iranno, *they will go*. Ite, *go (you)*.\*

Maledire, *to curse*, is contracted from "Maledicere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. maledicendo. Pres. Ind. maledico, maledici, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. maledetto. Pret. Ind. maledissi, &c.

Morire, *to die*. Past Part. morto. Pres. Ind. muoio (or moro), muori, muore; moriamo, morite, muoiono (or muorono). Fut. morirò (or morrò), &c. Imperative, muori, muoia; moriamo, morite, muoiano. Pres. Subj. che io muoia, &c.\*

Offrire, *to offer*. Past Part. offerto. Pret. Ind. offersi (or offrii), &c.

Olire, *to be fragrant*, is only used in the lofty style, in the Imp. Ind.:—oliva, olivi, &c.

Predire, *to predict*, is contracted from "Predicere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus: Ger. predicendo. Pres. Ind. predico, predici, &c. Imperative, predici, predica, &c. Pres. Subj. che io predica, &c.

Its irregular forms are: Past Part. predetto. Pret. Ind. predissi, &c.

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."

Redire, *to return*, is only used, in the lofty style, in the following forms : Riedi, *thou returnest*, and Riede, *he or she returns*.

Ridire, *to repeat*, is contracted from "Ridicere," and is, therefore, conjugated thus : Ger. *ridicendo*. Pres. Ind. *ridico, ridici, &c.*

The irregular forms are : Past Part. *ridetto*. Pret. Ind. *ridissi, &c.* Imperative, *ridici, ridica, &c.* Pres. Subj. *che io ridica, &c.*

Riuscire, (or Riescire) *to succeed*. Past Part. *riuscito*. Pres. Ind. *riesco, riesci, riesce ; riusciamo, riuscite, riescono*. Imperative, *riesci, riesca ; riusciamo, riuscite, riescamo*. Pres. Subj. *che io riesca, &c.\**

Salire, *to ascend*. Pres. Ind. *salgo, sali sale ; saliamo, salite, salgono*. Pret. Ind. *salsi, (or salii), &c.* Imperative, *sali, salga ; saliamo, &c.* Pres. Subj. *che io salga, &c.*

Soffrire, *to suffer*. Past Part. *sofferto*. Pret. Ind. *soffersi, (or soffrii), &c.*

Sovvenire, *to help*. Past Part. *sovvenuto*. Pres. Ind. *sovvengo, sovveni, sovviene ; sovveniamo, sovvenite, sovvengono*. Pret. Ind. *sovvenni, &c.* Fut. *sovrerrò, &c.* Imperative, *sovveni, sovvennga ; sovveniamo, &c.* Pres. Subj. *che io sovvennga, &c.*

Sovvenirsi, *to remember*, conjugated like "Sovvenire."\*

Svenire, *to faint away*. Past Part. *svenuto*. Pres. Ind. *svengo, sveni, sviene ; sveniamo, svenite, svencono*. Pret. Ind. *svenni, &c.* Imperative, *sveni, svenga ; sveniamo, &c.* Pres. Subj. *che io svenga, &c.\**

Udire, *to hear*. Pres. Ind. *odo, odi, ode ; udiamo, udite, odono*. Fut. *udirò, &c.* Imperative, *odi, oda ; udiamo, udite, odano*. Pres. Subj. *che io oda, &c.*

Uscire, or Escire, *to go out*. Past Part. *uscito*. Pres. Ind. *esco, esci, esce ; usciamo, uscite, escono*. Imperative, *esci, esca ; usciamo, uscite, escano*. Pres. Subj. *che io esca, &c.\**

Venire, *to come*. Past Part. *venuto*. Pres. Ind. *vengo, vieni, viene ; veniamo, venite, vengono*. Pret. Ind. *venni, &c.* Fut. *verrò, &c.* Imperative, *veni, venga ; veniamo, &c.* Pres. Subj. *che io venga, &c.*

---

\* The compound tenses of this verb are formed with "Essere."



## VOCABULARY.

Un delitto,	a crime.	Una circostanza,	a circumstance.
Una ferita,	a wound.	L'evento,	the event.
La verità,	the truth.	Il mio impiego,	my office.
La mia opinione,	} my opinion.	L'assenza,	the absence.
Il mio parere,		Una rivista,	a review.
Questo letto,	this bed.	La colazione,	the breakfast.
Un consiglio,	an advice.	La mattina,	the morning.
<hr/>			
Pericoloso,	dangerous.	Sfavorevole,	unfavourable.
<hr/>			
Come,	as.	Eppure,	and yet.
Ebbene !	well !	Neppure,	not even.
Benissimo,	very well.	Tanto,	so, (so much.)
Solamente,	only.	Durante,	during.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

He has committed a crime, and will be punished for it. (108). This wound is not dangerous, he will not die of it (108). She always tells the truth, and yet nobody believes her (89). You always contradict me ; I do not know why. I do not contradict you ; I only\* tell you my opinion. He would not have suffered so much from his wound, if (72) he had remained in bed. I go out every morning before breakfast. Is the door open? Yes it is open, but the window is shut. Who will sew my dress? This girl will ; (98) she can sew very well. William will go out with me on (52) Saturday morning. My brother is gone out, and I do not know when he will return. Well, have you succeeded (120) in your undertaking? No; I shall never succeed under (in) circumstances so unfavourable. The event happened (77 and 136) as it had been predicted (Pluperf. Ind.) I performed the duty of his office during his absence. If you had gone out at the time, you would have seen the review. He would not even give me his advice.

---

143. \* In Italian, adverbs are generally placed after the verbs they modify. Ex.

Le dico semplicemente la  
mia opinione.

I simply tell you my opin-  
ion.

## VOCABULARY.

L' assalto,	the attack.	Il pranzo,	the dinner.
Una passeggiata,	a walk.	Un piatto,	a dish.
Un albergo,	an inn.	Un birbone,	a rogue.
<hr/>			
Bene,	well.	Di vista,	by sight.
Per tempo,	early.	Estremamente,	exceedingly.
Ancora,	again.	Sfortunatamente,	unfortunately.
Finora,	as yet.	Addio,	good-bye.

## EXERCISE XXIV.

My uncle started for Paris yesterday morning. He came with his friend George to (103) say good-bye to us. (91). He told me that he would return next spring. Henry's coat was (Imp. Ind.) torn, but my mother sewed it up (77) again. What have they discovered? I do not know, but the discovery will soon be known. The garrison was assailed early this morning, but as yet they have resisted (to) the attacks of the enemy. Do you know Mrs. James? Yes, I know her by sight. She often comes to my father's house, but I have never seen her there (107). I go out every morning to (103) take (Fare) a walk. William and I dined at the village inn; I assure you (91) that the dinner was well served, and the dishes were exceedingly well seasoned. Do not go out (33 and 53) Henry; your father wishes to speak to you. You must know that I have decided to travel about for (142) a year or two. You would have succeeded in your undertaking, but unfortunately, you had to deal with\* a rogue.

---

144. \* *To deal with* is translated by "Aver da fare con."

When the preposition *to* precedes a verb in the Infinitive Mood, which depends on the verbs *to have*, or *to be* it is expressed by "da," or by "a";—by "da" when an idea of right, or duty is to be indicated, and by "a" when no idea of right, or duty is to be expressed. Ex.

Avete da fare con un birbante.	You have to deal with a rascal.
È da considerarsi che. †...	It is to be considered that...
Ho da scrivere tre lettere.	I have three letters to write.
Non è da negarsi che....	It is not to be denied that....
È facile a capirsi.	It is easily understood.
Questi fiori sono belli a vedersi.	These flowers are beautiful to look at.

---

† Or "È da considerare che...."

## LESSON XIX.

## ON THE USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

145. In English the Definite Article (*the*) precedes a noun *only* when that noun is used to point out some *particular* person or persons, thing or things, as, for instance: "the queen was present at the ceremony;" "the soldiers were rewarded as well as the officers." But in Italian the Definite Article, "*il*," "*lo*," or "*la*;" "*i*," "*gli*," or "*le*," (see rule 1), is used in all the following cases:—

- 146.—I. Before any noun (concrete or abstract), employed in a definite sense, that is to say employed to express—(a) the whole of its genus—(b) a whole class—(c) an individual.  
Ex.

Gli animali sono utili all' uomo.      Animals are useful to men.

Gli uomini irascibili commettono gravi errori.      Hot-tempered men commit grave errors.

L'oro è più caro che l'argento.      Gold is dearer than silver.

La virtù è ammirata persino dai cattivi.      Virtue is admired even by the wicked.

L'amore della verità.      The love of truth.

- 147.—II. Before titles of persons. Ex.

Il dottor Sangrado.      Doctor Sangrado.

- 148.—III. Before the names of countries and provinces. Ex.

L'Asia è molto più grande che l'Europa.      Asia is much larger than Europe.

La Borgogna è una provincia fertile.      Burgundy is a fertile province.

149. Notice, however, that if the name of a country or province be preceded by the preposition "*in*," or if a province has the same name as its capital town, no article is used. Ex.

Egli è andato in Italia.      He is gone to Italy.

Napoli è una bella provincia.      Naples is a fine province.

- 150.—IV. Before the names of a few towns, the most important of which are the following: Il Cairo, l'Aia (the Hague), la Rochelle, la Mecca, la Mirandola.

151.—V. Before the names of very distinguished persons. Ex. Il Dante,\* il Milton, la Saffo, il Molière, il Tiziano, il Tasso, il Darwin.

152. Notice, that no article is used before the names of distinguished persons, if more than one word is used to designate them. Ex.

Dante Alighieri morì a	Dante Alighieri died in
Ravenna, dopo aver sof-	Ravenna, after having
ferto lungo e penosissimo	suffered a long and most
esilio.	painful exile.

153. In Italian the Definite Article is also placed before Adjectives, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections, and Verbs used in the Infinitive Mood, when they are used as nouns. Ex.

Carlo ama l'utile.	Charles is fond of what is useful.
Esito fra il sì e il no.	I waver between yes and no.
Il saper ascoltare è utile.	To know how to listen is useful.

154. When several nouns follow one another in the same sentence (whether used as subjects, or objects), the Definite Article must be repeated in Italian before each of them, when it is already expressed before the first. Ex.

Il ferro, l'oro, e l'argento sono	Iron, gold, and silver, are very use-
metalli utilissimi.	ful metals.

Ieri vidi il re, la regina, ed	I saw the king, queen, and princes
i principi.	yesterday.

Parlai all' ufficiale, ed ai soldati.	I spoke to the officers, and soldiers.
---------------------------------------	--

155. When two adjectives are united by the conjunction "e," and one of them is intended to qualify a substantive expressed and the other a substantive understood, the article must be repeated, in Italian, before each adjective. Ex.

Conosce la storia antica e la	He knows ancient, and modern
moderna.	history.

Hanno provato la buona e la cat-	They have experienced good, and
tiva fortuna.	bad fortune.

156. But, when the adjectives, united by "e," qualify only one substantive, and no other is understood, the article is not repeated. Ex.

Anna d'Austria, la bella ed altiera	Anne of Austria, the proud and
regina di Francia.	beautiful queen of France.

---

157. \* "Il Dante," "Il Tiziano," mean "Il poeta Dante," "Il pittore Tiziano;" making the same ellipsis, Boccaccio wrote "La Fiammetta," meaning "La Bella Fiammetta," and we now say, in speaking of women, "La Catterina," meaning "La cara Caterina," or "La serva Catterina."

## ON THE OMISSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

No Definite Article is required in Italian.

- 158.—I. Before any noun or name used adjectively, or preceded by a past participle, (expressed or understood), as “coperto di,” &c. Ex.
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Guarda, sorella mia, che bell’ anello d’oro. | Look, sister, what a beautiful gold ring. |
| Il regno d’Italia.                           | The kingdom of Italy.                     |
| Il baule era coperto di polvere.             | The trunk was covered with dust.          |
| Un canestro (pieno) di fiori.                | A basket of flowers.                      |
- 159.—II. Before any noun used adverbially, or preceded by “senza,” *without*, “nè,” *neither, nor*, or “sia,” *whether it be*. Ex.
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Luigi lavora con perseveranza.                | Louis works with perseverance.                        |
| Il suo socio è un uomo senza merito.          | His partner is a man without merit.                   |
| Ella non ha nè bellezza, nè talento.          | She has neither beauty, nor talent.                   |
| Sia superbia, sia timidità, non volle venire. | Whether through pride or timidity, he would not come. |
- 160.—III. Before nouns used in apposition with preceding words. Ex.
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Dublino, capitale dell’ Irlanda.       | Dublin, the capital of Ireland.                |
| Sposò Margherita, figlia di Enrico II. | He married Margaret, the daughter of Henry II. |
- 161.—IV. Before nouns used emphatically. Ex.
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Uomini, donne, fanciulli, tutto perì!       | Men, women, children, everything perished!    |
| Soldati! la patria conta sul vostro valore. | Soldiers! the country counts upon your valor. |
- 162.—V. Before the ordinal numbers “primo,” *first*, “secondo,” *second*, &c. When they come after the name of a sovereign, or after the words “libro,” *book*, “capo,” or “capitolo,” *chapter*, or such like. Ex.
- |                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Enrico secondo, | Henry the second.  |
| Capitolo primo. | Chapter the first. |

## NOTE.

With regard to the Syntax of the Partitive Article, (“del,” “dello,” “della,” &c.), the Italian language is in perfect harmony with the English, so that all that the Student requires to know on this point is fully stated in LESSON IV., page 24, of this grammar.

NOTE.—THE WORDS REQUIRED TO COMPOSE THIS AND THE FOLLOWING EXERCISES ARE GIVEN IN THE VOCABULARY AT THE END OF THIS GRAMMAR.

## EXERCISE XXV.

Necessity (146) is the mother of invention. I prefer fruit (146) to flowers. Hope (146) is the dream of a man awake. Victory is glorious when it confines itself to the subduing of (124) an enemy, but it becomes odious when it oppresses the unfortunate. Flowers (146) are very dear this season of the year. Let us banish vice, and cherish virtue. Physiognomy is the mirror of the soul. France (148) is separated from Italy by (125) the Alps, and from Spain by the Pyrenees. Conscience is the voice of the soul, the passions are the voice of the body. Drawing (146) owes its origin to chance, sculpture to religion, and painting to the progress of the other arts. Faith, hope, and charity, are the cardinal virtues. General Garibaldi (147) died in Caprera. Glory follows virtue like a shadow. Hunger (146) is a powerful incentive to crime. Fear and ignorance are the sources of superstition. The love of music and poetry is universal in Italy. Eating (124 and 153) drinking, and sleeping are necessary to man. He visited Cairo, (160) the capital of Egypt. Good manners (146) captivate the heart. Good laws make good men. The general praised the courage (154) and humanity of the soldiers. Captain (147) Bravo wishes to speak to your father. Go and (to) tell him (91) that my father is in (149) France; and will not have returned (Translate "will not return") before the end of next month. It is necessary\* to start at once.

163. \* The verbs "Essere mestieri," "Essere d'uopo," "Bisognare," &c., *to be necessary*: "Lasciare," *to let, or to allow*; "Fare," *to make, or to cause*; "Sapere," *to know how*; "Potere," *to be able*; "Volere," *to be willing*; "Dovere," *to be obliged*; "Solere," *to be accustomed*; "Intendere," *to hear*; "Sentire," *to feel, or to hear*, and "Udire," *to hear, do not* require any preposition after them, when they are followed by a verb in the Infinitive. Ex.

Bisogna essere forte per lottare con lui.	It is necessary to be strong to wrestle with him.
---	---

Voglio sapere se il Signor Conte Bruschini è arrivato.	I want to know if Count Bruschini has arrived.
--	--

Dovreste comprargli un paio di stivali.	You ought to buy him a pair of boots.
---	---------------------------------------

## LESSON XX.

## ON THE USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

164. The Indefinite Article is a word placed before a noun to limit its signification.

165. The English Indefinite Article, "a" or "an," is more frequently used than the Italian Indefinite Article, "un," "uno," "una."

In the following cases *no* Indefinite Article is used in Italian:—

166— I. Before nouns used in apposition with preceding words. Ex.

I Rivali, eccellente commedia	The Rivals, an excellent
dello Sheridan.	comedy of Sheridan.

167— II. Before nouns expressing nationality, title, profession, and condition, used adjectively. Ex.

Sono Scozzese.	I am a Scotchman.
Suo nipote è libraio.	His nephew is a bookseller.
Mio nonno era generale.	My grandfather was a general.
Ora è prigioniero.	Now he is a prisoner.

168. Notice that when nouns expressing nationality, &c., are qualified, the Indefinite Article is required before them. Ex.

Maria Stuarda era una principessa di sventurata razza.	Mary Stuart was a princess of an unfortunate race.
--	--

169— III. Before "cento," *a hundred*, and "mille," *a thousand*. Ex.  
Comprarono cento quadri per mille lire sterline. They bought a hundred pictures for a thousand pounds.

170— IV. Before the title of a book, or the heading of a chapter. Ex.

Vita di Lord Macaulay.	A Life of Lord Macaulay.
Saggio sull' uomo.	An Essay on Man.

171— V. After "che," "quale," *what a*, used exclamatively. Ex.

Che peccato!	What a pity!
Che uomo siete!	What a man you are!
Che bel castello!	What a beautiful castle!

172— VI. Before "più," *more*, and "meno," *less*. Ex.

Più egli guadagna, più spende.	The more he earns, the more he spends.
--------------------------------	--

173—VII. In the expressions "Far regalo di," *to make a present of*, "Metter fine a," *to put an end to*, "Far segno," *to make a sign*.

## ON THE DIFFERENT USE OF THE ARTICLE.

174. Before the names of measure, weight, number and time, the Italians use the definite article instead of the indefinite article, as the English do. Ex.

Hopagato questo panno cin- I have paid five shillings a  
que scellini il braccio. yard for this cloth.

Queste pere costano due These pears cost a penny a  
soldi la libbra. pound.

Questi aranci si vendono These oranges are sold a  
un franco la dozzina. franc a dozen.

Abbiamo lezione di canto tre We have singing lessons  
volte la settimana. three times a week.

Egli guadagna due scellini He earns two shillings an  
l'ora. hour.

## EXERCISE XXVI.

Michel Angelo was (168) a sculptor, a painter, an architect, and a poet of great celebrity. When I made his acquaintance he was a banker; (167) now he is a poor workman. What are you reading, (76) Henry? "I Lombardi alla prima Crociata," a (166) very fine poem, by Tommaso Grossi. My father is a captain (167) in the French army. We bought (77) a hundred (169) Turkish mules for a thousand (169) guineas. This cloth costs six shillings a (174) yard. The best coffee comes from Mocha, a town in Arabia. I give four shillings a day to my gardener. What is the title of Charles' new book? "A (166) life of Lord Palmerston." What a (171) beautiful morning! shall we go out for a walk? What a (171) beautiful horse! where did you buy it? (96). I bought it (96) from Colonel James. This man works by the hour;\* he earns three shillings an (174) hour. Her father knows† a great deal; he gains six hundred guineas a year. Captain Cook was a celebrated navigator. (168).

175. \* The expressions *to work by the hour, by the day, by the week, &c.*, are translated into Italian by "lavorare all' ora," "al giorno," "alla settimana," &c.

176. † When *to know*, means *to know through the mind*, and when it means *to know how*, it is translated by "Sapere." Ex.

Mio cugino sa il greco. My cousin knows Greek.

Voi non sapete la vostra lezione. You do not know your lessons.

Suo figlio non sa comportarsi. Your son does not know how to behave.

But when *to know* means *to be acquainted with* (through the senses), it is translated by "Conoscere." Ex.

Conosco sua matrigna.

I know your mother-in-law.



## LESSON XXI.

## ON THE GENDER AND NUMBER OF NOUNS.

177.—In Italian, nouns are either of the masculine or of the feminine gender;—there is no neuter—and are used either in the singular or in the plural number.

The gender of Italian nouns is determined either by their meaning, or by their termination.

## DETERMINATION OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS BY THEIR MEANING.

178.—Appellations of men, and the name of male animals are masculine. Ex. “Il re,” the king; “il falegname,” the carpenter; “il bue,” the ox; whilst appellations of women, and the name of female animals are feminine.\* Ex. “La regina,” the queen; “la crestaia,” the milliner; “la vacca,” the cow.

## ON THIS POINT THE FOLLOWING OBSERVATIONS ARE NECESSARY:—

179.— I. That the words “Maestà,” majesty; “Santità,” holiness; “Eminenza,” eminence; “Eccellenza,” excellency, and “Signoria,” lordship or ladyship, are feminine, and, therefore, the Italians call the king “Sua Maestà,” the pope, “Sua Santità,” &c.

180.— II. That the Italians apply the words “una sentinella,” a sentry, “una guardia,” a guard, watchman, “una guida,” a guide, and “una spia,” a spy, to a man as well as to a woman.

181.— III. That nouns which admit of both genders form the feminine by changing the final vowel into *a*. Ex.

Mio cugino,	my cousin.	Mia cugina,	my cousin.
Mio cognato,	my brother-in-law.	Mia cognata,	my sister-in-law.
Il mio maestro,	my teacher.	La mia maestra,	my teacher.
Un cameriere,	a valet.	Una cameriera,	a lady's-maid.
Un ebreo,	a Jew.	Un' ebrea,	a Jewess.
Un vedovo,	a widower.	Una vedova,	a widow.

182.— IV. That words which are derived from verbs, and end in *ante*, and *ente*, as well as those derived from a country or town, ending in *ese*, are the same for both genders. Ex.

Il cantante,	the singer.	La cantante,	the singer.
Il credente,	the believer.	La credente,	the believer.
Un Inglese,	an Englishman.	Una Inglese,	an Englishwoman.
Un Francese,	a Frenchman.	Una Francese,	a Frenchwoman.

183. \* The names of some animals, as “un coniglio,” a rabbit, “un cammello,” a camel, “una balena,” a whale, “un' aquila,” an eagle, serve both for the male, and the female, in Italian; so that, to be more explicit, the word “maschio,” or the word “femmina” is placed after the name of the animal. Ex. “Un coniglio maschio,” a male rabbit, “un coniglio femmina,” a female rabbit.

- 184.— VI. That nouns which have the masculine termination in *tore*, form the feminine in *trice*. Ex.

L'esecutore, the executor. L'esecutrice, the executrix.

L'imperatore the emperor. L'imperatrice, the empress.

Il traditore, the traitor. La traditrice, the traitress.

- 185.— VII. That the following nouns form the feminine in *essa* :—

Un abate, an abbot. Un'abadessa, an abbess.

Un barone, a baron. Una baronessa, a baroness.

Un conte, a count. Una contessa, a countess.

Un dottore, a doctor. Una dottoressa, a ladydoctor.

Un duca, a duke. Una duchessa, a duchess.

Un gigante, a giant. Una gigantessa, a giantess.

Un leone, a lion. Una leonessa, a lioness.

Un oste, a host. Un'ostessa, a hostess.

Un poeta, a poet. Una poetessa, a poetess.

Un paone, a peacock. Una paonessa, a pea-hen.

Un principe, a prince. Una principessa, a princess.

Un profeta, a prophet. Una profetessa, a prophetess.

Un sacerdote, a priest. Una sacerdotessa, a priestess.

- 186.—VIII. That the appellations "scrittore," writer, "autore," author, and "testimonio," witness, are applied to men and women alike.

187. Names of Empires, Kingdoms, Provinces and Rivers ending in *a* are feminine. Ex. "La Russia," Russia; "la Spagna," Spain; "la Calabria," Calabria; "la Senna," the Seine. When they end with any of the other vowels, they are masculine. Ex. "Il Brasile," Brazil; "il Tamigi," the Thames; "il Portogallo," Portugal; "il Però," Peru.

188. Names of Towns ending in *a* or in *e* are feminine. Ex. "La bella Roma," beautiful Rome; "La sapiente Atene," learned Athens. If they end in any other vowel, they are of either gender.

189. Names of Lakes are masculine. Ex. "Il Ladoga," lake Ladoga.

190. Names of Islands are feminine. Ex. "La Sardegna," Sardinia.

191. Names of Trees generally end in *o*, and are masculine. Ex. "Un pero," a pear-tree; "un ciriegio," a cherry-tree; except "una quercia," an oak; "un' elce," a holm-oak, and "una palma," a palm-tree.

192. Names of Fruits generally end in *a*, and are feminine. Ex. "Un pesca," a peach; "una castagna," a chestnut; except "un pomo," an apple; "un fico," a fig; "un arancio," an orange; "un limone," a lemon; "un cedro," a cedar; "un dattero," a date; "unpistacchio," a pistache nut.

193. Adjectives, Verbs, Adverbs, and Conjunctions, used as nouns are masculine. Ex. "Il bello," the beautiful; "il cantare," the singing; "il perchè," the reason why.

DETERMINATION OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS BY THEIR VOWEL ENDINGS,  
AND FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

194. As stated already, nearly all the Italian words end with one of the five vowels, *a, e, i, o, u*,\* and the gender and number of nouns is generally indicated by the vowel endings. Therefore, along with the rules for recognising the gender of nouns, will be given the rules for the formation of the plural.

WORDS ENDING IN A.

195. All nouns ending in *a* are feminine, (except names of dignities and professions of men), and form their plural by changing the *a* into *e*. Ex.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

La penna, the pen, le penne, the pens.

196. Except the following nouns, ending in *a*, (derived from the Greek language), which are masculine, in Italian, and form their plural by changing the *a* into *i*. Ex.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

L' anatema,	the anathema,	gli anatemi,	the anathemas.
L' assioma,	the axiom,	gli assiomi,	the axioms.
Il clima,	the climate,	i climi,	the climates.
Il diadema,	the diadem,	i diademi,	the diadems.
Il diploma,	the diploma,	i diplomi,	the diplomas.
Il dogma,	the dogma,	i dogmi,	the dogmas.
Il dramma,	the drama,	i drammi,	the dramas.
L' emblema,	the emblem,	gli emblemi,	the emblems.
L' enigma,	the enigma,	gli enigmi,	the enigmas.
L' epigramma,	the epigram,	gli epigrammi,	the epigrams.
Il fantasma,	the phantom,	i fantasmi,	the phantoms.
L' idioma,	the idiom,	gl' idiomi,	the idioms.
Il pianeta,	the planet,	i pianeti,	the planets.

\* "Un lapis," a pencil, "ribes," currants, "un diesis," a semitone, are almost the only nouns ending with a consonant, used in Italian. For "il," "un," &c., see page 10.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Il poema,	the poem,	i poemi,	the poems.
Il problema,	the problem,	i problemi,	the problems.
Il programma,	the programme,	i programmi,	the programmes.
Lo scisma,	the schism,	gli scismi,	the schisms.
Il sistema,	the system,	i sistemi,	the systems.
Il sofisma,	the sophism,	i sofismi,	the sophisms.
Lo stemma,	the coat of arms,	gli stemmi,	the coats of arms.
Lo stratagemma,	the stratagem,	gli stratagemmi,	the stratagems.
Il tema,	the theme,	i temi,	the themes.

ON THIS POINT THE FOLLOWING OBSERVATIONS ARE NECESSARY:—

197.— I. That nouns ending in *cia*, and *gia* lose the *i* in the plural.

Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
La caccia,	the chase,	le cacce,	the chases.
La spiaggia,	the shore,	le spiagge,	the shores.

Except in “le bugie,” the lies; which is the plural of “la bugia,” the lie, because the accent falls upon the *i*.

198.— II. That feminine nouns ending in *ca* and *ga*, in the singular, take an *h* in the plural, and change the *a* into *e*. Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
La monaca,	the nun,	le monache,	the nuns.
Le strega,	the witch,	le streghe,	the witches.

199.— III. That masculine nouns ending in *ca* and *ga*, in the singular, require an *h* in the plural, and change the *a* into *i*. Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Il duca,	the duke,	i duchi,	the dukes.
Il collega,	the colleague,	i colleghi,	the colleagues.

200.— IV. That all nouns ending in “*tà*” (all “*parole tronche*”) are feminine and do not change the form in the plural. Ex.

La carità,	charity.	La sincerità,	sincerity.
------------	----------	---------------	------------

The words “*il sofà*,” “*i sofà*,” *the sofas*, “*taffetà*,” “*taffety*,” and “*baccalà*,” *dried cod*, are masculine.

#### WORDS ENDING IN E.

201.— Nouns ending in *e* are some masculine and some feminine, but for both genders the plural is formed by changing the *e* into *i*. Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Il cane,	the dog,	i cani,	the dogs.
La canzone,	the song,	le canzoni,	the songs.

NOUNS HAVING THE FOLLOWING TERMINATIONS ARE OF THE MASCULINE GENDER :—

202. ME. Ex. "Il fiume," the river ; "i fiumi," the rivers.

Except "l'arme," the weapon ; "le armi," the weapons ; "la fame," hunger ; and "la speme," hope (used in poetry for speranza).

203. ORE. Ex. "Il fiore," the flower ; "i fiori," the flowers.

204. ENTE. Ex. "Il dente," the tooth ; "i denti," the teeth.

Except "la gente" the people ; "le genti," the nations ; "la lente," the lens, or lentil ; "le lenti," the lenses, or lentils ; "la mente," the mind ; "le correnti," the currents ; "la corrente," the current ; "le menti," the minds ; "la sorgente," the source ; "le sorgenti," the sources.

205. ILE. Ex. Il fienile," the hay-loft ; i fienili, the hay-lofts.

206. ONE. Ex. "Il balcone," the balcony ; "i balconi," the balconies.

Except "la canzone," the song ; "le canzoni," the songs ; "la tenzone," the combat ; "le tenzoni," the combats.

207. With regard to words in *ione*, if they are concrete, that is to say, if they are the names of objects, they are masculine ; but if they are abstract nouns, they are of the feminine gender.

208. The following nouns are concrete, and, therefore, masculine :—

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

L'arcione,	the saddle-bow,	gli arcioni,	the saddle-bows.
Il battaglione,	the battalion,	i battaglioni,	the battalions.
Il bastione,	the bastion,	i bastioni,	the bastions.
Il padiglione,	the pavilion,	i padiglioni,	the pavilions.

209. The following nouns are abstract, and, therefore, feminine :—

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

L'azione,	the action,	le azioni,	the actions.
La conversazione,	the conversation,	le conversazioni,	the conversations.
La discussione,	the discussion,	la discussioni,	the discussions.

210. Nouns ending in *udine* are feminine. Ex.

L'abitudine,	habit.	La solitudine,	solitude.
La mansuetudine,	meekness.	L'incudine,	the anvil.

#### WORDS ENDING IN I.

211. Nouns ending in *i* are masculine, and do not change form in the plural. Ex. "Il brindisi," the toast; "i brindisi," the toasts; "il dì," the day; "i dì," the days; "il lunedì," the Monday; "i lunedì," the Mondays, "un barbagianni," an owl.

212. Except a few words derived from the Greek which are feminine. Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
La metropoli, the metropolis,	le metropoli, the metropolis.
L' analisi, the analysis,	le analisi, the analysis.
La tesi, the thesis,	le tesi, the thesis.
La diocesi, the diocese,	le diocesi, the diocese.

#### WORDS ENDING IN O.

213. All words ending in *o* are of the masculine gender, and form their plural by changing the *o* into *i*. Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Il trono, the throne,	i troni, the thrones.
Il palazzo, the palace,	i palazzi, the palaces.
Il cappello, the hat,	i cappelli, the hats.

Except "la mano," the hand; "le mani," the hands.

ON THIS POINT THE FOLLOWING OBSERVATIONS ARE NECESSARY:—

214.—I. Nouns ending in *co* and *go* take an *i* in the plural. Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Il bosco, the wood,	i boschi, the woods.
Il fuoco, the fire,	i fuochi, the fires.
Il manico, the handle,	i manichi, the handles.
Il castigo, the punishment,	i castighi, the punishments.
Il mago,* the magician,	i maghi, the magicians.

215. Except in the following words, which do not require any *i* in their plural form. Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Il greco, the Greek,	i greci, the Greeks.
Il porco, the pig,	i porci, the pigs.
L' amico, the friend,	gli amici, the friends.
Il nemico, the enemy,	i nemici, the enemies.
Il medico, the doctor,	i medici, the doctors.
Il portico, the portico,	i portici, the porticoes.

- 216.—II. Nouns ending in *io*, preceded by any consonant, except *d*, *m*, *p*, *r*, *z*, form their plural by merely cutting off the final *o*. Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Il faggio,	the beech-tree ;	i faggi,	the beech-trees.
L'occhio,	the eye ;	gli occhi,	the eyes.
Il viaggio,	the voyage ;	i viaggi,	the voyages.

- 217.—III. Words ending in *dio*, *mio*, *prio*, *rio*, *zio*, and those that have an accent over the *i* (*io*) in the singular, form their plural by changing *io* into *ii*, or (as some Italian grammarians will still advise) into *j*. Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Lo studio,	the study ;	gli studii,	the studies.
Il premio,	the reward ;	i premii,	the rewards.
Il tempio,	the church ;	i tempii,	the churches.
Il principio,	the principle ;	i principii,	the principles.
L'atrio,	the porch ;	gli atrii,	the porches.
Il río,	the brook ;	i rii,	the brooks.
Il pendio,	the slope ;	i pendii,	the slopes.

- 218.—IV. Nouns ending in *aio*, form their plural by changing the *aio* into *aii*, or into *aj*. Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Il fornaio,	the baker ;	i fornaj,	the bakers.
Il beccajo,	the butcher ;	i beccaj,	the butchers.
Il mugnaio,	the miller ;	i mugnaj,	the millers.

- 219.—V. The words in the following list show that the *ii* are used sometimes as a mark of the plural solely to avoid ambiguity.

SING.		PLUR.	SING.		PLUR.
Rege,	king,	regi.	Regio,	royal,	regii.
Giudice,	judge,	giudici.	Giudicio,	judgment,	giudicii.
Benefico,	benevolent,	benefici.	Beneficio,	benefice,	beneficii.
Omicida,	murderer,	omicidi.	Omicidio,	murder,	omicidii.

220. The following nouns in the singular end in *o*, and are masculine, in the plural end in *a*, and are feminine :—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
L'uova,	the egg ;	le uova,	the eggs.
Il miglio,	the mile ;	le miglia,	the miles.
Il paio,	the pair ;	le paia,	the pairs.
Lo staio,	the bushel ;	le staia,	the bushels.
Il centinaio,	the hundred ;	le centinaia,	the hundreds.
Il migliaio,	the thousand ;	le migliaia,	the thousands.

221. The following nouns, and a few others, may end in the plural either in *i*, and be masculine, or in *a*, and be feminine.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Il ciglio,	the eyebrow,	i cigli,	le ciglia.
Il labbro,	the lip,	i labbri,	le labbra.
Il braccio,	the arm,	i bracci,	le braccia.
Il gomito,	the elbow,	i gomiti,	le gomita.
Il dito,	the finger,	i diti,	le dita.
Il ginocchio,	the knee,	i ginocchi,	le ginocchia.
Il calcagno,	the heel,	i calcagni,	le calcagna.

222. The following nouns have two meanings, and for each meaning there is a different plural :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
IL MEMBRO, the member.	I MEMBRI, the members (of a society); and LE MEMBRA, the limbs of the body.
IL GESTO, the gesture.	I GESTI, the gestures of an orator, of an actor; and LE GESTA, the exploits of a hero.
IL FRUTTO, the fruit, the result.	I FRUTTI, the results; also the fruits of the same plants; and LE FRUTTA, fruits of various kinds (dessert).
IL MURO, the wall.	I MURI, the walls of a house, of a garden, of a park; and LE MURA, the walls of a town.
IL CARRO, the chariot, the cart.	I CARRI, the chariots; and LE CARRA, the carts.
L' OSSO, the bone.	GLI OSSI, the bones, (any bones); and LE OSSA, the human bones.
IL CORNO, the horn.	I CORNI, the horns (wind instruments); and LE CORNA, the horns of an animal.
IL RISO, the rice, the laugh.	I RISI, the rice (an Italian dish); and LE RISA, the plural of laugh.
IL LEGNO, the wood, the carriage, the ship.	I LEGNI, the woods, the carriages, the ships; and LE LEGNA, firewood.



## WORDS ENDING IN U.

223. All words ending in *u* are feminine, and do not change form in the plural. Ex.

La servitù, slavery.

La gioventù, youth.

Except "La virtù," virtue, which makes in the plural "le virtù," virtues, and "il ragù," stewed meat, which has the plural "i ragù," stewed-meats, and is masculine.

ON THIS POINT THE FOLLOWING OBSERVATIONS ARE NECESSARY :

- 224.— I. That the following nouns are irregular in the plural :—

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Dio,	God,	gli dei,	the gods.
L' uomo,	the man,	gli uomini,	the men.
La moglie,	the wife,	le mogli,	the wives.
Il bue,	the ox,	i buoi,	the oxen.

- 225.— II. That the plurals of "il re," the king, and "la specie," the species, are, "i re," the kings ; "le specie," the species.

- 226.— III. That the following words, and a few more have two meanings, and two genders :—

"Un dramma," means a drama ; "una dramma," means a drachm.

"Il fine," means the aim, scope ; "la fine," means the end.

"Un margine," means a margin, a skirt ; "una margine," means a scar.

"Un pianeta," means a planet ; "una pianeta" means a priest's cope.

"Il tema," means the exercise ; "la tema," means fear.

- 227.—IV. That the following words, and a few others, are only used in the singular.

Names of virtues, Ex. "La probità," probity ; "l'onestà," honesty, &c.

Names of metals, Ex. "L'oro, gold" ; "l'argento," silver, &c., and also the following words :—

La fame, hunger. Il miele, honey.

La sete, thirst. La stirpe, the race, family.

- 228.—V. That the following words, and a few others are only employed in the plural.

Gli annali,	} the annals.	Le molle,	the tongs.
I fasti,		Le stoviglie,	the crockery-ware.
Le forbici,	} the scissors.	Le spezie,	the spices.
Le cesoie,		Le tenebre,	the darkness.
Le nozze,	the marriage.	Le esequie,	the obsequies.

## EXERCISE XXVII.

Chronology (146) and (154) geography, are the eyes\* (216) of history (146). The earth presents on its surface heights (195), hollows, precipices (217), volcanoes, seas, marshes, rivers (202), forests, and fields. Poets (196) compare cheeks (197) to roses, eyes to stars, hands (213) to lilies, and teeth to pearls. The prophetess Cassandre predicted always the truth, but was never believed. The exploits (222) of Æneas after the taking of Troy by the Greeks (215), form the subject of Virgil's beautiful poem, the Æneid. In Lapland the rein-deer have horns (222) of extraordinary length. One must (163) know (176) mathematics† to (103) understand astronomy thoroughly. Minerva was the goddess of wisdom (146), of war, of sciences, and of arts. Spain produces lemons, oranges, and olives in great abundance. Interest (146), pleasure, and glory, are the three motives of the actions and conduct of men. A poet has called the sun and the moon the eyes of heaven. The fruit (222) for dessert is on the sideboard. I admire the theatres (213), fountains, statues, galleries, and gardens of this beautiful city. The Jupiter of Homer was the first among the gods (6 and 224) of mythology. History proves that philosophers (146) have always been preceded by (125) poets and painters. These men are not (36) French; they are Germans (214); three are sailors (218), the others are workmen (218). This is a fine problem for moralists. In Rome there are (59) many ancient edifices. The games (214) and exercises practised (68) by (125) the Greeks, were good for the health of the body, and (15) the strength of the limbs. We have visited the principal cities (200) of Italy. I have bought two pair (220) of boots, one for Mary, and one for my sister Elizabeth. Have you seen the lakes (214) of Scotland? Yes, I saw (Pret. Ind.) them (89) last summer, and shall see them again next year. A friend has sent me (89) a basket of eggs (220). Climate (146) has great influence on the character of men. The rose is the queen of flowers, and the emblem of beauty.

---

\* The student is advised to look for the translation of the words in the vocabulary at the end of this grammar before applying the rules bearing upon them.

229. † Mathematics, statistics, politics, are generally translated into Italian by "La matematica, la statistica, la politica."

## LESSON XXII.

## ON ITALIAN AND ENGLISH COMPOUND NOUNS.

## ON ITALIAN COMPOUND NOUNS.

230. The number of Italian compound words is very limited, and the order of the words in them is seldom reversed. Most of them are of the masculine gender, and form the plural of the words with which they are composed according to the sense. Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Un capolavoro,	a masterpiece.	dei capolavori.
Un bassorilievo,	a bas-relief.	dei bassirilievi.
Un copogiro,	a fit of giddiness.	dei copogiri.

231. Notice that the following compound nouns, and a few others, are feminine, and that the inflection of the words of which they are composed is erroneous:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Madre-perla, <i>mother-of-pearl</i> ,	madre-perle. (should be "madriperle").
Carta-pecora, <i>vellum</i> ,	carte pecore. (should be "carte-pecora").

232. When the first of the two words in a compound noun is Greek or Latin, or has lost the vowel ending, the second word alone is inflected. Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Un monosillabo,	a monosyllabic word ; dei monosillabi.
Un viceconsolo,	a vice-consul ; dei viceconsoli.
Un cavolfiore,	a cauliflower ; dei cavolfiori.

## ON ENGLISH COMPOUND NOUNS.

233. English Compound Nouns belong to three classes ;—

The first class contains such nouns as *straw hat*, *schoolmaster*, *moonlight*, in which one of the two words qualifies the other, with which it has affinity or connection. In translating these compound nouns into Italian, the order of words must be reversed and the preposition "di," alone, or (if the article is required, see pp. 24, 94 and 95) "del," "dello," &c., is placed between the words. Ex.

Un cappello di paglia,	a straw hat.
Un maestro di scuola,	a schoolmaster.
Una casa di campagna,	a country-house.
Olio d' oliva,	olive oil.
Un mercante di vino,	a wine-merchant.
I raggi del sole,	the sunbeams.
Le stelle della mattina,	the morning-stars.
La Strada del Reggente,	Regent Street.

234. The second class of English compound nouns includes such nouns as *writing-paper*, *dining-room*, *saddle-horse*, in which the first noun expresses the use or destination of the second noun. In translating these compound nouns into Italian, the order of the words must be reversed, and the preposition "da" must be placed between the two words. Ex.

Carta da scrivere,	writing-paper.
Una sala da pranzo,	a dining-room.
Un cavallo da sella,	a saddle-horse.
Una bottiglia da vino,	a wine-bottle.
Una vesta da camera,	a dressing-gown.

235. The third class of English compound nouns includes such nouns as *steam-boat*, *wind-mill*, *sailing-vessel*, in which the first noun denotes the means by which the object expressed by the first noun acts. In translating these compound nouns also the order of the words is inverted, and the preposition "a" must be placed between the two words. Ex.

Un batello a vapore,	a steam-boat.
Un mulino a vento,	a wind-mill.
Un bastimento a vela,	a sailing-vessel.

236. No positive rule can be given for the formation of the following expressions, and the like:—

Il mercato del fieno,	the hay-market
L'Ufficio della Posta,	the Post-office.
L'uomo col gilè bianco,	the man with a white waistcoat.
Bei campi a fromento,	beautiful corn-fields.

### ON COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

237. There are two sorts of collective nouns, the *collective general*, and the *collective partitive*.

238. The *collective general* represents the whole object or collection, as "il popolo," *the people*; "l'armata," *the army*; "la flotta," *the fleet*; "la famiglia," *the family*; &c., and requires that verbs, adjectives, and pronouns referring to it should be in the singular. Ex.

Il popolo inglese mantiene i suoi diritti politici.	The English people maintain their political rights.
--	--

239. The *collective partitive* represents only a portion of the whole object, or collection, as "un' armata," *an army*; "una moltitudine," *a multitude*; &c., and requires that the verb to which it relates should be in the plural.\* Ex.

Una piccola armata di soldati eu- ropei conquistarono les Indie.	A small army of European sol- diers conquered India.
---	---

240. \* Notice, however, that when the Italians employ a collective noun, and want to express the action of the collection, as *a whole*, all words must be inflected as if they were used with a noun in the singular. Ex.

Una folla di nemici ci apparve all' improvviso.	A crowd of enemies appeared suddenly before us.
--	--

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

Last night I met William at my brother's;\* he seemed satisfied with (123) the result of his examination. How do you like (135) your new house? I do not (36) like it much; the dining-room (234) is very dark, the bed-rooms are too small, and the ground floor damp and gloomy. Where did you (30) buy this marble chimney-piece (233)? I bought it (77 and 96) at Johnstone's,\* in Regent Street. Have you read Shakespeare's tragedies? I have (98), and I am now reading (76) Milton's *Paradise Lost*. Who invented (77) gunpowder? It was invented (Pret. Anter.) by (135) a German (74) monk, named Schwartz. Rainbows are formed by the reflection of the rays of the sun in the clouds. Snowdrops bear flowers in the midst of winter. How are those galleries supported? They are supported by iron pillars. What have you made him a present of (173)? I gave him (89) a beautiful penknife with an ivory handle. Will you be so kind as to hand me (91) the milk jug? Certainly, here it is (113). The jasmine, the hawthorn, the sweet-briar, and the honey-suckle adorn and perfume these pretty cottages. Where have you been (56)? I have been to the market, to (103) buy three cart-loads (222) of fire-wood. Where is the pincushion? It is on the work-table (234), near my sister's leather bag (233). Have you seen the new cork-screw? Yes; I saw it in the dining-room. The pickpockets had been shut up in the prisons of this town, but they made holes in the doors of their cells, and escaped. Do you like (135) my brother's works? I look upon them as master-pieces (230). What shall I buy you? Buy me a box of steel pens (233), a dozen of quills, a quire of writing-paper (234), and three sheets of blotting-paper. We went to (97) America in a steamer (235), and came back in a sailing-vessel. Don Quixote mistook wind-mills for giants. Call the man with a blue coat; he sells spoons (218) and tea-cups.

---

241.\* The expressions *at my brother's*, *at Charles'*, meaning *at the house of*, are translated into Italian "da mio fratello," "da Carlo," or "a casa di mio fratello," &c. But expressions such as *at Johnstone's*, are translated into Italian by "nel negozio, or nella bottega di Johnstone," when J. keeps a shop for selling goods (linen, furniture, &c.), and by "all' Albergo," or "al caffè Johnstone," when J. keeps a hotel, or a caffè.

## LESSON XXIII.

## ON THE ALTERATION IN THE MEANING OF WORDS BY MEANS OF SUFFIXES.

242. The Italians give the names of "Accrescitivi," (augmentatives), "Diminutivi," (diminutives), and "Peggiorativi," (depreciatives), to certain suffixes, which, like the English *ish*, alter or modify the meaning of nouns, adjectives, and even adverbs. The Italian language is very rich in suffixes, which are of great use in adding expression to words. Only the principal suffixes will be given here, because to give them all might perplex the student.

THE PRINCIPAL ITALIAN "ACCRESKITIVI" ARE:—

243. "ONE," "ONA," which denotes bigness, as well as stoutness. Ex. Un libro, *a book*; un librone, *a big book*. Un uomo,\* *a man*; un omone,\* *a tall, stout man*. Un cane,† *a dog*; un cagnone,\* *a large dog*.

244. On this point it is to be observed that when a feminine noun takes the suffix *one* it becomes masculine. Ex.

Una strada, *a street*; uno stradone, *a large road*. Una donna, *a woman*; un donnone, *a big, stout woman*.

245. But adjectives take both the forms of the suffix, otherwise they might be ambiguous. Ex.

Una vecchia, *an old woman*; una vecchiona, *a big, old woman*.

246. "OTTO," "OTTA," } which indicate somewhat of an increase in the  
"OZZO," "OZZA," } ordinary size, as well as vigour. Ex.

Un ragazzo, *a boy*; un ragazzotto, *a fine, strong lad*.

The Italian "diminutivi" are divided into two classes:—the "diminutivi-vezzeggiativi," (endearing), and the "diminutivi-dispreziativi," (depreciating).

THE PRINCIPAL ITALIAN "DIMINUTIVI-VEZZEGGIATIVI" ARE:—

247. "INO," "INA,"	} which indicate affection, endearment, as well as smallness. Ex.
"OLINO," "OLINA,"	
"ETTO," "ETTA,"	
"ELLO," "ELLA,"	
"ERELLO," "ERELLA,"	
"ICELLO," "ICELLA,"	
"ONCINO," "ONCINA,"	
"ONCELLO," "ONCELLA,"	Un fiume, <i>a river</i> ; un fiumicello, <i>a nice, little river</i> .
	Un pesce, <i>a fish</i> ; un pesciolino, <i>a nice, little fish</i> .
	Un vecchio, <i>an old man</i> ; un vecchierello, <i>a dear, little, old man</i> .

248. On this point it is to be observed that many feminine nouns become masculine when they take the suffix "ino." Ex.

Una tavola, *a table*; un tavolino, *a nice, little table*.

249. Further, it should be noticed, that discrimination must be had in using the "vezzeggiativi": for instance, "vino" could be altered into "vinetto," nice, light wine, but *not* into "vinino."

\* The word *uomo* loses its first letter, *u*, when it takes a suffix.

† The word *cane* takes a euphonic *g* before the *n* when it takes a suffix.

THE PRINCIPAL ITALIAN "PEGGIORATIVI" ARE :—

250. "ACCIO," "ACCIA," } which signify contempt, ugliness, badness.  
 "AZZO," "AZZA," } Ex.

Una cappello, *a hat* ; un cappellaccio, *an ugly, dirty hat*.

THE PRINCIPAL "DIMINUTIVI-PEGGIORATIVI" ARE :—

251. "UCCIO," "UCCIA," } which indicate despicable pettiness. Ex.  
 "UZZO," "UZZA," }  
 "ONZOLO," "ONZOLA," }

Una stanza, *a room* ; una stanzuccia, *a small, dirty room*.

252. On this point it is to be observed that the suffixes "uccio," "uccia," to Christian names signify endearment, and *not* contempt. Ex.

Carluccio mio ! *My dear Charley* ! Mariuccia mia : *My dear Mary* !

253. The suffixes in the following words are often used but cannot be easily classified.

Un poetastro (from poeta, *poet*), *a bad poet*.

Un libercolo (from libro, *book*), *a contemptible little book*.

Una casipola (from casa, *house*), *a hovel*.

Una fierucola (from fiera, *fair*), *an insignificant fair, market*.

Arboscello (from albero, *tree*), *a little tree, a shrub*.

Ramoscello (from ramo, *branch*), *a small branch of a tree*.

La canaglia (from cane, *dog*), *the rabble*.

Gentaglia (from gente, *people*), *a parcel of vulgar people*.

Ossame (from osso, *bone*), *a heap of bones*.

254. Sometimes two suffixes are put to one noun. Ex.

Un omaccione, *a big, nasty man*.

Un librettino, *a nice little book*.

255. Some of the above suffixes can be put to adjectives and adverbs. Ex.

### ADJECTIVES.

Ricco, *rich* ; riccone, *very rich*. Bello, *beautiful* ; bellino, *pretty*. Fresco, *fresh* ; freschetto, *rather fresh*. Rosso, *red* ; rossiccio, *reddish*. Giallo, *yellow* ; gialliccio, *yellowish*. Verde, *green* ; verdastro, *greenish*. Amaro, *bitter* ; amarastro, *bitterish*.

### ADVERBS.

Un poco, *a little* ; un pochino, *a very little*. Bene, *well* ; benino, *pretty well*. Adagio, *softly* ; adagino, *very softly*. Bene, *well* ; benone, *very well*.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

Where did you buy (have you bought) that huge book (243)?\* I bought it (96) at Hachette's (241). I am astonished to see you (30 and 91) wearing that horrid Spanish (74 and 250) hat. I wear it because it is light and comfortable. Where did you go (Pret. Indef.) this morning? We walked two miles (220) towards the village, we came across a beautiful little bridge; we crossed it (96) and went to dine at the village inn. Was Frederick with you? No; we left him at William's (241). In coming back, (76) we met that very big woman, (244) always dressed in (di) black. Give these pretty little books (247) to my young nieces. I caught (77) this pretty little bird in its nest, in the trunk of a large tree, (243) near your uncle's farm. I have lost my time in reading the insipid, inharmonious verses (251) of a wretched poet (253). They gave me a horrid little room (251) without a carpet; I could scarcely breathe through its dirty, little window. Take away† this cur (251); I hate it. I like these sweet, little flowers (247); where did you gather (have you gathered) them? (89 and 96) In a charming little wood near the village church. Where have you got this huge cabbage from? From my uncle's kitchen garden. To-day I saw your son-in-law dressed in a most extraordinary way; he wore an ugly brown hat (251), a pair of large, ill-formed spectacles, thick, ill-shaped boots, and a large, ugly umbrella. Who is that brisk, little man, (247) going along (138) with three pretty little dogs? He is my father's steward. You should not compare this poor, little house with (15) my brother's mansion. That handsome little boy lives in a poor dirty little street near the market place. Every evening we take a walk along a small stream, in which a thousand pretty, little fishes swim about. Her little hands (213 and 247) are too small for these great gloves (243). How do you do (see page 69) to-day? Very well!

---

\* The student is advised to look for the 'translation of words in the Vocabulary at the end of this grammar, before applying the rules bearing upon them.

256. † *To take* is translated into Italian by "Prendere." But *to take*, in the sense of *to lead*, is translated by "condurre," "menare." *To take away*, is translated by "Portar via," and *to take off*, by "levare." *To take a portrait* is "Fare un ritratto."



## LESSON XXIV.

## ON QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

257. A Qualificative Adjective is a word which expresses the quality of a noun.

258. In Italian qualificative adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns they qualify ; they end either in *o* or in *e*.\*

259. Those ending in *o*, become feminine by changing the *o* into *a*, and form their plural according to the rules given for nouns. Ex.

Il marito è ricco e generoso, e la moglie è bella e modesta.	The husband is rich and generous, and the wife is beautiful and modest.
--	---

Questi uomini sono ricchi e generosi, e le loro mogli sono belle e modeste.	These men are rich and generous, and their wives are beautiful and modest.
---	--

260. Those ending in *e*, serve for both genders. They form their plural by changing the *e* into *i*. Ex.

Il principe è illustre e potente, e la principessa è amabile, ed oltremodo intelligente.	The prince is illustrious and powerful, and the princess is amiable and exceedingly clever.
--	---

Questi nobili sono illustri e potenti, e le loro spose sono amabili, ed eleganti oltr'ogni credere.	These noblemen are illustrious and powerful, and their wives are amiable, and elegant beyond comparison.
---	--

261. In Italian, when an adjective qualifies two or more nouns, it is put in the plural form, and when the nouns are of different gender, the plural adjective agrees with the masculine. Ex.

Il padre e il figlio sono cattivi ed orgogliosi, mentrechè la madre e la figlia sono buone e cortesi.	The father and son are wicked and proud, whilst the mother and daughter are good and courteous.
---	---

Trovammo i contadini e le loro mogli assai industriosi e civili.	We found the peasants and their wives very industrious and civil.
--	---

262. \* "Pari," *equal*, "impari," *unequal*, and "dispari," *unlike*, *uneven*, *odd*, are the only Italian adjectives that end in *i*, in the singular ; they have only one termination for both genders and numbers. Ex.

Una vostra pari non dovrebbe parlar così.	Such a person as you are should not speak so.
---	---

263. In Italian there is *no fixed rule* for the position of adjectives ; they are placed before, or after the nouns they qualify, according to taste, and euphony. Ex.

Un nemico potente, or }	A powerful enemy.
Un potente nemico.	

But still, in the following cases, *as a rule*, the adjectives follow the nouns they qualify :—

264.—I. When adjectives denote colour, shape, taste, physical qualities, or are derived from verbs, or names of nations. Ex.

Giuseppe porta sempre un cappello bianco.	John always wears a white hat.
Le tavole rotonde non mi piacciono.	I do not like round tables.
Il medico mi dà sempre medicine amare.	The doctor always gives me bitter medicine.
Uno uomo cieco ha l'uditto acuto.	A blind man has sharp ears.
Sono cose sorprendenti.	They are surprising things.
Leggo un romanzo francese.	I am reading a French novel.

265.—II. When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun. Ex.  
Una storia interessante ed istruttiva. An interesting and instructive history.

266.—III. When the adjective is modified by an adverb. Ex.  
I loro fanciulli sono molto intelligenti. Their children are very intelligent.

267. Some adjectives vary their signification according as they come before, or after the nouns they qualify ; the following are the most important :—

Un gentiluomo,	a nobleman.
Un uomo gentile,	a kind man.
Un galantuomo,	a worthy man.
Un uomo galante,	a polite man.
Un grand' uomo,	a great man.
Un uomo grande,	a tall man.
Una certa notizia,	a certain news.
Una notizia certa,	a news which is authentic.

ON THE ADJECTIVES "BELLO," "GRANDE," AND  
"BUONO."

268. The adjective "bello," *beautiful, pretty*, is curtailed of the last syllable, before masculine nouns beginning with a *consonant*, except an *s impure*; before a vowel it loses the final letter, and receives an apostrophe. The plural of "bello" is "bei," before a word beginning with a *consonant*, and "begli," before a word beginning with a *vowel*, or an *s impure*. Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Un bel quadro,	<i>a fine picture,</i>	bei quadri,	<i>fine pictures.</i>
Un bello sguardo,	<i>a fine look,</i>	begli sguardi,	<i>fine looks.</i>
Un bell' anello,	<i>a fine ring,</i>	begli anelli,	<i>fine rings.</i>

269. The adjective "grande," *great, tall, large*, loses the final syllable, before masculine and feminine nouns, beginning with a *consonant*, both in the singular and plural. This elision does not take place before an *s impure*; before a *vowel*, "grande" drops the final letter and takes in its stead an apostrophe.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Un gran popolo,	<i>a great people,</i>	gran popoli,	<i>great nations.</i>
Un gran famiglia,	<i>a great family,</i>	gran famiglie,	<i>great families.</i>
Un grande scrigno,	<i>a large chest,</i>	grandi scrigni,	<i>large chests.</i>
Un grand' elogio,	<i>a great eulogy,</i>	grand' elogi,	<i>great eulogies.</i>

270. The adjective "buono," *good*, loses the final *o*, before nouns, masculine singular, beginning with a *vowel*, or any *consonant*, except an *s impure*. Ex.

Un buon ammiraglio,	<i>a good admiral.</i>
Un buon temperino,	<i>a good pen-knife.</i>
Un buono scrittoio,	<i>a good writing-desk.</i>

## ON THE WORD "TUTTO."

271. "Tutto," preceded by the definite article, "il tutto," *the whole* is a noun. Ex.

Mi dia il tutto, Signore.      Give me the whole, Sir.

272. "Tutto," meaning *all, every, any*, is an adjective variable; it is, in all cases, followed by the definite article. Ex.

Tutti gli ufficiali riceveranno la medaglia.      All the officers received the medal.

273. "Tutto, (or rather "del tutto,") meaning "intieramente," *altogether, quite*, is an adverb. Ex.

Siamo tutto, or del tutto convinti. We are quite convinced.

274. "Tutti quanti," means *the whole of them*. Ex.

Perirono tutti quanti. The whole of them perished.

# ON THE WORDS "SANTO," "MEZZO," "OGNI," AND "ALTRO."

275. "Il santo" means *the saint*, and is a noun.

276. When "santo" means *saint*, and precedes a proper noun of the masculine gender, beginning with any *consonant*, except an *s impure*, it loses the last syllable (*to*.) This elision does not take place when "santo" means *holy*. Ex.

San Pietro di Roma.

Saint Peter of Rome.

Santo Stefano.

Saint Stephen.

Il santo sepolcro.

The holy sepulchre.

277. "Il mezzo" means *the means, the middle*, and is a noun. Ex.

Non hanno i mezzi.

They have not the means.

Nel mezzo del giardino.

In the middle of the garden.

278. When "mezzo" means *half*, it is an adjective, and is variable when it precedes a noun, but remains invariable when it follows it. Ex.

Una mezza libbra di tè.

Half a pound of tea.

Una libbra e mezzo di zucchero. A pound and a half of sugar.

279. *The half* is translated into Italian by "la metà." Ex.

Me ne dia la metà; il tutto sareb- Give me the half; the whole of it  
be troppo. would be too much.

Il terremoto distrusse la metà The earthquake destroyed half  
della città. of the city.

280. The adjective "ogni" means *each, every*, is of both genders and can only be used in the singular. Ex.

Ogni paese ha i suoi costumi. Every country has its own customs.

281. "Altro" meaning *other*, is an adjective, and agrees in gender and number with the word to which it relates. Ex.

Ho un' altra sorella in Italia. I have another sister in Italy.

Non avete altri libri che questi? Have you no other books but these?

282. When "altro" is used as a noun, it means *one thing, something else*; when it is preceded by "non" it means *nothing else*. Ex.

Altro è il parlar di morte, altro It is one thing to speak of  
è il morire. death, but another to die.

Non fa altro che ciarlare. He does nothing but talk.

283. "Altri...altri" are used as pronouns, and signify *some... others*. Ex.

Altri andavano, altri veni- Some were going, others were  
vano. coming.

284. In the colloquial style "altri" is sometimes used pleonastically after "noi" and "voi." Ex.

Noi altri Italiani amiamo la We Italians are fond of  
musica. music.

ON THE WORDS "MOLTO," "TANTO," "ALTRETTANTO," "QUANTO,"  
"TROPPO," AND "POCO."

285. The words, "molto," *much, very*; "tanto," *so much*; "altrettanto," *as much*; "quanto," *how much*; "troppo," *too much*; "poco," *little*; are adjectives or adverbs.

286.—I. They are adjectives, and therefore variable, when they precede a noun. Ex.

V'erano molti uomini e molte There were many men, and  
donne, ma ben pochi fan- many women, but very few  
ciulli. children.

287.—II. They are adverbs when they modify an adjective, a verb or another adverb. Ex.

Queste ragazzine sono molto These little girls are very in-  
intelligenti. telligent.

Sua suocera ha poca bellezza, His mother-in-law has little  
e molti difetti. beauty, and many defects.

288. *How long*, in speaking of time, is translated into Italian by "quanto tempo." Ex.

Da quanto tempo studia la How long have you studied  
lingua italiana? Italian?

289. *A little* is expressed by "un poco di." Ex.

Se avessi un poco di denaro, If I had a little money, I would  
andrei a veder l'esposizione. go to see the exhibition.

## A LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

NOTE.—The appended List does not contain the Adjectives already given in the previous pages.

Caldo,	warm.	Umido,	wet.
Fresco,	fresh, new.	Amabile,	amiable.
Freddo,	cold.	Odioso,	hateful.
Ricco,	rich.	Sordo,	deaf.
Povero,	poor.	Muto,	dumb.
Giovine,	young.	Bravo,	brave.
Attempato,	aged.	Codardo,	coward.
Allegro,	cheerful.	Leggiadro,	pretty.
Mesto,	sad.	Brutto,	ugly.
Crudele,	cruel.	Savio,	wise.
Umano,	humane.	Stolto,	foolish.
Netto,	clean.	Chiaro,	clear.
Sporco,	dirty.	Spesso,	thick.
Alto,	high.	Gentile,	polite.
Basso,	low.	Rozzo,	rude.
Lungo,	long.	Cattivo,	{ bad, wicked.
Corto,	short.		{ captive.
Pieno,	full.	Timido,	timid.
Vuoto,	empty.	Coraggioso,	courageous.
Giusto,	just.	Audace,	daring.
Ingiusto,	unjust.	Temerario,	rash.
Stretto,	narrow.	Scialacquatore,	spendthrift.
Largo,	wide.	Avaro,	avaricious.
Diligente,	industrious.	Avido,	greedy.
Pigro,	lazy.	Generoso,	generous.
Leggero,	light.	Vile,	mean.
Pesante,	heavy.	Rotondo,	round.
Abile,	clever.	Quadro,	square.
Stupido,	stupid.	Fortunato,	fortunate.
Grasso,	fat.	Sfortunato,	unfortunate.
Magro,	lean.	Vero,	real.
Secco,	dry.	Finto,	artificial.

## EXERCISE XXX.

Have you seen George's new carriage? Yes I have; (98) it is strong and well made, but not pretty. What are they doing (76) there? They are pulling down your uncle's old house, and building him up a new one (91 and 111.) The glorious productions of the eminent painter Raphael will ever form the delight of mankind. Napoleon I. often wore (Imp. Ind.) a grey (264) coat, and a round hat, with broad brim. He was riding a beautiful (268) black horse. A great (269) talker is seldom a great speaker. These chickens are large and fat, but the partridges are very lean. If I had a good (270) horse, I would go with you as far as the custom-house. The princess wore a fine blue dress, and a long white shawl. A tall man (267) is not always a great man. There is a great difference between a polite (267) man and an honest man. Give this beautiful fur-jacket to my dear cousin Bertha. Go\* and fetch me a jug of warm water? Here it is, (113) on the round (264) table. Why do you like the Italian (264) language? I like it (96) because it is sweet and harmonious. Your son-in-law is industrious, clever, and very amiable; but his brother is lazy and idle. Where are you going Elizabeth? I am going to Simpson's (241) to buy some red wool, and some white cotton. My brother has made me a (173) present of some beautiful (268) artificial flowers. They sent a large army to the succour of the besieged town. It was a dreadful battle; the old soldiers and the new recruits did wonders. Almost all the trees of Florida, particularly the cedar, and the green-oak, are covered with a white (264) moss. I do not like this stair-case, it is dark and not very clean. Let us go into that shop; I have seen pretty (268) ribbons and French lace there. (107). Italian (75) is a very easy (265) language. My grandfather lived for many (285) years in a pretty little cottage (247) situated on a charming little hill near the Black Forest. She writes in a plain, simple, and natural style. That gentleman has always very fine (268) horses. My aunt has sent me a beautiful basket of flowers, (158) it contains some red and white pinks, some pretty roses, and several kinds of ferns. There were two French (264) brigs and three English frigates. Her (38) sister has been (130) a widow (167) for the past five years (130).

---

290. \* In the expressions *Go and fetch*, *Go and write*, the conjunction *and* is translated by the preposition "a" Ex. "Va, vada, or andate a prendere il mio libro." Go, and fetch my book.

## LESSON XXV.

## ON THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

291. Adverbs are words used to express some quality, manner, or circumstance, of a verb, expressed or understood, or to modify an adjective, and even another adverb. "Sì," yes; "no," no; "bene," well; "correttamente," correctly; "molto," very; are adverbs.

292. Adverbs are invariable and have no fixed place in a sentence, in Italian, but they are generally placed after the verb with which they are connected; when adverbs modify adjectives, or past participles, they precede them. Ex.

Andrea scrive bene.	Andrew writes well.
Matilda parla correttamente.	Matilda speaks correctly.
Questi artisti sono molto bravi.	These artists are very able.
Filippo era elegantemente vestito.	Philip was elegantly dressed.
Suo fratello scrive il francese molto bene.	His brother writes French very well.

293. Some adverbs consist of a single word, as "quando," when, "sempre," always; others are formed of two or more words, and are commonly called adverbial expressions,\* as "all' improvviso," unexpectedly; "d'ora in poi," henceforth.

294. Many adverbs are formed in Italian by adding "mente" (which means manner), to adjectives, in the feminine form. Ex.

Generoso, generous,	generosamente, generously.
Diligente, diligent,	diligentemente, diligently.
Dottissimo, very learned,	dottissimamente, very learnedly.

295. When the adjective ends in "le" or "re," the *e* must be suppressed in forming the adverb. Ex.

Facile, easy,	facilmente, easily.
Particolare, particular,	particolarmente, particularly.

296. The adjectives "chiaro," clear; "forte," hard; "felice," happy; and a few others, are sometimes used as adverbs. Ex.

Parlate chiaro,	speak clearly.
Egli batte forte,	he strikes hard.
Vivete felice!	live happy!

---

\* Further on in this grammar will be found a complete list of Adverbs, and Adverbial Expressions.



## ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

297. Adjectives and Adverbs may be used in the Positive form, as "bello" *pretty*, "eloquentemente," *eloquently*; or in the Comparative degree of Inferiority, as "meno bello," *less pretty*, "meno eloquentemente," *less eloquently*; or in the Comparison of Superiority, as "più bello," *prettier*, "più eloquentemente," *more eloquently*; or in the Superlative Relative Degree, as "il più bello," *the prettiest*, "il più eloquentemente," *the most eloquently*; or in the Superlative Absolute degree, as "bellissimo," *very pretty*, "eloquentissimamente," *most eloquently*.

## COMPARISON OF EQUALITY.

298. Comparisons of equality are formed in Italian as follows:—

FIRST TERM.	SECOND TERM.
Così, or sì ( <i>as</i> ) .....	come, ( <i>as</i> ).
Tanto, altrettanto ( <i>as</i> ) .....	quanto, ( <i>as</i> ).
Tanti, or altrettanti } ( <i>as many</i> ).	{ quanti, <sup>s</sup> } ( <i>as</i> ).
Tante, or altrettante }	{ quante, } ( <i>as</i> ).
Più, or quanto più ( <i>the more</i> ) .....	più, or tanto più, ( <i>the more</i> ).
Meno, or quanto meno ( <i>the less</i> ) .....	meno, or tanto meno, ( <i>the less</i> ).
Tale } ( <i>suc'h</i> ) .....	{ quale, } ( <i>as</i> ).
Tali }	{ quali, }

299. "Così...come," and "tanto...quanto," are used with adjectives, participles, and adverbs. "Tanti...quanti," are used with nouns. "Più...più," "meno...meno" and "tale...quale," are used with verbs.

## EXAMPLES.

Egli è così ricco come mio nipote.	He is as rich as my nephew.
Cesare era valoroso quanto Pompeo.	Cæsar was as brave as Pompey.
Non ho tanti amici quanti ne ha mio fratello.	I have not as many friends as my brother has.
Più Carlo studia, più desidera di studiare.	The more Charles studies, the more he desires to study.
Descrisse la scena tal quale l'aveva veduta.	He described the scene to us as he had seen it.
Ella scrive così elegantemente come suo fratello.	You write as elegantly as your brother.

300. The first terms "così," "tanto," "tale," may be omitted, but *not* if they relate to nouns of different gender.

Essa non è bella come sua sorella.	She is not so pretty as her sister.
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Egli non è sapiente quanto lo credevamo.	He is not as learned as we believed him to be.
--	--

Trovo questa città quale la lasciai vent'anni fa.	I find this town such as I left it twenty years ago.
---	--

301. "Al pari di," *as much as*, may be used instead of "così... come"; "tanto...quanto." Ex.

Il figlio fu lodato al pari del padre.	The son was praised as much as the father.
--	--

#### COMPARISON OF SUPERIORITY AND INFERIORITY.

302. In Italian the comparative degrees of Superiority and Inferiurity are formed by translating the adverbs *more*, by "più"; and *less* by "meno"; and the conjunction *than*, by "di" or "che."

303. *Than* is translated either by "di," or "che," before nouns, adjectives, and pronouns; except personal pronouns, when "di," *only* can be used. Ex.

Carlo è più educato di (or che) Pietro.	Charles is more educated than Peter.
---	--------------------------------------

Questa farina è più bianca della (or che la) neve.	This flour is whiter than snow.
--	---------------------------------

Nel Trecento l'Italia era più colta di (or che) tutte le altre nazioni dell' Europa.	In the fourteenth century Italy was more polished than any other nation of Europe.
--	--

Voi siete più ricco di me.	You are richer than I.
----------------------------	------------------------

Ella è di lunga pezza più dotta di lui.	She is a great deal more learned than he.
---	---

304. When *more than*, *less than*, do not indicate comparison, but rather undetermined quantity, they are expressed by "più di," "meno di." Ex.

Possiede più di trenta mila lire sterline.	He possesses more than thirty thousand pounds.
--	--

305. Notice however that when a personal pronoun is followed by a verb (not in the Infinitive) of which it is the subject, *than* is rendered by "che non," "di quel," or "di quello che," and the pronoun is used in the Subjective form, as in English. Ex.

Il disegno è più difficile che io non Drawing is more difficult than I  
(or di quello che) lo credevo. thought.

Se continua così, farà fortuna più If he goes on in this way, he will  
presto ch'egli non (or di quel make his fortune sooner than  
che) creda. he believes.

306. *Than* must be translated by "che" when the comparison takes place between two verbs in the Infinitive Mood, two adjectives, two adverbs, or between two nouns separated by *than*, only. Ex.

È meglio tardi che mai. It is better late than never.

È più difficile di saper ascoltare, It is more difficult to know how to  
che di saper parlare. listen, than to know how to speak.

A parer mio è piuttosto vezzosa che In my opinion she is rather pretty  
bella. than beautiful.

A New York s'incontrano più In- In New York one meets more  
glesì che Francesi. English than French.

#### ON THE SUPERLATIVE RELATIVE DEGREE.

307. Adjectives and Adverbs may be raised to the Superlative Relative, or to a Superlative Absolute degree.

308. The Superlative Relative is formed by placing "il più," "il meno," before the adjective, or the adverb. Ex.

È il più ricco cittadino di\* Londra. He is the richest citizen in London.  
Adolfo è il meno ingegnoso dei tre Adolphus is the least ingenious of  
fratelli. the three brothers.

La grazia è la più nobile parte della Grace is the noblest part of  
bellezza. beauty.

309. The article may be omitted when "più," and "meno" follow the noun. Ex.

Egli è l'oratore più eloquente dei He is the most eloquent orator of  
nostri tempi. our day.

---

310. \* Observe that in Italian after a superlative relative the preposition "di," not "in," is used before names of places.

The following adjectives form their Comparative degrees in two ways, and their Comparative Superlative degree in three ways.

311. POSITIVE. Buono, *good*.  
 COMPARATIVE. Più buono, or migliore,\* *better*.  
 SUPER. REL. Il più buono, il migliore, or l'ottimo,  
*the best*.
312. POSITIVE. Cattivo, *bad*.  
 COMPARATIVE. Più cattivo, or peggiore, *worse*.  
 SUPER. REL. Il più cattivo, il peggiore, or il pessimo, *the worst*.
313. POSITIVE. Grande, *great, tall, large*.  
 COMPARATIVE. Più grande, or maggiore,† *greater, &c.*  
 SUPER. REL. Il più grande, il maggiore, or il massimo, *the greatest*.
314. POSITIVE. Piccolo, *small*.  
 COMPARATIVE. Più piccolo, or minore, *smaller*.  
 SUPER. REL. Il più piccolo, il minore, or il minimo, *the smallest*.
315. POSITIVE. Alto, *high*.  
 COMPARATIVE. Più alto, or superiore, *higher*.  
 SUPER. REL. Il più alto, il superiore, or il sommo, *the highest*.
316. POSITIVE. Basso, *low*.  
 COMPARATIVE. Più basso, or inferiore, *lower*.  
 SUPER. REL. Il più basso, l'inferiore, or l'infimo, *the lowest*.

317. \* "Migliore" and "peggiore" are more generally used in speaking of abstract things. Ex.

La guerra civile è il peggiore di tutti i mali sociali. Civil war is the worst of all social evils.

318. † In speaking of physical size "più grande," "il più grande"; "più piccolo," "il più piccolo," must be used, and not "maggiore," "il maggiore"; "minore," "il minore." Ex.

La mia casa è più grande della vostra. My house is larger than yours.

319. "Maggiore" and "minore" signify also *eldest* and *youngest*. Ex.

Mio fratello maggiore. My eldest brother.

320. The expression *as quick as possible* is rendered in Italian by "il più presto possibile."

321. The following adverbs form the Comparative and Superlative degrees without the help of "più" or "meno."

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Bene, <i>well</i> ,	meglio, <i>better</i> ,	il meglio, <i>the best</i> .
Male, <i>badly</i> ,	peggio, <i>worse</i> ,	il peggio, <i>the worst</i> .
Molto, <i>much</i> ,	più, <i>more</i> ,	il più, <i>the most</i> .
Poco, <i>little</i> ,	meno. <i>less</i> ,	il meno, <i>the least</i> .

### ON THE SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE DEGREE.

Adjectives and Adverbs are raised to the Superlative Absolute degree in two ways:—

322.— I. By changing their final vowel into "issimo," "issima," "issimi," "issime." Ex.

POSITIVE.	SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE.
Buono, <i>good</i> ,	buonissimo,* <i>very good</i> .
Piccolo, <i>little</i> ,	piccolissimo, <i>very little</i> .
Bene, <i>well</i> ,	benissimo, <i>very well</i> .
Dottamente, <i>learnedly</i> ,	dottissimamente, <i>very learnedly</i> .

323.—II. By translating *very*, or *most*, by the adverbs "molto," "assai," or "oltremodo."† Ex.

Egli è molto, assai, or oltremodo      He is very generous.  
generoso.

324. Adjectives ending in "io" lose these two vowels before the superlative termination "issimo," and those ending in "co" and "go," "ca," and "ga," which take an *h* in the plural also take it before "issimo."

Savio, <i>wise</i> ,	savissimo, <i>very wise</i> .
Ricco, <i>rich</i> ,	ricchissimo, <i>very rich</i> .
Largo, <i>wide</i> ,	larghissimo, <i>very wide</i> .

325. A few adjectives form the superlative absolute in "errimo."

Misero, <i>miserable</i> ,	miser <del>o</del> rimo, <i>very miserable</i> .
Celebre, <i>celebrated</i> ,	celeber <del>o</del> rimo, <i>very celebrated</i> .
Acre, <i>bitter</i> ,	acer <del>o</del> rimo, <i>very bitter</i> .
Integro, <i>honest</i> ,	integ <del>o</del> rimo, <i>very honest</i> .
Salubre, <i>salubrious</i> ,	saluber <del>o</del> rimo, <i>very salubrious</i> .

326.\* Sometimes "ottimo," "pessimo," "massimo," "minimo," "sommo," "infimo," may be employed instead of "buonissimo," "cattivissimo," &c.

327. † Another way of raising Adjectives and Adverbs to their Superlative Absolute degree, is to repeat them. Ex.

Ella divenne rossa rossa.      She became very red.  
Andate pian piano.      Go very softly.

### EXERCISE XXXI.

She is as pretty (299) as her sister, but not so clever. The simplicity (146) of nature is more pleasing than (303) the embellishment of art. This tragedy is very interesting, and very well (266) written. Do not (33) walk so fast, walk slower. Your cousin is the laziest (308) and most ignorant boy in (310) the school. My uncle's friend is the richest man in this village. It is nobler to forgive (306) than to avenge one's self. She is taller than you by\* three inches. You do not read badly, but you should read more distinctly. London has as many inhabitants as Belgium. Do you think (30) it is a good day to go to the Crystal Palace? I think so ; (126) it is better to go to-day (306) than to-morrow. Usurers are worse (312) than robbers. The mosaics of Rome, are the most famous (308) in Europe. The ancient Gauls were very vain (322) and fond of ornaments ; they wore bracelets, necklaces, and rings of gold of great value. The charms of a cultivated mind attract more than (306) the graces of the most faultless forms. She was most elegantly (322) dressed. The twilight in the south is much shorter than in the north. My aunt is more charitable than you, but she is not so (299) charitable as she ought to be. In the first centuries the Romans were more (306) warlike than literary. She is so kind, amiable, and pretty that† everybody admires her. Gold (146) is the purest, the most precious, the most ductile, and after platina, the heaviest of all metals Wrought iron is much stronger than cast iron ; it is less brittle, (302) much (287) more durable, and not so easily eaten up by rust. A feigned peace is more dangerous than open war. God's power extends from the lowest (316) abyss of the earth, to the highest (315) parts of the heavens. He is the bravest (308) and ablest general of his time. This lady sings very sweetly, and plays well. It is better to acquit a criminal (306) than to condemn an innocent person.

328. \* The English expressions *taller...by*, *richer...by*, are translated into Italian by "più grande...di," "più ricco...di." Ex. "È più ricco di me, di due mila lire sterline." He is richer than I am, by two thousand pounds.

329. † The expressions *so kind that, so amiable that, &c.*, are translated into Italian by “*così buono che,*” “*talmente buono che,*” “*buono a segno tale che,*” “*amabile a tal segno che.*” &c. Ex.

È abile a segno tale che fa la meraviglia di tutti.      He is so exceedingly clever that he excites wonder in everybody.

## LESSON XXVI.

## ON NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Numeral adjectives are of two sorts—the cardinals and the ordinals.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.		ORDINAL NUMBERS.	
Uno*	1.	Primo	1st.
Due	2.	Secondo	2nd.
Tre	3.	Terzo	3rd.
Quattro	4.	Quarto	4th.
Cinque	5.	Quinto	5th.
Sei	6.	Sesto	6th.
Sette	7.	Settimo	7th.
Otto	8.	Ottavo	8th.
Nove	9.	Nono	9th.
Dieci	10.	Decimo	10th.
Undici	11.	Decimo primo†	11th.
Dodici	12.	Decimo secondo‡	12th.
Tredici	13.	Decimo terzo§	13th.
Quattordici	14.	Decimo quarto	14th.
Quindici	15.	Decimo quinto	15th.
Sedici	16.	Decimo sesto	16th.
Diciassette	17.	Decimo settimo	17th.
Diciotto	18.	Decimo ottavo	18th.
Dicianove	19.	Decimo nono	19th.
Venti	20.	Ventesimo	20th.
Vent'uno	21.	Ventesimo primo	21st.
Trenta	30.	Trentesimo	30th.
Quaranta	40.	Quarantesimo	40th.
Cinquanta	50.	Cinquantesimo	50th.
Sessanta	60.	Sessantesimo	60th.
Settanta	70.	Settantesimo	70th.
Ottanta	80.	Ottantesimo	80th.
Novanta	90.	Novantesimo	90th.
Centol	100.	Centesimo	100th.
Mille¶	1,000.	Millesimo	1,000th.
Un Milione	1,000,000.	Milionesimo	1,000,000th.

\* A *nought* (o) is translated into Italian by "un zero;" plural "zeri."

† Or "undecimo." ‡ Or "duodecimo." § Or "tredecimo."

330. || "Cento" does not change in the plural. Ex. "Due cento uomini," 200 men.

331. ¶ "Mille" is changed into "mila," in the plural. Ex. "Tre mila scudi," 300 crowns.

## ON THE USE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

332. The feminine of "uno" is "una"; but the other cardinal numbers remain invariable. Ex.

Ella ha due libri, ed io ne ho uno. You have two books, and I have one.

333. "Uno," "una," used as nouns signify *a man, a woman*. Ex.

Ho visto uno che si burla sempre di lei. I have seen a man who is always making fun of you.

334. When the noun is placed after "vent' uno," "trent' uno," &c., it must be in the singular, as it agrees with "uno"; but when it comes before, it agrees with "venti," and is therefore in the plural. Ex.

"Vent' uno\* cavallo," or "Cavalli vent' uno," *twenty-one horses*.

335. In stating the order in which sovereigns, volumes and chapters of books, acts and scenes of plays, follow one another, the *ordinal numbers* are used in Italian, as in English, but the article is omitted; and they must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they relate. Ex.

Vittorio Emanuele secondo fu il primo re d' Italia. Victor Emmanuel II. was the first king of Italy.

Atto secondo, scena prima. Act the 2nd, scene the 1st.

336. The dates of the month, except the first day are expressed in Italian by the *cardinal* numbers, preceded by the definite article in the singular or plural; *the first* is expressed by the *ordinal* number. The preposition "di" may be put before the name of the month. Ex.

Quanti ne abbiamo del mese? What is the day of the month?

Oggi è il primo (di) marzo. To-day is the first of March.

Colombo scoprì l' America il dodici (di) ottobre, nell' anno or simply, nel mille (e) ‡ quattro cento § novantadue. Columbus discovered America on (52) the twelfth of October, in the year fourteen hundred and ninety-two.

337. \* The transposition of the units after the tens is not admissible in Italian; for instance we never say "due e venti"; but "venti due."

338. † Before numbers in the plural addi (on the day), "ai," "a," "li." Ex. "Londra, addi 20 febbraio, 1884."

339. ‡ Between "mille" and "millione" and another number, the Italians put the conjunction "e," or leave it out.

340. § *Eleven hundred, twelve hundred*, &c. are rendered in Italian by "mille e cento," "mille e due cento"; and *not* by "undici cento," &c.



341. The expression *what o'clock* is translated into Italian by "che ora." Ex.

Che ora è?	What o'clock is it?
È un' ora, <i>or</i> il tocco.	It is one o'clock.
Sono le due e mezzo.	It is half-past two.
Saranno presto le tre.	It will soon be three o'clock.
A che ora è partito suo fratello?	At what o'clock did your brother leave?

Quando partì erano le undici antimeridiane, ma il suo bastimento non fece vela che alle due pomeridiane.

When he left it was eleven o'clock a.m., but his ship did not set sail before two p.m.

Ora sono le sei meno un quarto, o meno dieci minuti.

Now it wants a quarter or ten minutes to six.

342. *Ago* is rendered in Italian by "fa," *this day week*, by "oggi a otto;" *a fortnight*, "quindici giorni;" *this day fortnight*, "oggi a quindici;" *in a month*, "fra un mese," or "da qui a un mese." Ex.

Mio fratello lasciò Londra dieci giorni fa, e sarà di ritorno oggi a otto.

My brother left London ten days ago, and will have returned this day week.

Credo che le elezioni avranno luogo fra un mese.

I think that the election will take place in a month.

#### DISTRIBUTIVE AND COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

343. Un terzo,	one third.	Un trimestre, three months.
La metà,	the half.	Un lustro, five years.
Il doppio,	the double.	Una volta, once.
Una coppia,	a couple.	Due volte, twice.
Una dozzina,*	a dozen.	Ad uno ad uno, one by one.
Una ventina,*	a score.	A due a due, two by two.

344. *Both* is translated by "tutti e due," "tutt' e due," "ambo," "ambidue," or "ambedue," and *all three*, *all four*, &c., are translated by "tutti e tre," "tutti e quattro," &c.; the following substantive takes the article. Ex.

Tutti e due i fratelli.	Both brothers.
Tutte e tre le sorelle.	The three sisters.

345. The expression *a head* (each), is translated into Italian by "per uno," or "a testa." Ex.

Dateci una guinea a testa. Give us a guinea each.

346. \* "Dozzina," "ventina," "centinaio," *hundred*, "migliaio," *thousand*, are used in the plural, in Italian.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

In the year one thousand (169) and sixty-six, England (148) was conquered by (125) William of Normandy, an (166) event of the greatest (313) importance. I have been reading (76) the "Aristodemo," of Monti, and learnt by heart the fourth (335) scene, of the first act. How old\* is your nephew? He will be seventeen on (52) the 5th of next month. How long† will you remain in this city? I shall leave Rome this day week. (342). I must be in (116) Scotland before the 28th (336) of this month. Sardinia is one hundred (169) and fifty miles (220) from Italy. Send me two dozen (346) of oranges, and three dozen of lemons. Your letter of‡ the 15th of February reached me on the 1st of March (336). Francis the first (335) king of France, and Frederick the second, king of Prussia, were great warriors. Neptune the most (308) distant of the planets, takes  $164\frac{2}{3}$  years (343) to make its revolution round the sun; Uranus, 84 years and a few (42) days; Saturn,  $29\frac{1}{2}$  years, Jupiter, nearly 12 years; Mars, 1 year, 10 months, and 21 days; the Earth, 1 year; Venus, 7 months, and 13 days; Mercury, 2 months, and 27 days. I have just sold§ my horse for (117) thirty pounds, ten shillings. What is the day of the month? It is the 9th (336). What is the height|| of this room? It is about twelve feet high, || and seven feet long. Out of¶ fifteen thousand inhabitants, there were two thousand (331) killed. We generally breakfast at eight, (341) have luncheon at one, and dine at six o'clock. Dante, (151) Petrarca, and Boccaccio, lived in the fourteenth century,\*\* they are the most celebrated Italian *trecentisti*.

347. \* The expression *how old is?* is translated into Italian by "quanti anni ha?" or "che età ha"?; and *I am twenty*, &c., by "ho vent' anni," &c.

348. † In speaking of time, the expression *how long?* is translated by "quanto tempo?"

349. ‡ The expression of *Your letter of the 15th*, &c., is translated by "La sua (or vostra) lettera del quindici," &c.

350. § The expressions *I have just received*, *They have just dined*, &c., are translated by "Ho appunto ricevuto," "Avevano appunto pranzato."

351. || The expression *what is the size, height?* &c., are rendered in Italian by "qual'è la grandezza, l'altezza &c.;" and *it is twelve feet high, long*, &c., are translated into "ha dodici piedi di altezza, lunghezza," &c., or "è dodici piedi lungo, alto," &c.

352. ¶ The expression *out of 15,000 men*, &c., is translated by "Di quindici mila uomini," &c.

353. \*\* Instead of "Il decimo quarto," "Il decimo quinto," "Il decimo sesto secolo," the 14th, 15th, 16th centuries, the Italians often use the expressions "Il trecento," "il quattrocento," "il cinquecento"; and in speaking of a personage who lived in the fourteenth, fifteenth centuries &c., they call him "Un trecentista," "un quattrocentista," &c.

## ON POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

## LESSON XXVII.

NOTE.—In Italian the same words, namely “mio,” “tuo,” “suo,” “nostro,” “vostro,” and “loro,” are used both as Possessive Adjectives, and as Possessive Pronouns; they are possessive adjectives when they are *joined to a noun*, and possessive pronouns, when they *stand for a noun*.

354. Possessive Adjectives are words which are put before nouns, to attribute possession of some kind to the person or things to which those nouns are applied.

355. In Italian, possessive adjectives agree with the thing possessed, and *not* with the possessor, and are generally preceded by the definite article, as follows :—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
MAS.	FEM.	MAS.	FEM.	
Il mio,	la mia,	i miei,	le mie,	my.
Il tuo,	la tua,	i tuoi,	le tue,	thy.
Il suo,	la sua,	i suoi,	le sue,	his, her, its.
Il nostro,	la nostra,	i nostri,	le nostre,	our.
Il vostro,	la vostra,	i vostri,	le vostre,	your.
Il loro,	la loro,	i loro,	le loro,	their.

## EXAMPLES.

Il mio amico vuol vendere la sua casa.      My friend wants to sell his house.

La mia vicina ha perduto il suo cane.      My neighbour has lost her dog.

356. When several nouns follow one another in the same sentence, (whether used as subjects or objects), the possessive adjective, as well as the preposition which may accompany it, must be repeated, in Italian, before each of the nouns, when it is already expressed before the first. Ex.

Paolo ha preso i miei colori ed i miei penelli.      Paul has taken my colours and brushes.

Parliamo sempre di voi e delle vostre sorelle.      We always speak of you, and your sisters.

357. When *his*, *her*, do not refer to the subject of the verb, or when there are two nouns of different genders in the same sentence, in order to avoid ambiguity, the pronouns "di lui," of him; "di lei," of her, of you; replace the adjectives "il suo," "la sua." Ex.

Ella bruciò tutte le di lui She burnt all his letters.  
lettere.

Egli condusse seco sua He took with him his sister,  
sorella ed i di lei figli. and her son.

358. The article is omitted before "mio," "tuo," "suo," "nostro," "vostro," (*not loro*) when they *immediately* precede nouns of kindred, and rank. But when the noun of kindred is preceded by an adjective, or modified by a diminutive, or augmentative suffix, the article is prefixed to the possessive adjective.\* Ex.

Mia madre e le mie sorelle parti- My mother and sisters will  
ranno per Venezia domani leave for Venice to-morrow  
mattina. morning.

Furono presentati a Sua Maestà They were introduced to His  
dal Principe Leopoldo. or her Majesty by Prince L.

Il loro padre è in villa. Their father is in the country.

Fui cortesemente ricevuto dal I was courteously received by  
suo ottimo padre. your most excellent father.

Ho dato una cassetina di dolci I have given a box of sweets  
al vostro fratellino. to your little brother.

359. The possessive adjectives require the article when they precede the following nouns of kindred.

Il mio genitore,	used instead of	mio padre,	my father.
La mia genitrice,	„ „	mia madre,	my mother.
Il tuo germano,	„ „	tuo fratello,	your brother.
La tua germana,	„ „	tua sorella,	your sister.
Il suo sposo,	„ „	suo marito,	her husband.
Il suo consorte,	„ „	„ „	„
La vostra sposa,	„ „	vostra moglie,	your wife.
La vostra consorte,	„ „	„ „	„

360. \* The possessive adjectives may be placed after the noun, and in this case the article is placed before the noun, instead of the adjective. Ex.

L' Eccellenza vostra.

Your Excellency.

L' onor mio non permette ciò.

My honour does not permit this.

361. The expressions, *a friend of mine, a sister of yours, &c.*, are rendered by "un mio amico," "una vostra sorella," &c., or "uno dei miei amici," "una delle vostre sorelle," &c. Ex.

Ho incontrato un vostro ami-	I have met a friend of yours, on
co, sul ponte di Londra.	London Bridge.

362. The relation expressed by the possessive adjectives is elegantly conveyed in Italian by means of the conjunctive pronouns "mi," *to me*; "ti," *to thee*; "gli," *to him*, &c. Ex.

Egli mi è padre, (instead of	He is my father.
"Egli è mio padre.")	

Io non gli sono amico (in-	I am not his friend.
stead of "Io non sono	
suo amico").	

Io le son figlio (instead of "Io	I am her son.
son suo figlio").	

Me le dico umilissimo servo,	I am you very humble
(instead of "Mi dico suo	servant.
umilissimo servo.")	

363. When the possessive adjectives *its* and *their* relate to things, and are in the same clause of a sentence with the possessor, (noun or pronoun, used as subject), and when they are preceded by any preposition, they are translated into Italian by "il suo," "la sua," "i suoi," "le sue," "il loro," "la loro," "i loro," "le loro." Ex.

Parigi ha le sue bellezze; am-	Paris has its beauties; I ad-
miro lo stile dei suoi pub-	mire the style of its public
blichi edifizii.	edifices.

364. When the possessive adjectives *its* and *their* are *not* in the same clause, and are *not* preceded by a preposition, they are expressed in Italian by "ne," before the verb, and the article, "il," "lo," "la," &c. before the noun. Ex.

Comprerò il suo quadro, quan-	I shall buy his picture, although
tunque io non ne conosca	I do not know its true
il vero merito.	merit.

365. The Italians make use of the definite article, and *not* of the possessive adjective, when the sense *clearly points out* who is the possessor. Ex.

Mi duole il capo.

My head aches.

Diresse le parole alla moltitudine irritata.

He directed his words to the angry multitude.

366. Before a noun indicating mental or physical qualities, or any part of the dress or body, if the action expressed by the verb falls on its subject, the Italians make use of the definitive article, and *not* the possessive adjective ; and use the verb reflectively. Ex.

Mi lavo le mani.

I am washing my hands.

Si è fatto male alla mano destra.

He has hurt his right hand.

Ella si levò i guanti.

She took off her gloves.

Mi si gettò piangendo ai piedi.

He threw himself at my feet and wept.

S' invigoriscono la mente\* collo studio della filosofia.

They strengthen their minds with the study of philosophy.

367. But when the action of the verb is *not* directed to its subject, the English possessive adjective is replaced in Italian by the conjunctive pronouns "mi," *to me*, "ti," *to thee*, "gli," *to him*, "le," *to her*, or *to you*, &c. Ex.

Mi fate sempre male alla mano.

You always hurt my hand.

Il chirurgo gli rimise il braccio, in poco tempo.

The surgeon set his arm, in a very short time.

368. The expression *one's own* is rendered in Italian by "il proprio," "la propria," &c., or "il mio proprio," "la mia propria," &c. Ex.

L' ho veduto coi proprii, or co' miei proprii occhi.†

I saw him with my own eyes.

369. \* In speaking of several persons, animals, or objects, when reference is made to something of which each person, animal, or object has *only one*, the Italians always use the name of that thing or object in the singular. Ex.

Sacrificarono la vita in un' intra- presa inutile. They sacrificed their lives in a useless undertaking.

370. † The expressions *to write with one's own hand*, *to think with one's own mind*, are rendered "scrivere di propria mano," "pensare di proprio senno."

371. In the following cases the definite article is *not* required before the possessive adjectives "mio," "tuo," "suo," &c.

- I. In addressing a person. Ex. "Mio caro." My dear.  
 II. In exclamations. Ex. Oh, miei Signori! Oh, gentlemen!  
 III. In many idiomatic expressions, like the following:—  
 Una persona di mia, di vostra conoscenza. An acquaintance of mine, of yours.  
 Faccio a mio capriccio, a tua voglia, a suo senno. I act according to my whim, your will, his mind.  
 L'ho salutata da parte mia, da parte vostra. I gave her my compliments, yours.  
 È colpa mia, vostra. It is my fault, yours.

#### ON POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

372. The Possessive Pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, are translated into Italian by the Possessive Pronouns\* "il mio," "il tuo," &c., "i miei," "i tuoi," &c., which agree in gender and number with the noun to which they relate. Ex.

- Mi dia il suo libro, e prenda il mio. Give me your book, and take mine.  
 La nostra casa è più grande che la loro. Our house is larger than theirs.

373. When possessive pronouns are used simply to indicate possession, without limiting the meaning of the noun of the person, or object possessed, the article *is not* required before them. Ex.

- Questo cavallo è suo. This horse is his.  
 Di chi è questo sigillo? È mio. Whose seal is this? It is mine.  
 Aspetto vostre lettere. I expect letters from you.

374. The possessive pronouns "il mio," "il tuo," &c., used as nouns, signify *my property, my share*, &c.; and "i miei," "i tuoi," &c., mean *my friends, relations, supporters, followers*, &c. Ex.

- Spendete il vostro. Spend your own.  
 Ho veduto i miei. I have seen my people.  
 Lasciò il paese con molti dei suoi. He left the country with many followers.

---

\* See note at the top of page 134.

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

Do you like my (355) books? Yes, I like them (96); they are better (311) than mine, and better (321) bound too. Where are your uncle (356) and aunt? They have gone to (105) Italy. The rose has its (355) beauty, its freshness and its fragrance; but it has also its thorns. Your sister is prettier (302) than my cousin Jane; she has fair\* hair, blue eyes, and a beautiful complexion. The lustre of our ancestor's glory reflects on us, to (103) inspire us (91) to imitate their (355) virtues. Give my compliments (371) to your little sister (358) and (356) your aunt. Your garden is prettier (303) than ours, but our orchard is larger and better (321) stocked than yours. Henry IV. (335) of France used to play† with his children, carrying them on his back round his royal apartments. The unfortunate Charles VI. of France passed his time in playing at cards with his attendants. One of our (355) horses is so lame (329) that we cannot drive him to-day. The customs of our ancestors were simpler and healthier than ours. (372). That lady is a relation of mine (361). One of my favourite studies is botany. She showed him her (357) splendid picture-gallery, and costly jewels. The books you have sent to the book-binder are mine (372) and not yours. Cornelia, the mother of the Gracchi, said to her (357) friends as she showed them (101) her sons, "These are (113) my jewels." He spoils his (366) health by studying too much at night. He is a friend of mine, (361) and has just married one of my cousins.

---

375. \* After the verb "Avere" when particular qualities of the body are mentioned, the definite article is used in Italian. Ex. *Ha i capelli biondi.* *She has fair hair.*

376. † *To play* (to amuse one's-self), is translated by "Giucare," or "Diversirsi."

*To play a game at*, by "Giucare una partita a," or "giucare a."

*To play upon the violin, &c.*, by "Suonare il violino," &c.

*To play the part*, by "Fare, or rappresentare la parte."

*To play upon* (with guns &c.), by "Far fuoco sopra."

*To play* (speaking of a fountain), by "Zampillare," or "Gettare."

*To play false*, by "Ingannare."

*To play the fool*, by "Fare il pazzo," or "Ruzzare."

*To play a trick*, by "Fare una burla," or "celia."

*To play on one*, by "Prendersi giuoco di."



## LESSON XXVIII.

## ON DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

NOTE.—In Italian the same words, namely “questo,” “cotesto,” and “quello,” are used both as Demonstrative Adjectives, and Demonstrative Pronouns; they are demonstrative adjectives when they are *joined to* a noun, and demonstrative pronouns when they *stand for* a noun.

377. Demonstrative Adjectives are words placed before nouns to designate and distinctly point out the person or object expressed by those nouns.

378. The Demonstrative Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun, with which they are used. They are :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Mas. Questo,	} this.	Questi,	} these.
Fem. Questa,		Queste,	
Mas. Cotesto,	} that.	Cotesti,	} those.
Fem. Cotesta,		Coteste,	
Mas. { Quello,	} that.	Quegli,	} those.
{ Quel,		Quei or que',	
Fem. Quella,		Quelle,	

379. “Questo,”\* &c., precede a noun indicating a person or a thing near the speaker, either with regard to place or time. Ex.

Questo signore e questa signora. This gentleman and this lady.

Questi scrigni e queste cassette. These chests and these boxes.

380.\* In the colloquial style “stamattina,” “stasera,” “stanotte,” are frequently used instead of “questa mattina,” “questa sera,” “questa notte.”

381. Sometimes “questo” and “quello” mean *this thing, that thing*, and are nouns. Ex.

Fate questo, vi dico. Do this, I tell you.

382. The poets often use “esto,” “esta,” “esti,” “este,” instead of “questo,” “questa,” &c.

“..... Maestro, esti tormenti  
Cresceranno ei dopo la gran sentenza”? (Dante).

*Master, will these torments*

*Increase after the great judgment?*

383. Sometimes the word which ought to follow “questo,” “questa,” “quello,” “quella,” is understood. Ex.

In questo (momento) egli arrivò.  
In quella (ora) ella morì.

At this moment he arrived.  
At that hour she died.

384. "Cotesto,"\* &c., precede a noun indicating a person, or an object near the person spoken to, and distant from the speaker. Ex.

Dove ha ella comprato Where have you bought that  
cotesto bel quadro? beautiful picture?

Di chi sono cotesti bei Whose are those beautiful  
fanciulli? children?

385. "Quello," &c., are placed before a noun indicating a person or thing, distant from the person who speaks, and also from the person addressed.

386. "Quello" and "quegli" are used before nouns beginning with a vowel or an *s impure*; before a vowel "quello" is very often changed into "quell'."

Quell' arcobaleno è stu- That rainbow is stupend-  
pendo. ous.

Quello specchio è rotto in That looking glass is broken  
due posti. in two places.

Quegli uccelli sono di rara Those birds are of rare  
bellezza. beauty.

Quegli schioppi si fabbri- Those guns are manufac-  
cano a Woolwich. tured at Woolwich.

387. "Quel" and "quei," or "que'," are used before nouns beginning with a consonant. Ex.

Quel signore canta bene. That gentleman sings well.

A quel tempo c'era vino in At that time wine was plen-  
abbondanza. tiful.

Quei ragazzi giuocano tut- Those boys play all day  
to il giorno. long.

388. "Quella" and "quelle" are used before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant; before a vowel they are very often changed into "quell'." Ex.

Quella tela si fabbrica in That cloth is manufactured in  
Irlanda. Ireland.

Dove si comprano quelle Where are those frames  
cornici? bought?

---

389. \* "Cotesto," "cotesta," &c., are frequently spelt "codesto," "codesta," &c.

390. When several nouns follow one another, in the same sentence, (whether used as subjects, or objects), the Demonstrative Adjective must be repeated before each of them, when it is already expressed before the first. Ex.

Comprerò questi pettini e queste I will buy these combs, and hair-  
spazzole da capelli. brushes.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

391. "Questo,"\* "cotesto," "quello," "questi," "cotesti," "quelli" (not "quegli," nor "quei"†), are demonstrative pronouns when they are used instead of nouns, and, of course, they agree in gender and number with the noun to which they relate. Ex.

Non voglio il vostro cavallo; I don't want your horse; I want  
voglio questo. this.

Se io fossi in Lei, non comprerei If I were in your place, I would  
queste carte geografiche; com- not buy these maps; I would buy  
prerei quelle. those.

392. "Questo" and "quello," "questa" and "quella," "questi," and "quegli," are also used as relative pronouns, meaning *the latter* and *the former*; "questo" and "quello" should be used with reference *to things*; in speaking of persons "questi" and "quegli" are used, but *only* as subjects, in the masculine singular. Ex.

Ho comprato una grammatica I have bought a French grammar  
francese ed un dizionario tedes- and a German dictionary; the  
co; quella per Filippo, questa former for Philip, the latter for  
per Guglielmo. William.

I due più grandi oratori dell' The two greatest orators of antiquity  
antichità furono Demostene e were Demosthenes and Cicero;  
Cicerone; quegli fu greco, questi the former was a Greek, the  
romano. latter a Roman.

393. \* The adverbs "qui" and "là" are sometimes put after the demonstrative pronouns, to indicate more forcibly the person or thing referred to. Ex.

Compri questo qui, e non quello là. Buy this one, and not that one.

† "Quei" is however used as a pronoun in expressions like "Quei di Milano," the men (people) of Milano. Dante often uses "quei" instead of "colui." Ex.  
"E come quei, che con lena affanata." And even as he, who, with distressed breath.

## ON DEMONSTRATIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

394. THE ITALIAN DEMONSTRATIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS ARE:—

Costui,	<i>this man.</i>	Costei,	<i>this woman.</i>	Costoro,	<i>these men.</i>
					<i>these women.</i>
Cotestui,*	<i>that man.</i>	Cotestei,	<i>that woman.</i>	Cotestoro,	<i>those men.</i>
Colui,		Colei,		Coloro,	<i>those women.</i>

395. The above pronouns are used for persons only, and do not refer to any antecedent. When they are used in prose, especially in the familiar style, they *often* express contempt towards the person or persons alluded to; whilst in poetry they are *often* used in the sense of highest admiration, and even reverence. Ex.

Chi è costui? Who is that man (fellow)?

Sa ella che costoro sono Do you know that those fellows are thieves.

“Quando vidi costui (Virgilio) nel gran deserto” (Dante).  
*When I beheld him (Virgil) in the great desert.*

## ON THE DEMONSTRATIVE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

396. The demonstrative indefinite pronouns *that* and *this* (meaning *that thing, this thing*), are translated into Italian by “ciò.” Ex.

Ciò non mi va a genio. I do not like that.

Non parliam più di ciò. Let us speak of that no more.

Da ciò capii che voleva From that I understood that  
 lasciarmi. he wished to leave me.

397. The indefinite pronouns *that, that which, what*, are translated into “ciò che,” “quel che,” or “quello che.” Ex.

Ciò che sorprende tutti è What surprises everybody is  
 l'arrivo del principe. the arrival of the prince.

Quel che dice è vero. What he says is true.

Tutto quello che risplende non è oro. All is not gold that glitters.

398. The indefinite pronoun *what*, meaning *that thing which*, is translated into “che,” or “che cosa.” Ex.

Che cosa volete? What do you want?

399.\* There is the same difference in meaning between “costui,” “cotestui,” and “colui,” as there is between “questo,” “cotesto,” and “quello.” (See rules 378, 379 and 385).

400. † “Quanto” is often used instead of “tutto quello che.” Ex.  
 Fa quanto dipende da lui. He does all he can.

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

These (379) cherries (390) and strawberries are ripe, but those (388) pears are not.\* What (398) do you think of this country?† I like it almost as much as (299) my native country. Of these three horses, this is the one‡ (122) I should prefer. Modesty (146) is to merit, what (397) shadows are to the figures in (di) a painting. We are body and mind, the former (392) should obey, the latter command. Go and (290) fetch me that (386) looking-glass. That which (397) is superfluous often costs more than that which is necessary. That man, by (con) his (355) extravagance has not only squandered all his own property, (374) but also that (391) of his wife. I am influenced both by love and anger; the former (392) pleads that I should forgive him, the latter that I should punish him. This money is his, (373) and not yours. Give me that (385) thimble, those (386) needles, and that thread. Take off those thick boots of yours (366 and 386), they will lame your feet (366). Dante and Shakspeare were two great poets; the former (392) was an (167) Italian, and the latter an Englishman. I will do all that (397 and 400) will depend upon me to obtain that (387) post for you (91). Have you paid much for this jewellery? Yes, I have; I paid two pounds ten shillings for (117) this necklace. Your sister has just (350) made me a present of (173) this beautiful bunch§ of grapes. That (386) clock is fast,|| and my (355) watch is ten minutes slow.

401. \* When the word *so* is understood in English, it must be translated into Italian by the pronoun *lo*, which always remains invariable.

402. † *Country* is translated into Italian by:—(a) “*Paese*,” when it means a territory occupied by a people. Ex. “*L’Italia è un bel paese.*” *Italy is a fine country.*

(b) “*Campagna*,” when it means *the country, the fields*. Ex. “*Va a passare l’estate alla campagna.*” *He is going to spend the summer in the country.*

(c) “*Patria*,” when it means *the fatherland*. Ex. “*Amo la mia patria.*” *I love my native country.*

403. ‡ *The one (which,)* is translated by “*quello che*,” and “*quella che*.”

404. § *A bunch of grapes* is translated by “*Un grappolo d’uva*,” *a bunch of keys* by “*Un mazzo di chiavi*,” *a bunch of flowers*, by “*Un mazzo di fiori*.”

405. || In speaking of a clock, or watch, *to be fast* is rendered by “*Avanzare*,” and *to be slow*, by “*Star indietro*,” or “*Ritardare di*.”

## LESSON XXIX.

## ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

406. A Relative Pronoun is a word which relates, or refers to something mentioned before in the sentence, and which is called the *antecedent*; thus in the sentence, "L' uomo che ci portò i fiori." The man who brought us the flowers, "che" is the relative pronoun, and "L'uomo," the antecedent.

407. THE ITALIAN RELATIVE PRONOUNS ARE:—

SUBJECT.	Che,	or	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{il quale, m. s.} \\ \text{la quale, f. s.} \\ \text{i quali, m. p.} \\ \text{le quali, f. p.} \end{array} \right\}$	who, which, that.
DIR. OBJ.	Cui,	or il quale, &c.		whom, which.
INDIR. OBJ.	Di cui,* or del quale, &c.			of whom, of which, whose.
	A cui, or al quale, &c.			to whom, to which.
	Da cui, or dal quale, &c.			from whom, from which.
	Per cui, or pel quale, &c.			for whom, for which.
	Con cui, or col quale, &c.			with whom, with which.
	In cui, or nel quale, &c.			in whom, in which.

408. Both the pronouns "che" ("di cui," &c.), and "il quale" ("del quale," &c.), are used with reference to persons, animals, and things; but still when referring to animals or things "il quale" ("del quale," &c.), is generally used. Ex.

Il giovine che (or il quale) parla. The young man who is speaking.  
 Ecco l'albero il quale (or che), There is the tree which produced  
 produsse tanti fiori l'anno passato. so much blossom last year.

409. \* When reference is made to things "di che," "a che," &c., may be used instead of "di cui," "a cui," &c. Ex.

"La materia di che parlar dobbiamo è importantissima." The matter about which we have to speak is most important.

410. † When referring to time "che" instead of "in che," or "in cui," is used. Ex.

"Lo dì che (in cui) hanno detto ai dolci amici addio." (Dante). On the day they said good-bye to their dearest friends.

Il signore di cui (or del quale) le    The gentleman of whom I have  
ho parlato.                                spoken to you.

Le farò vedere il fiume dal quale    I will show you the river by which  
(or da cui) tutta questa valle è    all this valley is watered.  
irrigata.

411. The relative pronoun must always be expressed in Italian, even when it is omitted in English. Ex.

Il ragazzo che vidi non era così    The boy I saw was not so tall as  
grande come questo.                    this one.

412. "Che" as well as "cui" may be used in the accusative; but when there may be ambiguity between the subject and the object of the phrase, "cui," (which is never used as subject) should be used, and not "che." Ex.

L'individuo cui maltrattò vostro    The individual whom your brother  
fratello.                                ill-treated.

L'eroe, cui tutto il mondo    The hero who is honoured by the  
onora.                                whole world.

413. When "di cui" corresponds to *whose*, it is generally placed between the article and the noun with which it is used, and the preposition "di" is omitted. Ex.

'La Fiammetta, i cui capelli    Fiammetta, whose hair was crisp,  
erano crespi, lunghi e d'oro."    long, and like gold.  
(Boccaccio).

414. In poetry, and in the higher style "onde" is used instead of "di cui," "del quale," &c., "da cui," "dal quale," &c. Ex.

"Amor depose la faretra e l'arco,  
Onde sempre va carco." (Tasso.)  
*Love laid down the bow and quiver,  
With which he is always armed.*

"Que' begli occhi ond' escon saette." (Petrarca.)  
*Those beautiful eyes whence arrows dart.*

415. When referring to persons the "a," of "a cui," is often omitted. Ex.

"Voi, cui fortuna ha posto in mano il freno  
Delle belle contrade ..." (Petrarca.)  
*You, in whose hands fortune has placed the control  
Of the beautiful lands...*

416. When *which, of which, to which, &c.*, have for antecedent a close, or the whole of a foregoing sentence, they are translated by "il che," "del che," "al che," &c. Ex.

Il povero vecchio piangeva amaramente, il che mi commosse oltremodo. The poor old man was weeping bitterly, which moved me very much.

Lo hanno maltrattato, di che si lagna sempre. They ill-treated him, of which he always complains.

417. The pronouns *he who, she who, the one who, those who, the one that, the one which, those which*, having reference to an antecedent, are relative pronouns, and are expressed by "quello che," "quella che," "quelli che" or "quelle che." Ex.

Ammiro questi giovinetti, particolarmente quello che ha recitato "Il Cinque Maggio," del Manzoni. I admire these youths, particularly the one who recited "The Fifth of May," by Manzoni.

418. But when *he who, she who, those who*, do not refer to any antecedent, they are Indefinite Personal Pronouns, and are translated by "colui che" (or "il quale") "colei che" (or "la quale") "coloro che" ("i quali," or "le quali"). Ex.

Colui che le ha detto ciò, si è fatto beffe di Lei. He who said that, was making fun of you.

Coloro che si somigliano si amano. Birds of a feather flock together.

419. "Che," "quale" and "quali" are also used as interrogative pronouns; "che" then means *what*, and "quale," "il quale," "la quale," and "quali" mean *which* (of two, or several persons or things). Ex.

Che lavoro c'è da fare? What work is there to do?

Quale preferite di queste case? Which of these houses do you prefer?

420. The exclamation *what? what a* are translated by "che!" or "quale!" Ex.

Che bel palazzo! che peccato che non sia abitato. What a beautiful palace! what a pity it is not inhabited.

421. The expressions "un non so che," "alcun che," mean *a something or other* (indescribable.)



422. "Quale" ("quali")... "quale" ("quali"), mean *one...another, some...others.* Ex.

Quali andavano, quali venivano, Some were going, some were returning, all were busy.  
tutti erano affaccendati.

423. "Qual" or "quale" is sometimes used in the sense of *such as.* Ex.

"E quale è quei, che volentieri acquista." (Dante).

*And as he is, who willingly acquires.*

424. When "che" means *that*, it is a conjunction, and is always expressed in Italian, even when it is omitted in English. Ex.

Non credo che abbia alcun diritto I do not think he has any right to  
di parlare. speak.

425. "Chè" (whether the accent is marked or not) is often used instead of "perchè," *because.* Ex.

... "che poder ch' egli abbia,

Non ti torrà lo scender questa roccia." (Dante).

*...for, any power that he may have,*

*Shall not prevent thy going down this crag.*

426. "Che," preceded by a verb used negatively, means *nothing, nothing but, only.* Ex.

Non ho che mangiare. I have nothing to eat.

Non ricevette che lodi; neppure He received nothing but praises;  
un soldo. not so much as a half-penny.

427. "Che" when immediately preceded by the negative *non* answers the purpose of the English expression, *let alone.* Ex.

"Spero trovar pietà, non che perdono."\* (Petrarca).

*I hope to find pity, let alone pardon.*

428. "Che" is sometimes used instead of "quando," *when.* Ex.  
Pietro venne che avevo già Peter came when I had already  
finito. finished.

429. Chè! or "ma chè" mean the same as *nonsense!* Ex.  
Ma chè! non sa neanche leggere. Nonsense! he cannot even read.

---

\* The straight reading of this sentence is:—

"Non dico che spero trovar perdono; dico che spero trovar an che pietà."

## LESSON XXX.

## ON INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

430. Indefinite Pronouns are words which represent nouns in a vague, indefinite manner. The following are the Indefinite Pronouns :—

“Chi,” “chiunque,” “chicchessia,” “chisivoglia,” “qualunque,” “qualsisia,” “qualsivoglia,” “alcuno,” “qualcuno,” “qualcheduno,” “ognuno,” “ciascuno,” “ciascheduno,” “cadauno,” “tale,” “cotale,” “taluno,” “certuni,” “niuno,” “nessuno,” “veruno,” “l’ un l’ altro,” “l’ uno e l’ altro,” “ambo,” “o l’ uno o l’ altro,” “nè l’ uno nè l’ altro,” “altri,” “altrui, and “checcchessia.”

## “CHI.”

431. TABLE OF THE PRONOUN “CHI,” PRECEDED BY PREPOSITIONS :—

Chi,	who, whom, he who, him who.
Di chi,	of whom, whose, of him who.
A chi,	to whom, to him who.
Da chi,	from whom, from him who.
Per chi,	for whom, from him who.
&c.	&c. &c.

432. The pronoun “chi” is both an indefinite and an interrogative pronoun ; it is used for persons only, is invariable, and serves for both genders and numbers, it has no need of any antecedent. Verbs employed with “chi” are used in the singular only, except “essere” which is used in both numbers. Ex.

Non so chi venisse qui ieri.	I don't know who came here yesterday.
Chi le ha detto ciò ?	Who told you that ?
Chi sono i di lei corrispondenti ?	Who are your correspondents ?
Sappiamo di chi volete parlare.	We know whom you allude to.
Non saprei a chi facesse allusione.	I could not tell you whom he meant.
Da chi ha ella ricevuto questa notizia ?	From whom did you receive this news ?
Per chi dipinge ella questo quadro ?	For whom are you painting this picture ?

433. "Chi"... "chi" mean *one...another, some...others*. Ex.

Chi accorre, chi squizza tra uomo e uomo, e se la batte (Man- zoni).	One runs up, another sneaks away between man and man, and takes to his heels.
--	---

434. "Chi" is often used instead of "colui che," "colei che," "coloro che," especially in proverbial expressions. Ex.

Chi legge, regge.	Learning is power.
Chi è in difetto, è in sospetto.	He that is in fault, is in suspicion.

"CHIUNQUE," "CHICCHESSIA," "CHISIVOGLIA."

435. The Indefinite Pronouns, "chiunque," "chicchessia" (plural "chicchessiano") and "chisivoglia" (plural chisivogliano) mean *whoever*, and can only refer to persons; "chicchessia," "chisivoglia," &c., are followed by the conjunction "che," and a verb in the Subjunctive Mood. Ex.

Chiunque desiderava parlarle, do- veva ottenerne il permesso dal magistrato.	Whoever desired to speak to her, was obliged to get permission from the magistrate.
Ditelo pure a chicchessia che vi piaccia.	Tell it to whomsoever you like.

436. "Qualunque," "qualsisia," "qualsivoglia," and their plural forms, "qualsisiano," and "qualsivogliano," mean *whatever, whatsoever*, may refer to things or persons, and they are adjectives or pronouns, according as they precede, or stand for a noun. Where they are adjectives they are followed by a verb in the Subjunctive Mood preceded by the conjunction "che." Ex.

Qualunque raccomandazione ch' egli abbia, non sarà eletto.	Whatever recommendation he may have, he will not be elected.
Dategli un vestito qualunque.	Give him any coat whatever.

437. "Alcuno," "alcuna," "alcuni," "alcune," "qualcuno," "qualcheduno," mean *some, any, someone, some persons*; "alcuno," &c., are adjectives when they precede a noun, and pronouns when they stand for a noun; "qualcuno" and "qualcheduno" are only pronouns. Ex.

Alcuni poemi italiani sono difficili a tradursi.	Some Italian poems are difficult to translate.
Non ho visto alcuno.	I have not seen anybody.

## "OGNUNO."

438. "Ognuno," "ognuna," mean *any man, any woman, any one*; they are only used in the singular, with or without an antecedent. Ex.

Ognuno che voglia esser membro Any one who wishes to be a mem-  
della società, paga una ghinea. ber of the society, pays one guinea.

## "CIASCUNO," "CIASCHEDUNO," "CADAUNO."

439. "Ciascuno," "ciascheduno," "cadauno," and their feminine forms, mean *every, everyone, each*, and are adjectives or pronouns; they are adjectives when they precede a noun, and pronouns when they stand instead of a noun. Ex.

Ciascuno degli ufficiali ebbe a Every officer had to pass an  
subire un esame. examination.

Ricevettero una lira sterlina cia- Each of them received a pound  
scheduno. sterling.

## "TALE," "COTALE."

440. "Tale" and "tali," "cotale" and "cotali" mean *such a, some one*, and are adjectives or pronouns, according as they precede or stand for a noun. Ex.

Untal'uomo non è da compiangersi. Such a man is not to be pitied.  
Ho visto un tale che si vanta I have seen some one who always  
sempre. boasts.

441. "Tale" and "cotale," &c., are also used to begin the second part of a simile, and mean *such, even so*. Ex.

"Tale ascendeva la bell' alma al cielo." (Monti)

*Even so did the beautiful soul ascend to Heaven.*

"Cotali uscir dalla schiera ov' è Dido." (Dante)

*So came they from the band where Dido is.*

## "TALUNO" AND "CERTUNI."

442. "Taluno" and "certuni" are indefinite pronouns; "taluno" means *some one*, and is only used in the singular; "certuni" means *some people*, and is only used in the plural. Ex.

Taluno crede che certuni sparlino Some one thinks that some people  
sempre di lui. are always speaking ill of him.

"NIUNO," "NESSUNO," "VERUNO."

443. "Niuno," "Nessuno," "Veruno," and their feminine forms mean *nobody*, *no one*, and are adjectives, or pronouns, according as they precede or stand for a noun. When they follow the verb, they must be preceded by the negation "non," but when they precede it, they do *not* require any negation before them. Ex.

Niun uomo è senza difetti.	No man is without his defects.
Non ho parlato a nessuno.	I have not spoken to anyone.
Nessuno è profeta nel proprio paese.	No one is a prophet in his own country.

ON THE PRONOUNS "L'UN L'ALTRO," &c., "L'UNO E L'ALTRO," &c., "O L'UNO, O L'ALTRO," &c., "NÈ L'UNO, NÈ L'ALTRO," &c.

"L'UN L'ALTRO."

444. The reciprocal pronouns "l'un l'altro," "l'una l'altra," "gli uni gli altri" and "le une le altre," mean *each other*, *one another*; the second term of these pronouns may be preceded by a preposition. Si aiutano l'un l'altro.\* They aid one another.  
Sparlano sempre l'una dell' altra. They always speak ill of one another.

"L'UNO E L'ALTRO, &c., "AMBO," &c.

445. The collective pronouns "l'uno e l' altro," "l' una e l' altra," "tutti e due," "tutt' e due," "ambo," "ambidue," "entrambi," &c., mean *both*; "gli uni e gli altri," "le une e le altre," mean *both the one and the others*, or *all of them*. They are followed by the definite article, when they precede a verb; before a verb the article is omitted. Ex.

L'uno e l' altro de' miei fratelli Both my brothers were out of doors.  
erano fuori di casa.

Gli uni e gli altri furono puniti. Both parties were punished.

"Ambo le mani per dolor mi morsi." (Dante).  
*Both my hands in agony I bit.*

---

446. \* Instead of the reciprocal pronouns "l'un l' altro," &c., the Italians sometimes use the adverbs "scambievolmente," *mutually*, "reciprocamente," *reciprocally*.

"O L'UNO, O L'ALTRO," &c.

447. The optional pronouns "o l' uno, o l' altro," "o l' una, o l' altra,"\* &c., mean *either one, or the other, (or others,) either*. Ex.

Mi mandi l' uno, o l' altro.                      Send me either one or the other.

"NÈ L'UNO NÈ L'ALTRO," &c.

448. The relative pronouns "nè l'uno nè l'altro," "nè l'una nè l'altra," &c., mean *neither the one nor the other*. The verb used with these pronouns must be accompanied by the negation "non," and be in the singular or in the plural number, according as the action it expresses may be done by one, or both the persons spoken of, or alluded to. Ex.

Non comprerò nè l'uno nè l'altro.    I shall not buy either of them.

Nè Foscolo nè Monti non è    Neither Foscolo nor Monti is the  
l'autore di questo poema.                      author of this poem.

Nè l'una nè l' altra non ver-    Neither the one nor the other will  
ranno.    come.

"ALTRI" AND "ALTRUI."

499. The indefinite pronoun "altri" means *another, others*. Ex.

Altri non partirebbe subito.                      Another would not go away at once.

"Venite a noi parlar, s' altri nol niega." (Dante.)

*Come, speak to us, if no one interdicts it.*

450. "Altrui" means *other, others*, and only refers to persons; it is employed both in the singular and plural numbers, as the direct or indirect object of a verb, but never as its subject. The prepositions "di," and "a," before "altrui," are often omitted. Ex.

Vuol sempre aver notizia dei fatti    He always wants to know other peo-  
altrui (or di altrui).                                      ple's business.

"La mia vita che è celata altrui."    My life which is hidden to others.  
(Petrarca).

Non si deve desiderare l' altrui.                      One must not covet other people's  
property.

"CHECCESSIA."

451. The pronoun "checclessia," means *anything whatever*. Ex.

Datemi checclessia.                      Give me anything whatever.

---

\* The other disjunctives used in Italian instead of "o," are "ovvero," "ossia," "oppure," "odanche."

Non vuol nulla da me oggi?      Do you want anything from me to-day?

*Whoever wishes to see all what nature can do.*

Per vantaggiose che fossero la  
sue offerte, non volli accet-  
tarle.

## "PER QUANTO."

459. "Per quanti" and "per quante" are adjectives and mean *whatever*; they are employed with a verb in the Subjunctive mood. Ex.

Per quante ragioni adduc~~essimo~~ Whatever reasons we adduced, we  
non ci fu dato di convincerlo. were not able to convince him.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

Which (419) do you like best of those (387) three books? The one that (417) has the illustrations, and is nicely bound. Who (432) is that lady? She is my sister, of whom (408) I spoke (Pret. Def.) to you (89) yesterday. Who (432) teaches her music? The gentleman whom (408) your brother recommended to me (89). Hark! who is playing (76) now? The young lady (411) we met last night at Mrs. Jones' (241). Which one? (419) The one who (417) spoke French to you. The watch (411) you bought me is broken. Which (419) man is the thief? That one who (417 and 393) is guarded by a policeman. Historians represent men such as (432) they are, poets depict them (89) such as they should be. Who (432) is knocking at the door? My little brother James. To whom (432) have you told the news? To my sister-in-law. The road through which (407) we passed was (Imp. Ind.) very lonely. From whom (432) do you expect a letter? From that lady who (417) spoke to you at my brother's house. Charity rejoices at the good fortune of others (449). The pencil with which (407) I was writing (76) is broken. Children (146) who (407) obey (to) their parents\* deserve to be praised. Whose tie is this? It belongs to that little girl (247). Some people are never satisfied, however (457) prosperous they may be. The horse on which (408) he rides is very spirited. What (398) are you thinking of? I was thinking (76) of the advice† you gave to my brother. Let them be ever so clever (458) they will never succeed (120) in such an (440) undertaking. What (419) is the weight of this shield? It is about ten pounds.‡

460. \* *Parents* is translated into Italian by "genitori"; "parenti" means *relations*. The word *acquaintances* is translated by "conoscenze."

461. † *The advice of a friend* is translated into Italian by "il consiglio di un amico"; *advice*, in the sense of *opinion*, is rendered by "parere."

462. ‡ *Pound*, weight, is translated by "libbra," *pound sterling*, by "lira sterlina."



## LESSON XXXI.

## ON THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

## ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT.

463. The Present of the Infinitive is used in Italian, as in English, to express an action in an indefinite manner, without any reference to time or person. Ex.

Cantare, or il cantar troppo a di- giuno guasta la salute.	To sing too much before breakfast spoils the health.
---	---

464. Both the Present and the Past of the Infinitive are used in Italian as nouns, and are generally translated into English by a noun, a present participle, or the compound of the Gerund. Ex.

Non era l'andar suo cosa mortale. (Petrarca).

*Her gait was not like that of a mortal being.*

Lo scrivermi ella così spesso, mi fa molto piacere.	Your writing to me so often, gives me much pleasure.
--	---

L'avermi ella parlato, è causa di tutta questa gelosia.	Your having spoken to me, is the cause of all this jealousy.
--	---

## ON THE USE OF THE GERUND.

465. In Italian the Gerund is used in the same way as the English Present Participle, but it is never preceded by a preposition. Ex.

Parlandogli mi venne in mente la vostra promessa.	In speaking to him I remembered your promise.
--	--

466. In Italian the Present of the Infinitive preceded by "nel," or "nello," "col," or "collo," is elegantly used instead of the Gerund. Ex.

Nello scriverle, potete palesarle il vostro progetto.	In writing to her, you can inform her of your plan.
--	--

467. As already stated (91) the Compound of the Gerund is used in Italian as in English; except that in Italian the auxiliary "essendo," or "avendo," is omitted, and the past participle alone is expressed, and is inflected, according to the subject in the sentence (when "essendo" is omitted), or the object (when "avendo" is omitted). Ex.

Datoci il dispaccio, partì a gam- be.	Having given us the dispatch, he ran off.
--	--

Sedutasi per terra, si mise a la- vorare.	Having seated herself on the ground, she began to work.
--	--

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

He kept us waiting (464) in the rain till two o'clock in the afternoon (341). We told him (89) it was not the time for arguing (464). He answered that by (465) using moderate means, he was sure of preventing a great misfortune. Your having told (465) him frankly that we would wait no longer offended him. Having conducted me (467) into the room destined for me, he wished me a good-night, and went away. Princes (146) who (408) in governing (466) their subjects, are not guided by (125) principles of justice, excite disaffection. Having seated herself (467) on a comfortable arm-chair, she began to narrate the scene she had witnessed. I admire those artists, I saw them painting\* some very fine pictures. I should like to have one of those pictures; I saw them being painted\* three years ago (342). Well! have you found your books? Yes, I have just (350) seen them torn† under William's bed. I often heard him speaking (468) against you, but I never thought (424) he would be so wicked as‡ to cause you any loss. Young as he is (457) he knows how to make§ himself feared. I like Miss Williams' voice, I heard her singing (468) last night. The song (411) you have composed is very pretty; I have heard it sung (468) several times. Having dressed (467) themselves in their best clothes, they went out for a walk, and went as far as Richmond. I came earlier (302) this morning, because I thought I should have found|| you at home. I do not like to see horses running (468) so fast.

---

468. \* Both the Participial Anglicisms, *I saw them painting*, and *I saw them painted* (being painted), are translated into Italian by "Li ho veduti dipingere."

469. † After the verbs "Vedere" to see, and "Scorgere" to perceive, the Past Participle is employed to describe a person or thing in a state. Ex.

L'ho veduta appoggiata alla finestra. I saw her leaning against the window.

470. ‡ The expressions *so good as*, *so wicked as*, are translated into Italian by "abbastanza buono per," "abbastanza cattivo per."

471. § The expressions *to make himself*, or *herself loved, respected, feared, &c.*, are translated into Italian by "farsi amare, rispettare, temere," &c.

472. || Notice that in Italian the latter of two verbs is generally put in the Present of the Infinitive, when both verbs have the same subject. Ex.

Vorrei poter partire subito pel continente. I wish I could start at once for the continent.

## ON THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

## ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT.

473. The Present of the Indicative is used in Italian as in English.

Ex.

Non lavoriamo per lui.      We do not work for him.

## ON THE USE OF THE IMPERFECT.

The Imperfect of the Indicative is used in the following cases :—

474.—I. When the verb is to express an action which was still in progress, or the state or condition of a person, or thing, when another action was done. Ex.

Leggevo quando Carlo entrò nella mia camera.      I was reading when Charles entered my room.

Quando entrammo, lo specchio era già rotto.      When we entered, the looking glass was already broken.

475.—II. When the verb is to express an action often repeated at a past time. Ex.

Quand'ero a Milano, andavo al teatro quasi tutte le sere.      When I was at Milan, I used to go to the theatre almost every night.

476.—III. When the verb is used to denote the qualities (physical or moral), habits, and customs of persons and nations no longer existing, or the qualities formerly possessed, and the habits and customs practised at a past time by persons and nations still existing. Ex.

A quell'epoca gli Spagnuoli erano un gran popolo.      At that time the Spaniards were a great people.

Cesare Borgia aveva il (375) viso pallido, colle guance imfossate, con baffi e barba rossetta (D'Azeglio).      Cesare Borgia had a pale face, sunken cheeks, and a moustache and beard of a reddish colour.

477. As already stated (rule 76) the participial Anglicisms, *I am writing, he was reading, they will be speaking*, are translated into Italian as if they were, *I write, he read, they will speak*.

478. But the above-mentioned expressions and the like may also be rendered into Italian by the verbs "Stare," and "Andare ;" "Stare" is used when the verb whilst describing a progressive action denotes repose, rest. Ex.

Sto disegnando un ricamo per mia sorella.      I am making a design which my sister will embroider.

Stavo leggendo, quando Carlo entrò.      I was reading, when Charles entered.

479. "Andare" is used with verbs that express motion and progression. Ex.

Le vidi che andavano cogliendo fiori.      I saw them gathering flowers.

Quand' era giovine amava a lo studio delle scienze. When he was young he loved the study of sciences.

Francesco primo amava la gloria e il potere. Francis the First loved glory and power.

Altrevolte i Greci coltivavano le arti e le scienze con grandissimo amore. Formerly the Greeks cultivated the arts and sciences with very great ardour.

480. Notice that if the time during which the qualities were possessed, the habits and customs were practised, is specified, the verb is put in the Past Definite. Ex.

Francesco primo amò la gloria durante tutta la sua vita. Francis the First loved glory during the whole of his life.

Gl' italiani fecero gran progressi durante il decimo-terzo secolo, (or il trecento). The Italians made great progress during the fourteenth century,

481.—IV. When several verbs denote simultaneous incomplete actions, they are all used in the Imperfect. Ex.

Gli uni leggevano mentre gli altri scrivevano. Some were reading, whilst others were writing.

#### ON THE USE OF THE PRETERITE DEFINITE.

482. The Preterite Definite is used in the following cases :—

I. When the verb is used to express an action which was begun and entirely completed at a time entirely past and distinctly specified. Ex.

Napoleone entrò in Mosca il 24 agosto, 1812. Napoleon entered Moscow on the 24th of August, 1812.

483.—II. When the verb is used to express an action which was done to a person or thing at a past specified time. Ex.

Furono sconfitti una seconda volta, il 24 luglio, dello stesso anno. They were defeated a second time on the 24th of the same year.

#### ON THE USE OF THE PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

484. The Preterite Indefinite is used in the following cases :—

I. When the verb is used to express an action which happened at a time past, but not specified. Ex.

Abbiamo viaggiato molto. We have travelled a great deal.

Ho scritto i miei temi. I have written my exercises.

485.—II. When the verb is used to express an action which happened at a period of time not entirely past as “questa mattina,” *this morning* “oggi,” *to-day*, “questa settimana,” *this week*, &c. Ex.

L’ho incontrato stamattina. I met him this morning.

#### ON THE USE OF THE PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

486. The Pluperfect is used to express an action which had happened, at a time *not specified*, before another action occurred. Ex.  
Avevano già distrutto le mura They had already destroyed the walls  
quando arrivai. before I arrived.

#### ON THE USE OF THE PAST ANTERIOR.

487. The Past Anterior is used to express an action which has been done immediately before another action occurred. Ex.

Tosto che avemmo scritto i nostri As soon as we had written our exer-  
temi uscimmo. cises we went out.

488. Notice, however, that if the two actions were repeated, the Pluperfect should be used. Ex.

Tosto che avevamo preso il tè As soon as we had taken tea, we  
andavamo a fare un giro. used to go for a walk.

489. Notice also that the Past Anterior is only used after the expressions, “tosto che,” “appena,” “quando,” “quanto prima.”

#### FURTHER REMARKS ON THE USE OF TENSES.

490. A verb, preceded by the adverbs *as soon as*, *when*, &c., indicates a future time, and therefore the future, and *not* the present tense, must be used in Italian. Ex.

Quando avrò tempo. When I have time.

491. Sometimes in Italian, a verb, is used in the Future when it expresses a present action accompanied by an idea of doubt. Ex.

Crederà che sia per indifferenza Perhaps you think it is through  
su i dolori altrui. (Pellico). indifference concerning other peo-  
ple’s misfortune.

492. The Past Conditional is often used in Italian, instead of the English Present Conditional. Ex.

Promise che m’avrebbe dato da He promised that he would give  
vivere. me wherewith to live.

493. When the verb expresses an action which has lasted for some time past, and is still lasting, it must be put in the present Indicative in one of the two following ways :—

Sto in questa casa da cinque anni.	Or	}	I have been living in this
Sono cinque anni che sto in questa casa.			

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

When I was (475) in Paris I often met (475) your friend. Thomas à Becket was kneeling (475) before the altar when the knights struck him. At two o'clock we were (475) far from the batteries, and had escaped (486) a great danger. The general assured us that the enemy were (475) not sufficiently numerous to (103) attack us. What did you do (475) in the evening when you were in the country? My brother and I read, (475) and my sisters either sewed, or played upon (376) the piano. Frederick the Great always wore (476) a dark blue uniform. When Croesus showed (482) to Solon his vast treasures, the latter said, Sire, if anyone comes with better iron than yours, he will be master of this gold. Spain had (476) formerly immense possessions in America. When we entered (79 and 482) the room, all the servants were asleep (474). Her father was (476) a tall, dark, handsome man, but very proud. Man who now inhabits cities formerly lived (476) in forests; the meadows, the valleys, were (476) his walks: he had (476) for his food the fruits of the earth, and the chirping (464) of birds delighted (476) his ears. My servant behaved (480) very well for the first five years, but afterwards he became (482) very rude, and dishonest. He has been (493) in my service since 1878. I speak of the Normans, because they were (474) then at the height of their glory. Napoleon commanded (482) the artillery at the siege of Toulon, and gained (482) brilliant victories in Italy, as general-in-chief of the French republic. We met (482) last year at Paris. I had never seen (486) him before. Louis XIV. lived (480) seventy-eight years, and reigned (480) seventy-two. I wrote (485) to him this morning, immediately after breakfast. Dante was born (482) in 1265, and died (482) in exile in 1321. When Tasso was (474) twelve years old he composed (476) very good Greek verses. If I were (500) you, I would not lend him (91) any money. He was (476) very odd; he would (476) tell you the same story over and over again, until it was (474) positively painful to hear him. As soon as they reached (487) the top of the mountain, they were struck down (482) by a volley of musketry. Ferdinand and Isabella reigned (474) in Spain when Colombo discovered (482) America.

## LESSON XXXII.

## ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## THE RULE.

494. A VERB SHOULD BE USED IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD WHENEVER THE ACTION IT EXPRESSES IS NOT POSITIVE.

Therefore a verb is used in the Subjunctive Mood :—

495.—I. When it is governed by another verb expressing doubt, wish, command, exhortation, &c. Ex.

Dubito ch' ella possa riuscire.	I doubt whether you will succeed.
Temiamo che non piova.	We are afraid it will rain.
Mi sorprende che ciò l'adiri, (or v' adiri).	I am surprised that this should vex you.
Ella desidera ch' egli venga.	She desired that he should come.
Voglio che facciate ciò.	I want you to do this.

496.—II. When it is governed by a verb used interrogatively, negatively,\* or interrogatively with a negation.† Ex.

Cred' ella, (or credete) ch' egli sia uscito ?	Do you think that he has gone out ?
Si spera che sia eletto ?	Do they hope that he will be elected.
Non credo che sia ammalato.	I do not think he is ill.
Non crede, (or credete) che sia arrivato ?	Do you not think he has arrived ?

497. \* Notice that “Dimenticare,” “Dissimulare,” and “Ignorare,” used negatively, govern a verb in the Indicative, because the two negatives (one inherent, and the other added to the verb) amount to an affirmative. Ex.

Non dimentico che mi ha parlato.	I do not forget that he has spoken to me.
Non ignoro ch' ella ha talenti.	I do not ignore that you have talent.

498. \* Notice also that a verb may be used negatively, without being accompanied by any negative particle. Ex.

È impossibile che siamo attaccati in questa posizione.	It is impossible that we should be attacked in this position.
--	---

499. † Notice that a verb may have an interrogative form or be used interrogatively with a negation, without expressing a real interrogation, and, in that case, it is followed by a verb in the Indicative. Ex.

Dimentica, (or dimenticate) che siamo qui per vegliare agl'interessi della nostra patria ?	Do you forget that we are here to watch over the interests of our country ?
Non crede che è arrivato ?	You do not believe (a fact) that he has arrived ?

500. Notice that in Italian the Subjunctive is often employed instead of the Infinitive Mood. Ex.

Mi permise ch' io andassi a vedere    He consented that I should go to  
l' Abbazia di Westminster.            see Westminster Abbey.

501.—III. When it is governed by the Impersonal verbs\* “Sembare,” “Parere,” “Essere probabile,” “Bisognare,” “Essere mestieri,” &c. Ex.

Sembra(pare)ch'egli abbia ragione.    It seems that he is in the right.

Bisogna che me ne vada.                I must go away.

È giusto che siano ricompensati.        It is right that they should be rewarded.

502. In many sentences a verb may be in the Indicative or in the Subjunctive Mood, according as the action it expresses is certain or doubtful. Ex.

Andrò in un sito dove sarò quieto.    I will go to a place where (I know)  
I shall be quiet.

Andrò in un sito ove io sia quieto.    I will go to a place where (I hope)  
I shall be quiet.

Cerco un uomo che sa la lingua        I am looking for a man who knows  
chinese.                                    the Chinese language (I know  
he does).

Cerco un uomo che sappia la        I am looking for a man who knows  
lingua chinese.                            the Chinese language (I hope to  
find one).

503.—IV. A verb is used in the Subjunctive Mood when it is preceded by one of the following conjunctions, which imply condition, or uncertainty :—

Perchè,	} in order that.	Senza che,	without.
Affinchè,		Dato che,	} supposing that.
Acciochè,	Posto che,		
Purchè,	Supposto che,		
A patto che,	Posto il caso che,		
A condizione che,	} provided that.	Quand' anche,	even if.
Anzi che,		Solo che,	if but.
Innanzi che,	} before that.	Se mai,	if ever.
Avanti che,		Nel caso che,	in case that.
Prima che,		Come se,	as if.



Benchè,*	} although.	Ove,	} if.
Ancorchè,		Quando,	
Contuttochè,		Qualora,	
Nonostante che,		Checchè,	whatever.
Sebbene,		A meno che,†	unless.
Quantunque,		Per tema che,	} for fear that.
Avvegnachè,		Per paura che,	

## EXAMPLES.

Venga che (affinchè) parli- amo delle nostre faccende.	Come so that we may talk about our business.
Quantunque egli scriva mol- to non iscrive bene.	Although he writes a good deal he does not write well.
Gli parli, (or parlategli) prima che parta.	Speak before he departs.
Purchè agisca a modo mio.	Provided he acts as I like.
Checchè faccia, (or facciate) lo faccia, (or fatelo) bene.	Whatever you do, do it well.

504.\* Notice that, according to THE RULE, as stated at the beginning of this lesson, the verb which follow "benchè," "ancorchè," &c., should be used in the Subjunctive Mood *only when the action it expresses is not positive*; so it is logical to say, for instance, "Voglio andare a Parigi, quantunque non v'abbia neppur un amico." *I will go to Paris, although I have not a single friend there*; because it is *not positive* that I have not a single friend there; but it seems absurd to say, "Benchè mi senta debole," *Although I feel weak* (which is a fact). There are, however, many examples of the Indicative Mood being used by the best Italian authors, after the above-mentioned conjunction. But still, according to the rule of Italian grammar, the Subjunctive Mood is used indiscriminately after the above-mentioned conjunctions.

505. † Notice that the conjunctions "a meno che," "per tema che," "per paura che," and "che" used instead of "innanzi che," and "senza chè," are followed by the Subjunctive, preceded by "non." Ex.

A meno che non gli parli, (or parliate) non lavorerà mai.	Unless you speak to him, he will never work.
Si tenea chiuso in castello, per paura che non l'attaccassero.	He kept himself shut up in the castle, for fear of being attacked.

506. The conjunctions “di maniera che,” (“per tal modo che,” “talmente che”) *in such a manner that*, “finchè” (“sinchè,” “fintantochè”), *until* (in keeping with THE RULE), are followed by a verb in the Indicative, when the action it expresses is positive, and that is, when the tense used is past or present. Ex.

Parlò di maniera che fu udito    He spoke in such a manner that  
da tutta l' adunanza.                    he was heard by the whole meeting.

507. But the above conjunctions are followed by the verb in the Subjunctive Mood, when the verb *does not* express a positive action, and that is, when it has reference to a future time. Ex.

Parli in modo tale che sia inteso    Speak in such a manner that you  
e capito da tutta l' assemblea.           may be heard and understood by  
the whole assembly.

508. The verb is put in the Subjunctive Mood, also when it is preceded by the indefinite pronoun “niente,” or the adjectives “solo,” “primo,” “ultimo,” “unico,” “pochi” (“poche”), or any adjective in the superlative-relative degree; as “il più grande,” “il migliore,” &c., followed by a relative pronoun. Ex.

Non c'è niente che mi spiaccia    There is nothing I dislike so much  
come l' ipocrisia.                    as hypocrisy.

Il cane è il solo animale la cui    The dog is the only animal whose  
fedeltà sia provata.                    fidelity has been proved.

509. But when “solo,” “il più grande,” &c., are followed by an indirect object, preceded by the preposition “di,” the verb is used in the Indicative. Ex.

Londra è la più grande delle città    London is the largest of the towns  
che ho vedute.                    I have seen.

510. Notice that the Italians act in contradiction to THE RULE by always using the Subjunctive after “solo,” “il più grande,” &c. It seems clear that after these words, a verb should be put in the Indicative, or the Subjunctive Mood, according as the action it expresses is positive or not positive.

511. Notice finally that in many sentences it is necessary to supply the words left out in them, to appreciate correctly the use of the Subjunctive. Ex.

Voglia il cielo ch' ella sia felice !    Heaven grant that you may be happy !

## ON THE CONJUNCTION "SE."

512. When "se," is a real Conditional Conjunction, it is followed in Italian

513. (a) By a verb in the Present Indicative, if the condition refers to a future time, not far off. Ex.

Se fa bel tempo domani, andremo If it is fine to-morrow, we shall  
alla campagna. go into the country.

514. (b) By a verb in the Future, if the condition refers to a future time, far off. Ex.

Se mi pagheranno alla fine dell' anno, If they pay me at the end of the  
vi darò una guinea. year, I will give you a guinea.

515. (c) By a verb in the Imperfect Subjunctive, if the condition refers to the present time. Ex.

Se avessi denaro, comprerei questo If I had money I would buy this  
orologio. watch.

516. (d) By a verb in the Pluperfect Subjunctive, if the condition refers to a time past. Ex.

Se avessi conosciuto le sue inten- Had I known his intentions, I  
zioni, non gli avrei parlato. should not have spoken to him.

517. But when "se," is *not a real* Conditional Conjunction, it requires after it the verb in the same mood and tense as the English conjunction *if*. Ex.

Egli non sa se ritorneremo qui, o He does not know if (whether)  
no. we shall return here.

Se avete biglietti d'entrata, v' an- If (as) you have tickets, we will  
dremo. go.

Se aveva bisogno di me, era amabi- When he needed my help, he  
lissimo. was very amiable.

518. A verb is used in the Subjunctive Mood after "quando," and "ove," when these words are used instead of "se," meaning *in case that*. Ex.

Quando (or ove), le piaccia, an- If you like, we shall go to the  
dremo al teatro questa sera. theatre this evening.

519. As stated in rules 455, 457, 458, the Subjunctive Mood is also used after the adverbs "quanto," *how much*, and "per quanto," or "per," *however much*. Ex.

L'opera umana, per buona che sia, Human work, be it ever so good,  
trova sempre critici. always finds critics.

520. The Subjunctive is also used after the pronoun "checcchè," whatever. Ex.

Checcchè facciate, fatelo bene. Whatever you do, do it well.

RULES FOR THE CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE GOVERNING VERB, (IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD), AND THE GOVERNED VERB (IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD).

521.—I. When the governing verb is in the Present or in the Future (Indicative), the governed verb is put in the Present of the Subjunctive, to express a present or a future action, or state ; but in the Imperfect, or in the Perfect Subjunctive, to express a past action, or state ; in the Imperfect, if the action or state, is alluded to as having been incomplete at a past time ; in the Perfect, if it is alluded to as complete. Ex.

Non credo che Giuseppe lavori adesso. I do not think that Joseph is working now.

Pagherò, purchè io abbia denaro. I will pay, if I have money.

Non credo che lavorasse quando siamo venuti. I do not think that he was working when we came.

Dubito che abbia ricevuto la lettera di suo padre. I doubt whether he has received his father's letter.

522. Notice that the Imperfect, instead of the Present Subjunctive, and the Pluperfect, instead of the Perfect Subjunctive are used when some conditional expression follows the verb in the subjunctive. Ex.

Dubito ch' ella studiasse, se non ci fosse costretta. I doubt that you would study, if you were not compelled to do so.

523.—II. When the governing verb is in one of the past tenses (Indicative), or in the Conditional Mood, the governed verb is put in the Imperfect Subjunctive to express a present action, or state, but in the Pluperfect Subjunctive to express a past action or state. Ex.

Non sapevo che Carlo dimorasse qui. I did not know that Charles was living here.

Vorrei ch' ella venisse da me domani. I wish you would call on me to-morrow.

524. Notice that when the governing verb is in the Past Indefinite, followed by "*perchè*," "*affinchè*," "*benchè*," "*quantunque*," &c., the governed verb is put in the Present Subjunctive, to express a present, a future action, or state. Ex.

Vi ho dato il denaro perchè possiate andare a vedere vostri. I gave you the money so that you may go to see your friends.

525. Notice finally that when the governing verb is in the Past Indefinite, it is customary to use the Perfect instead of the Pluperfect Subjunctive. Ex.

Non ho mai conosciuto un uomo che abbia tanto lavorato. I have never known a man who has worked so hard.

## EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Do they hope (495) that he will be elected a (167) member of Parliament? I wish (495) he may succeed in his undertaking. It is possible (501) that I may have been imprudent, but I have not been criminal. Unless (505) you invite him yourself, he will not come. I do not like (496) you to go out with that good-for-nothing fellow. The lion never attacks, unless he is provoked. I do not think (496 and 521) he was working when I rang the bell. If (513) Mr. John comes before dinner tell him (495 and 500) to wait for me (91). It was necessary (501) that two of our squadrons\* should advance, and force the enemy's line. It seems (501) as if nothing could make him (89) happy again. Learn your lessons for to-morrow, lest (505) your master punishes you. I do not think (496) you have acted prudently. I take so much care with your education, in the hope (495) that you will profit by it (108). I do not think (496) you have invested much capital† in that speculation. He wishes (495) that I should reflect on that proposal. I wrote to him by post, so that (503) he might learn the news in time. Tell (495 and 500) the servant to awake me early to-morrow morning. Stop with me until (503) I receive assistance. Whatever (520) he undertakes to do, he does it diligently. Your father will pay all your debts, on condition (503) that you will execute his orders faithfully. I do not know (496) where little William is. There are few (508) men whose character is better known than his. It is the most (508) interesting book I ever read. However (519) ingenious the Greeks and Romans were, still they did not discover the art of printing books.

526. \* *A squadron*, of cavalry is translated by "uno squadrone."

*A squadron*, of ships, is translated by "una squadra."

527. † *The capital*, meaning the funds, money, is translated by "il capitale."

*The capital*, meaning the chief town, is translated by "la capitale."

*The capital of a column*, is translated by "il capitello di una colonna."

## LESSON XXXIII.

## ON THE FORM AND USE OF PASSIVE VERBS.

528. There are three ways of expressing the Passive Form of verbs, in Italian.

529. The first way is to use the verb "**Essere**" as an auxiliary, followed by the Past Participle of any Active transitive verb. Ex.

Egli è stimato da tutti.

He is esteemed by everybody.

Gli Egiziani furono sconfitti dai Francesi alla battaglia delle Piramidi. The Egyptians were defeated by the French at the battle of the Pyramids.

530. A verb is rendered passive in the way indicated above only when one desires to lay a stress on the result of the action.

531. Many English sentences are best rendered into Italian by giving them an active turn, and this is done by changing the indirect object in the sentence into the subject, and the subject into the direct object. Ex.

Ognuno desidera le ricchezze.

Riches are desired by everybody.

La sua cattiva condotta mi ha ruinato.

I was ruined by his bad conduct.

I Francesi sconfissero gli Egiziani alla battaglia delle Piramidi.

The French defeated the Egyptians at the battle of the Pyramids.

532. The second way is by using the verb "**Venire**,"\* instead of "**Essere**" as an auxiliary. Ex.

Venni chiamato agli esami.

I was called to the examination.

Vennero dichiarati innocenti.

They were declared innocent.

Sono sicuro che verrà eletto deputato.

I am sure he will be elected a deputy.

533. \* Notice that the verb "**Venire**" is used instead of "**Essere**" only in those tenses which, in the active transitive verb, are single; for instance, it would be wrong to say, "**Erano venuti dichiarati innocenti.**" They had been declared innocent. The right form is "**Erano stati dichiarati innocenti.**"

534. The verb "**andare**" is also used in some cases instead of "**Essere**" in the passive forms of verbs. Ex.

La cosa va fatta così.

The thing is done in this way.

Il vero merito va sempre congiunto alla modestia.

True merit is always accompanied by modesty.

535. The third way of forming a Passive Verb—the way most congenial to the Italian language—is to employ the word “si,”\* followed by a verb in the third person singular, or plural, according as the noun in the sentence is in the singular, or plural. Ex.

Si dice che la Regina partirà domani.	It is said that the Queen will depart to-morrow.
Il buon vino si vende a caro prezzo in Inghilterra.	Good wine is sold very dear in England.
I libri si stampano a buon mercato, in Germania.	Books are printed cheap, in Germany.
Vi si parlano tutte le lingue europee.	All the European languages are spoken there.
Se ne parla da per tutto.	It is talked of everywhere.

536. The expressions *I am asked*, *He is promised*, *They are ordered*, &c., are translated by “Mi si dice,” “Gli si promette,” “Si comanda loro,” &c.

537. Sometimes, and more especially when the verb is in the reflective form “l’ uomo,” “uno,” “alcuni,” or “la gente,” is used, instead of “si,” before the verb. Ex.

L’ uomo vince e fugge certi vizii.	Man shuns certain vices and flees from them.
Uno si avvezza facilmente alla pigrizia.	We easily accustom ourselves to idleness.

538. Whenever “si” would cause any ambiguity in the sense of the phrase, the passive verb must be formed with “essere,” or “venire,” as explained above. Ex.

Gli uomini virtuosi sono ammirati (not si ammirano, which might mean <i>admire themselves</i> .)	Wise men are admired.
--	-----------------------

539. \* Notice that the peculiar word “si,” which translates the English words *one*, *they*, *we*, *people*, has all the appearance of being the same as the French word *on*, but it is not so; the proof of this assertion is that the verb used with “si” must agree in number with the noun in the sentence.

Nor is “si,” as it has often been wrongly stated, a mere reflective pronoun; for it would be a very weak way of expressing, to say, for instance, *It says itself that the Queen will start to-morrow*.

“Si dice che la Regina, &c.,” “I libri si stampano, &c.,” are really Passive Sentences, in which the indirect object (which does the action expressed by the verb) is understood; thus “Si dice (dall’ uomo) che la Regina partirà domani.” I libri si stampano, (dall’ uomo) a buon mercato in Germania. This shows that in Italian a verb in the Passive form is not so often used as in French, but is nearly as often used as in English.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

He is greatly loved (529) by (125) his parents. He has been long considered (493 and 529) the best poet of the age. They were ordered (536) to keep themselves ready, in case of a sudden attack. The Austrians were defeated (531) by the Prussians at the battle of Sadowa. We went (534) wandering all night through the forest. It is generally believed (535 and 495) that Rome was founded (529) by Romulus, though there are no proofs in support of the tradition. Is it true that your cousin John is about to get married (*sta per*) (page 63)? I think so; they speak of it (535) everywhere in town. The barbarous sport of the bull fight was introduced (529) into (116) Spain by the Arabs, amongst whom it was celebrated (533) with great pomp. I am requested (536) to tell you not to go away without leave. These pictures have been admired (529), but I am sure (424) they will not be sold (535). I have heard\* the report of a gun. It is reported (535)† that he will be made (533) Minister for Foreign Affairs. I have heard it said‡ that lions can be trained (535) to perform like dogs. I have not heard from§ my brother-in-law since the 15th (336) of January. At country fairs|| one meets with very curious people.¶ It is said (535) that popular songs reveal the character of a people.

540. \* *To hear* is translated into Italian either by "Udire," or by "Sentire." Ex. Ho udito, (or sentito) la voce di mio fratello. I have heard my brother's voice.

541. "Sentire" means also *to feel*. Ex.

Non mi sento bene. I do not feel well.

542. † *It is said that, it is reported that*, are elegantly translated into "corre la voce che," "corre fama che," "si vuole che."

543. ‡ *I have heard it said that*, is translated into "ho sentito dire che."

544. § *To hear from*, in the sense of *to receive news from*, is translated into "ricevere lettere da," "ricevere notizie da."

545. || *A fair*, meaning a market is translated into Italian by "una fiera."

*A fair lady*, is translated by "una bella signora."

*A fair complexion*, is translated by "una carnazione bianca."

*A fair price*, is translated by "un prezzo giusto."

546. ¶ *The people*, meaning the inhabitants of a country, is translated by "il popolo."

*People*, meaning persons, is translated by "la gente." Ex.

"E che gent' è che par nel duol sì vinta?" (Dante).

What folk is this which seems by pain so vanquished?



## LESSON XXXIV.

ON "VOLERE," "DOVERE," "POTERE," AND "SAPERE."

547. When *do, did, will, shall, would should, may, might, can, could,* and *let*, are employed as auxiliary verbs, they are not translated into Italian ; but when they are used as distinct verbs of themselves, each of them has its corresponding Italian verb.

548. *Do* and *did* are translated by "Fare." (See page 68).

549. *Will* and *shall, would* and *should*, are translated by "Volere" or "Dovere," according as *will* or *duty* is to be expressed. Ex.

Voglio parlargli.

I will speak to him.

Avrebbe dovuto scrivermi.

He should have written to me.

La confidenza che ho creduto dover mettere in lui.

The confidence which I have thought right to put in him.

550. The verb *to have to, (to be obliged to)*, is translated into Italian by "Dovere." Ex.

Debbo essere al mio posto a mezzogiorno. I am to be at my post at noon.

551. The verb *I ought, you ought, &c.*, is also translated by the conditional, or the Conditional Past, of "Dovere." Ex.

Dovrei andare da mio cognato.

I ought to call on my brother-in-law.

Dovrebbe scrivere a suo padre.

You ought to write to your father.

Avrebbero dovuto pagarmi prima di lasciar Londra.

They ought to have paid me before they left London.

552. The verb *I must, they must, &c.*, is also translated into "Dovere." Ex.

Debbo scrivere al presidente del comitato. I must write to the chairman of the committee.

553. The expressions *I will have, you will have, they will have, will you have, &c.*, meaning *I wish, like, or choose to have, you wish, like, or choose to have, &c.*, are translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "Volere." Ex.

Vuole questo arancio?

Will you have this orange?

Vuole un biglietto per il concerto di mia sorella?

Would you like to have a ticket for my sister's concert?

Quale volete dei due?

Which do you choose of the two?

554. The expressions *will you have the kindness ? will you have the goodness ? will you do me the favour to ?* are translated into Italian by "Vuol avere" or "volete avere," "la bontà di," or "Voul farmi il piacere di." Ex.

Vuole avere la bontà di tradurmi questa lettera in Italiano ? Will you have the kindness to translate this letter into Italian for me?

555. The expressions *I will have him, you will have me,* are translated into Italian by "Volere," followed by "chè," and the verb in the Subjunctive Mood. Ex.

Voglio che stia a casa finchè sia guarito. I will have him stay at home until he is quite well.

Vorrebbe che lavorassimo da mattina a sera. He would have us to work from morning to night.

556. The verb "Volere" is sometimes used to express *probability* that the action expressed by the chief verb in the sentence will happen. Ex.

Il mio viaggio deve durare cinque giorni. My journey is to last five days.

Si sapeva che doveva un giorni governare la Francia. It was known that he was likely one day to govern France.

557. The verbs *may* and *might, can* and *could,* are translated by "Potere." Ex.

Posso rendervi questo servizio. I can render you this service.

Potrei andare a Parigi. I could go to Paris.

Potete venir meco. You may come with me.

Avreste potuto venir prima d'ora. You might have come before now.

558. When *can* and *could* are used in the sense of *to know how,* they are translated into Italian by "Sapere." Ex.

Sa parlar francese ? Do you speak French ?

Sapeva disegnare, ma non sapeva dipingere. He knew how to draw, but he did not know how to paint.

Sapreste insegnarmi la via che conduce al ponte di Londra ? Could you tell me the way to London Bridge ?

559. When *to let* is a verb by itself it is translated by "Lasciare." Ex. Lasciatemi andar fuori. Let me go out.

## ON THE NEGATION.

560. The Italian adverbs expressing negation are "No," "Non," "Ne."

561. "No" has the same meaning and is used in the same way in Italian as in English.

562. "Non" means *not*, and always precedes the verb it negatives.  
Ex.

Egli non parla. He does not speak.

563. "Non...nè" mean *neither...nor*, and are used when there are two verbs in the same sentence. Ex.

Non iscrivo nè leggo. I neither read nor write.

564. But when there is only one verb in the sentence, *neither...nor* are translated by "nè...nè" preceded by "non." (See rule 448). Ex.

Non ha nè danaro nè amici. He has neither money nor friends.

565. "Non...che," "non altro che," "non...se non," mean *nothing but, but, only*. Ex.

Non fa che parlare. He does nothing but talk.

Non ho che un cavallo. I have but one horse.

566. "No, mai" and "non...mai" (in answer to a question), mean *never*. Ex.

L'ha mai veduto? No, mai. Have you ever seen him? Never.

Non l'ho mai veduto. I have never seen him.

567. The words "mica," "punto," "neppure," and "già," add strength to the negative "non." Ex.

Non ho mica denaro. I have no money at all.

Non credo punto quel che dice. I do not believe a word that he says.

Non ho neppur un soldo. I have not even a half-penny.

Non credete già ch'io voglia sapere i vostri affari. You must not think that I care to know your affairs.

568. The negation "non" is always required after the verbs "impedire," *to prevent*, "evitare," *to avoid*, "badare," (followed by a verb in the Subjunctive Mood\*), *mind lest*, "guardarsi di," *to beware of*, and the compound conjunctions "per paura che," "per tema che," *for fear that, lest*, and "che," used instead of "senza che." Ex.

La neve impedì che non venissero. The snow prevented them from coming.

569. \* "Badare" followed by a verb in the Indicative Mood, means *notice*. Ex.  
Badate che non ha fatto il suo dovere. Notice that he has not done his duty.

Padate che non vi scappi. Mind lest he escapes you.  
 Diragli da parte mia che si guardi You will tell him from me to  
 di non credere alla favola di beware of believing Johnny's  
 Giannotto. (Boccaccio). story.  
 Non passa giorno che non venga a Not one day passes but he comes  
 vedermi. to see me.

570. The negation "non" is required after the verbs "temere" and "aver paura,"\* *to fear*, when they are used affirmatively. Ex.

"E temo che non sia già sì smarrito." (Dante).

And I fear that he is already so far lost, (in bewilderment).

571. But when "temere," and "aver paura," are used negatively, they do not require the negative after them. Ex.

Non temo che vengano. I do not fear they will come.

572. The negation "non" is also required after the adjective "migliore," *better*, "peggiore," *worse*, "più grande," *greater*, &c., and the adverbs "altrimenti," *otherwise*, "meglio," *better*, "peggio," *worse*, "meno," *less*, and "più," *more*, when the verb which precedes them is used affirmatively. Ex.

Questo terreno è migliore ch' io This soil is better than I thought.  
 non lo credeva.

Egli era più ricco che voi non siete. He was richer than you are now.  
 Parlano altrimenti che non agiscono. They speak otherwise than they act.

573. But when the verbs preceding the above-mentioned adjectives and adverbs are used negatively, no negative is required after them. Ex.  
 Non parlano altrimenti che agi- They do not speak otherwise than  
 scono. they act.

574. The verbs "negare," *to deny*, "dubitare," *to doubt*, and "sospettare," *to suspect*, require "non" after them,† only when they are used negatively, or interrogatively with a negation. Ex.

Non nego che non sia uomo abile. I do not deny his being an able man.

575. But when "negare," and "dubitare" are used affirmatively, they do not require "non" after them. Ex.

Nego ch' egli sia partito. I deny that he has gone away.

576. \* Some authors have employed "temere," "aver paura," "dubitare," and "sospettare," without the "che," before the "non." Ex.

"Dubitavano forte non gl' ingan- They had strong doubts that he was  
 nasse." (Boccaccio). deceiving them.

577. † It must be admitted that the negative "non" is not always employed after the above-mentioned verbs, but at the same time it is absurd to deny that it has been so employed by the best Italian authors. Besides, the use of the negation in all the cases mentioned in this lesson can be justified on the ground that the "non" does *not* negative the verb expressed, but a verb left out, (because of the excited state of the mind under fear, &c.) whose meaning is the reverse of the meaning of the verb expressed. For instance, in the quotation from Dante, the full meaning of the sentence is "E temo, non (ch' egli sia salvo e senza paura, ma che) sia già sì smarrito."

## EXERCISE XL.

I would like (549) to speak to you on a matter of importance. They are to be (550) here this afternoon at three o'clock. I ought to (551) write to my mother, but I have not time. My essay must be (552) ready for the next issue of the magazine. Will you have (553) a steel pen, or a quill? I prefer a quill, if you have one (51). Will you be so good as (554) to tell me where you buy your gloves? With the greatest (313) pleasure; I buy them at Johnstone's (241). Can he (558) write? No, he can neither (563) read nor write. Does your cousin Charles come here often? Yes, he is expected (557) to visit us to-morrow or the day after to-morrow. He could not (557) deny the accusation we brought against him. Mind (568) he does not come here; if he does (513) I shall never come to see you again.\* Will you have this bunch (404) of violets? No, thank you. Why not?† Because I should prefer that rose, if you will give it to me. The queen is expected (556) to leave London this week. We should (540) encourage the beautiful, (153) because the useful is sure to be sought after. They say (335) that the procession is to pass through Piccadilly. It ought to have passed (551) through Oxford Street, but the preparations could not be made (535) in time. Am I to do (550) all this work for nothing? No, you will be paid. She is to write (550) to him three times a week. Will you go (139) with me or not; I want you (555) to make up your mind? I am sorry but I cannot; I have to be at my father's office before five o'clock (341). You should have told me (549) that last night; I could have asked Charles to come. I do not like to hear cats mewing‡ at night. Do not leave (559) flowers in a bed-room (234).

578. \* *Any more, never again*, are translated into "non più."

579. † *Why not?* and *perhaps not*, are translated into "perchè no"? "forse no."

580. ‡ The Italian for *to mew*, like a cat (gatto), is "Miagolare."  
 ..... *to bark*, like a dog (cane), is "Abbaire."  
 ..... *to growl*, like a dog (cane), is "Latrare."  
 ..... *to neigh*, like a horse (cavallo), is "Nitrire."  
 ..... *to bray*, like an ass (asino), is "Ragliare."  
 ..... *to bellow*, like an ox (bue), is "Muggire."  
 ..... *to grunt*, like a pig (porcello), is "Grugnire."  
 ..... *to bleat*, like sheep (pecora), is "Belare."  
 ..... *to roar*, like a lion (leone), is "Ruggire."  
 ..... *to howl*, like a wolf (lupo), is "Urlare."  
 ..... *to crow*, like a cock (gallo), is "Cantare."  
 ..... *to sing*, like a nightingale (rusignuolo), is "Cantare."  
 ..... *to chirp*, like a sparrow (passero), is "Garrire."  
 ..... *to talk*, like a parrot (papagallo), is "Parlare."  
 ..... *to squeak*, like a mouse (sorcio), is "Squittire."

## LESSON XXXV.

## ON THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

581. The Past Participle is a word which partakes of the nature of a verb and an adjective; it is generally preceded by one of the tenses of either "Avere,"\* or "Essere,"† used as auxiliaries. When a Participle is conjugated with "Avere," it is a verb; but when it is united with "Essere," it may be regarded as an adjective.

582. NOTE.—There is no point on which Italian Grammarians are more at variance with one another, than in their statements on what concerns the inflexion of the Past Participle. This is owing to the nature of the language itself, which is imperative in its laws of harmony, and yet does not allow them to be violated even when there is a risk of infringing upon the rules of grammar; as is shown in page 179.

583. The following rules are however adhered to by most Italians at the present time.

## ON THE PARTICIPLE PRECEDED BY "AVERE."

584. The Past Participle of an Active Transitive Verb (see rules 65—69) is conjugated with "Avere," and remains invariable, that is to say ends in *o*, when the Direct Object in the sentence follows it‡. Ex.

Ho comprato tre libri.

I have bought three books.

585. But when the Direct Object precedes the Past Participle, the latter is variable. Ex.

Ecco i libri che ho comprati.

Here are the books I have bought.

Li ho comprati a buon mercato.

I bought them cheap.

Le ho vedute passeggiare.

I have seen them walking.

Ho scritto a mia madre, e l'ho pregata di mandarmi del danaro.

I have written to my mother, and asked her to send me some money.

586. \* All the Active Verbs—both Transitive and Intransitive, (see rules 65 and 66)—and most Neuter verbs (see rule 127), are conjugated with "Avere."

587. † "Essere" ("Venire," or "Andare") is used to form the compound tenses—(a) of Passive Verbs, (see rules 529, 533 and 534)—(b) of (18) Neuter Verbs, (see rule 128)—(c) of Reflective Verbs, (see rule 132).

588. ‡ There are cases when the Past Participle, conjugated with "Avere," does not express an action, but expresses a quality in the Object in the sentence; when such is the case the Participle agrees with the noun it qualifies. Ex.

"Un altro, che forata avea la gola." (Dante).

Another one, who had his throat pierced through.

589. The Past Participle of Active Intransitive Verbs (see rule 66) always remains invariable. Ex.

Ci hanno parlato stamattina. They spoke to us this morning.

590. The Past Participle of most Neuter Verbs is preceded by "Avere" (see rule 127), and remains invariable. Ex.

Abbiamo passeggiato tutta la mattina. We have been walking about all the morning.

591. With regard to the Impersonal Verbs, the Past Participle of those which like "Piovere," can be conjugated either with "Avere," or "Essere," (See Rule 136) always remains invariable. Ex.

Ha, or è piovuto tutta la notte; fino all'alba. It rained all night; until dawn.

592. But the Past Participle of those Impersonal Verbs which are conjugated like "Accadere," and have "Essere" for auxiliary, is variable. Ex.

Gli sono accadute disgrazie. Misfortunes have happened to him.

#### ON THE PARTICIPLE PRECEDED BY "ESSERE."

593. The Participle preceded by "Essere" always agrees with the Subject in the sentence, whether it belongs to an active verb, used passively, or to one of the eighteen neuter verbs conjugated with "Essere," as explained in rule 128. Ex.

Ella è stimata da tutti. She is esteemed by everybody.

Essi sono caduti nella rete. They have fallen into the trap.

594. Notice that sometimes the auxiliary is not expressed, but understood, in that case the ellipsis must be supplied, and then the participle will be found to follow the rules given above. Ex.

Quante case (sono state) distrutte! How many houses (have been) destroyed!

Le battaglie (che sono state) vinte dagli Inglesi. The battles (which have been) won by the English.

595. Instead of "Quand' ebbi veduto," *when, or as soon as I had seen*, "Quand' ebbe sentito," *when, or as soon as he had heard*, "Quando fui arrivato," *when, or as soon as I had arrived*, "Quando fu scoperto," *when, or as soon as he was discovered*, &c., the more elegant expressions "Veduto che ebbi," "sentito che ebbe," "arrivato che fu," "scoperti che furono," &c., are used. Ex.

Veduto che ebbi il palazzo, mi venne venne l'idea di comprarlo. No sooner had I seen the palace, than I conceived the idea of buying it.

## FURTHER REMARKS ON THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

596. In the following cases, and in scores of a similar nature, the Past Participle in Italian is illogically inflected for the sake of euphony:—

Egli ci ha mandati* a cercare.	He sent for us.
Questi quadri mi vanno a genio; li ho veduti† dipingere.	I like these pictures very much I saw them being painted.
Ella si è tagliata‡ la mano.	She has cut her hand.
Figliuoli, vi siete dimenticate§ le mie parole.	Children, you have forgotten my words.
Essi si sono ficcata   questa pazzia in capo.	They have taken this freak into their heads.
Non mi date più fragole; ne ho mangiate¶ abbastanza,	Do not give me any more strawberries; I have eaten enough.
Giunto il familiare a Genova, e date** le lettere, e fatta l'ambasciata, fu dalla donna con gran festa ricevuto. (Boccaccio).	The domestic having arrived, and given the letters, and delivered his message, he was received by the lady with great kindness.

\* "Mandati" should be "mandato," because "ci," is governed by "cercare," and not by "mandati;" but "mandato," near to "ci," would sound inharmonious.

† "Veduti" should be "veduto," because "li," is governed by "dipingere," and not by "veduti;" but "veduto," near to "li," would sound inharmonious.

‡ "Tagliata" should be "tagliato," because "la mano" is the direct object of "tagliato;" but "tagliato" would make the sentence inharmonious.

§ "Dimenticate" should be "dimenticato," because "le mie parole" is the direct object of "dimenticato;" but "dimenticato" would make the sentence inharmonious.

|| "Ficcata" should be "ficcato," because "questa pazzia" is the Direct Object; but "ficcato" would render the sentence inharmonious.

¶ "Mangiate" should be "mangiato," because this participle is not preceded by a direct object; but "mangiato" would make the sentence inharmonious.

\*\* "Date" and "fatta" should be to "da" and "fatto," because "le lettere" and "l'ambasciata" are the direct objects respectively of "dato," or rather "avendo dato," and "fatto," or rather "avendo fatto," (see rule 467); but the two latter forms would render the sentence inharmonious.



## EXERCISE XLI.

Have you finished (584) the letter (122) I gave you (144) to write? The heavy rains, which we had (482) in the spring, have been the cause of many diseases. We have not slept (590) for the last forty-eight hours. The painter Caracci having been plundered by some robbers, drew their likeness so well that they were discovered (482 and 593). The hostile army being routed, (rule 467 and page 179) their camp plundered, their baggage carried away, their ammunition taken, the French re-entered triumphant. A noble but confused thought is a diamond covered with (594 and 123) dust. The high mountains of Switzerland are always covered with snow and ice. They were allowed (535) to enter the church after prayers. The sermon being over, (467) they went away. King Harold and his two brothers were killed (482 and 593) at the battle of Hastings. Demetrius, on hearing (467)\* that the Athenians had overturned (584) his statues, remarked "They have not overturned the virtues which erected (585) them to me." (99) Look, I have bought this box† to (103) put my clothes in; (91 and 106) do you think it is large enough? Yes, I think so (126). In crossing (465) the moor, I saw a flight‡ of ravens, making (138) towards the mountains. As soon as he had received (595) his salary, he started for America. Before men possessed the art of writing, all deeds worthy of being preserved were transmitted to posterity in verse.

597. \* In English when there are two or more verbs, in the same sentence, denoting actions done by the same subject, the verb expressing the action which was done first, is often employed in the Present Participle, but in Italian it must be used in the Compound of the Gerund (as explained in rule 467) thus: "Demetrio, udito che gli Ateniesi," &c.

598. † *Box*, if of a good size, is translated into Italian by "cassa;" if a small one, by "cassetta;" and if a very small one, by "scatola."

*Snuff-box*, is translated by "scatola da tabacco."

*A box*, at a theatre, is translated by "un palco," or "un palchetto."

*The box of a carriage*, is translated by "il sedile d'una carrozza."

*A cartridge-box*, is translated by "una giberna."

*Box-wood*, is translated into Italian by "bosso."

*A box on the ear*, is translated by "uno schiaffo."

*To box*, is translated by "fare a pugni."

599. ‡ *A flight of birds* is translated by "uno stormo d'uccelli."

*A flock of sheep* ..... "un gregge di pecore."

*A herd of cattle* ..... "un mandra di bestiame."

*A herd of stags* ..... "un branco di cervi."

*A pack of hounds* ..... "una muta di cani."

*A swarm of bees* ..... "uno sciame di api."

*A gang of thieves* ..... "una banda di ladri."

## LESSON XXXVI.

## ON THE COMPLEMENTS OF VERBS.

One of the most difficult things for an Englishman who is learning Italian, is the proper use of the complements of verbs, that is to say, the proper use of the prepositions which ought to follow verbs to complete their meaning. In some cases the English and Italian languages agree on this point, but in many instances there is a remarkable difference between them, as will be shown in the four following exercises.

## EXERCISE XLII.

ON VERBS WHICH DO NOT REQUIRE ANY PREPOSITION IN ITALIAN, ALTHOUGH THEY REQUIRE ONE AFTER THEM IN ENGLISH.

Note.—*Verbs which have been already explained in previous lessons are not repeated in this, nor the following exercises.*

Do not listen to (a) him; if he begins\* to laugh, he will not stop all day. I am waiting for (b) my brother. I want to give up (c) my house to him (91). I have been looking (493) for (d) some red ink this half hour. I have bought (to buy for) (e) these steel pens for sixpence a dozen. We look upon (f) him as your best friend. She wished for (g) her mother's return. He puts off (h) his decision from day to day; I do not like that at all. I have asked (to ask for) (i) him for my book several times. They were (474) ignorant of (j) what we intended to do. I never met with (k) a man so full of genuine wit. Martial music inspires (inspire with) (l) soldiers with courage and confidence. She set off (m) yesterday morning by the first train. I cannot bear with (n) his nonsense any longer (578). He sold (to sell for) (o) his house for two hundred pounds (462).

---

(a) Ascoltare.	(f) Considerare.	(k) Incontrare.
(b) Aspettare.	(g) Desiderare.	(l) Inspirare.
(c) Cedere.	(h) Differire.	(m) Partire.
(d) Cercare.	(i) Domandare.	(n) Soffrire.
(e) Comprare.	(j) Ignorare.	(o) Vendere.

600. \* The expressions *to begin, to set about*, before a verb expressing an action which will be continued, are rendered in Italian by "*Mettersi a.*" Ex. "*Se si mette a ridere,*" &c.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

ON VERBS WHICH DO NOT REQUIRE ANY PREPOSITION IN ENGLISH,  
ALTHOUGH THEY REQUIRE ONE AFTER THEM IN ITALIAN.

He wants (a) money to (103) furnish his house. She never pities (b) anybody (437). He was told to mind (c) the horses while we were dining. They mocked (d) him, because he was poor. They are always changing (e) their servants. I ordered (f) him to leave the house, but he would not. I distrust (g) him. He slanders (h) everybody. They displease (i) everybody. You will be punished, if you disobey (j) your father. We asked (k) him to take us to the opera. She doubted (l) the truth of his assertion. For many years we enjoyed (m) (480) the advantage of his friendship. She taught us (484) (n) the art of painting upon china. She understands (o) the fine arts. If he had (516) not wanted (p) good sense, he would have acted differently. He would not hurt (q) the reputation of anybody (435). He was punished, because he would not obey (r) the king's order. I am sure (424) she will never pardon him for (s) (80) having broken her (357) watch. They permitted (t) him to make sketches of the castle. I persuaded (u) him to buy the pictures. It pleased (v) them to make me a (173) present of this pencil-case. He resisted (w) all the entreaties of his poor parents. Those who are not able to resist (w) temptations ought to avoid them. He ordered (f) the waiter to bring him a bottle of wine. He had to (550) renounce (x) his bad companions. They used (484) (y) cement for the foundation of all that building. I am sure that he will outlive (z) his nephew. Not being able to avenge (aa) the insult he had received, he left the country for ever.

- 
- |                          |                       |                        |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| (a) Abbisognare di.      | (j) Disubbidire a.    | (s) Perdonare a...di.  |
| (b) Aver compassione di. | (k) Domandare a...di. | (t) Permettere a...di. |
| (c) Aver cura di.        | (l) Dubitare di.      | (u) Persuadere a...di. |
| (d) Burlarsi di.         | (m) Godere di.        | (v) Piacere a.         |
| (e) Cambiare di.         | (n) Insegnare a.      | (w) Resistere a.       |
| (f) Commandare a...di.   | (o) Intendersi di.    | (x) Rinunciare a.      |
| (g) Diffidarsi di.       | (p) Mancare di.       | (y) Servirsi di.       |
| (h) Sparlare di.         | (q) Nuocere a.        | (z) Sopravvivere a.    |
| (i) Dispiacere a.        | (r) Obbedire a.       | (aa) Vendicarsi di.    |

## EXERCISE XLIV.

ON VERBS WHICH REQUIRE ONE PREPOSITION IN ITALIAN, AND A DIFFERENT ONE IN ENGLISH.

*(Part I.)*

The garden was embellished with (a) beautiful marble statues. This country abounds with (b) corn. He was presented with (v) a beautiful sword adorned with (c) jewels. He grieved at (d) the loss of his property. He was satisfied with (e) the little he had earned. I blame him for (f) having (80 and 464) fled. They were burning with (g) indignation at the insult they had received. When his deceit was (482) discovered, he blushed with (h) shame. The ship was laden with (i) provisions for the besieged fortress. All the guns were loaded with (j) balls. They loaded him with (k) kindness, but he could not be consoled. It is a poem that cannot be compared with (l) any other. He delights in (m) teasing his sisters. He could not be consoled for (n) the loss of his child. They could not agree about (o) the price. All the furniture was (474) covered with (p) dust. I took possession of the room destined for (q) me. Everything depends upon (r) what he is going to say. He parted with (s) (482) his vicious horse as soon as he could. He was (476) endowed with (t) the finest (308) gifts that nature can give. When we entered the room they were (474) filled with (u) confusion. I congratulated him upon (w) the success he has obtained. He glories in (x) the mischief he does. She wore a beautiful black satin dress trimmed with (y) pearls. He seized upon (z) our goods.

---

(a) Abbellire di.	(i) Caricare di.	(r) Dipendere da.
(b) Abbondare di.	(j) Caricare a.	(s) Disfarsi di.
(c) Adornare di.	(k) Colmare di.	(t) Dotare di.
(d) Affliggersi di.	(l) Comparare a.	(u) Empire di.
(e) Appagarsi di, or contentarsi di.	(m) Compiacersi di.	(v) Far regalo di.
(f) Biasimare di.	(n) Consolare di.	(w) Felicitare di.
(g) Ardere di.	(o) Convenire di.*	(x) Glorificarsi di.
(h) Arrossire di.	(p) Coprire di.	(y) Guarnire di.
	(q) Destinare a.	(z) Impadronirsi di.

---

601. \* "Convenire," besides the above meaning of *to agree on, or about*, and the meaning of *to be obliged, or compelled*, explained on page 66, it has also the meaning of *to meet by appointment*. Ex. *Convennero nel Teatro della Scala.* They met in the Teatro della Scala.

## EXERCISE XLV.

ON VERBS WHICH REQUIRE ONE PREPOSITION IN ITALIAN, AND A DIFFERENT ONE IN ENGLISH.

*(Part II.)*

He was inflamed with (a) rage, on hearing the losses he had sustained. He inquired about (b) the state of the country. The table was (474) covered with (c) books and papers. He fell in love with (d) (482) my cousin. He languished from (e) hunger (480) for three days, and then died. We praised them for (f) their honesty. She wondered at (g) the sudden return of my brother. He was threatened with (h) (531) death if he would not confess the truth. He meddles with (i) everybody's business. His mind was stored with (j) useful knowledge. The theft was concealed a long time from (k) everybody. He was fed on (l) (480) fish and fruit for three weeks. They were oppressed with (m) taxes. I shall call upon (n) you this evening. Whom were you thinking of (o) when I met you? They wept for (p) joy when they heard that their father had arrived. They profited by (q) the ruin of their friend. He was punished for (r) having betrayed his country. They were speaking on (s) politics (229) till midnight. They rejoiced at (t) the good news. He laughed at (u) the misfortune of my brother. He returned thanks for (v) the favour he had received. He will have to answer for (w) his bad conduct. They were surfeited with (x) food. Since his behaviour at the last election he has decreased in (y) popularity. He triumphed over (z) his enemies at last. He lives upon (aa) his salary as my secretary,\* and a pension granted to him by the king.

(a) Infiammare di.	(j) Munire di, or provve-	(s) Ragionare di, or parlare
(b) Informarsi di.	dere di.	di.
(c) Ingombrare di.	(k) Nascondere a.	(t) Rallegrarsi di.
(d) Innamorarsi di.	(l) Nutrire di.	(u) Ridersi di.
(e) Languire di.	(m) Opprimere di.	(v) Ringraziare di.
(f) Lodare di.	(n) Passare da.	(w) Rispondere di.
(g) Maravigliarsi di.	(o) Pensare a.	(x) Sattollarsi di.
(h) Minacciare di.	(p) Piangere di.	(y) Scemare di.
(i) Mischiarsi di, or inger-	(q) Profitare di.	(z) Trionfare di.
irsi di.	(r) Punire di.	(aa) Vivere di.

602. \* *The salary of a secretary* is translated by "lo stipendio di un segretario."

*The wages of a servant* ..... "il salario di un servo."

*The wages of a workman*..... "la paga di un operaio."

## LESSON XXXVII.

## ON THE VERB "AVERE," USED IDIOMATICALLY.

603. "Avere," besides its ordinary meaning of *to have*, has also the meaning of *to be impressed by*, *to be suffering from*. Ex.

Non so che cosa abbiamo questi I do not know what is the matter  
fanciulli; sembrano, molto ad- with these children; they seem  
dolorati. very-grieved.

604. "Avere," followed by a noun, is used in Italian in the following idiomatical expressions, where, in English, the verb *to be*, followed by an adjective, is used.

## EXERCISE XLVI.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) Aver caldo,<br><i>to be warm.</i>  | Are you (26) warm (a) Charles? Yes, I thank you; (89) but when I came in I was very cold (b). When these good men came in (482) they were (474) very hungry  |
| (b) Aver freddo,<br><i>to be cold.</i>   | (c). Are they thirsty (c) now? I think so; (126) and the children are very sleepy (d). Do you think* that Margaret is in the right (f)? Yes, and you are in the wrong (e). These (579) little children (247) are afraid (f) of that big dog (243). Do (33) not detain me, (38 and 89) because I am in a hurry (g). I am very glad (h) to hear that your brother is going to Florence. Shut (33) that window. I feel very cold (b). Those who think (424) they are always in the right (e) are often wrong. They were very happy (h) to be again with us. I think you should be (549) more careful of (i) your health. If (515) he would act sensibly, (j) he would be liked by (125) everybody. If he were wise, (j) he would be a rich man. |
| (c) Aver fame, sete,<br><i>to be hungry,<br/>to be thirsty.</i>                |  |
| (d) Aver sonno,<br><i>to be sleepy.</i>  |  |
| (e) Aver ragione, torto,<br><i>to be in the right,<br/>to be in the wrong.</i> |  |
| (f) Aver paura,<br><i>to be afraid.</i>  |  |
| (g) Aver fretta,<br><i>to be in a hurry.</i>                                   |  |
| (h) Aver piacere, caro,<br><i>to be glad.</i>                                  |  |
| (i) Aver cura di,<br><i>to be careful of.</i>                                  |  |
| (j) Aver giudizio,<br><i>to act sensibly.</i>                                  |  |

605. \* *To think*, meaning *to believe*, is translated into Italian by "Credere." The meaning of "Pensare" is given in rule 114.

## ON THE VERBS "AVERE," AND "ESSERE," USED IDIOMATICALLY.

606. THE VERB "AVERE" IS ALSO USED IN THE FOLLOWING  
IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS:—

- (a) Aver buona cera,  
*to look well, healthy.*
- (b) Aver cattiva cera,  
*to look ill, unhealthy.*
- (c) Aver male a,  
*to feel a pain in.*
- (d) Aver a mano, or in pronto.  
*to have a thing ready.*
- (e) Aver l' intenzione,  
*to intend, to have a mind to.*
- (f) Aver voglia di,  
*to have a wish, to desire.*
- (g) Aver luogo, *to take place.*
- (h) Averla con,\*  
*to be angry with.*
- (i) Aversela a† male,  
*to be offended.*

607. IDIOMS WITH "ESSERE."

- (a) Essere in grado di,  
*to have it in one's power.*
- (b) Essere a mal termine,  
*to be in a critical position.*
- (c) Essere all' ordine, or pronto,  
*to be ready.*
- (d) Essere d'accordo, *to agree.*
- (e) Essere un poco di buono,  
*to be a good for nothing.*
- (f) Essere sul punto di,  
Essere in procinto di,  
Essere per, Essere lì lì per,  
*to be on the point of.*
- (g) Essere in buon concetto,  
*to have a good character.*
- (i) Essere in cattivo concetto,  
*to have a bad character.*

## EXERCISE XLVII.

Your brother looked very well (a) when I saw him (89) a few days ago. You do not (36) look well; (b) what (398) is the matter with you (603)? I feel a pain in (c) my head, and in my right arm. She has the money ready (d) to pay him if (513) he comes. I intend (e) to buy a copy of Charles' new book, for you. He has a wish (f) to eat some French (268) strawberries. Now I will tell you what took place (g) at my brother's house. He is angry (h) with me because I sold (484) the horse without telling him anything. I wished to help my cousins, and had no other means of getting some money. Charles is easily offended (i). He had (474) it in his power (a) to help them, but he would not. He is in a critical position (b); he will have (553) to sell his house. Well, boys, are you ready (c)? Yes, we are quite ready, except Mary; she is never ready. Those two boys never agree (d). To (103) say the truth, that little fellow there is a good for nothing (e). When I caught hold of him, he was (474) on the point of (f) throwing a stone at my window. They were (474) on the point of (f) buying his house, when he turned a bankrupt. Does he bear a good character? (g) No, on the contrary, he bears a bad character (h).

\* "Averla con" is conjugated as follows:—

L'ho con, I am angry with.  
L'hai con, thou art angry with.  
L'ha con, he is angry with, &c.

† "Aversela a male" is conjugated as follows:—

Me l'ho a male, I am offended.  
Te l'hai a male, thou art offended.  
Se l'ha a male, he is offended.

## ON THE VERB "ANDARE," USED IDIOMATICALLY.

608. The verb "Andare" is used Idiomatically in the following expressions :—

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

- (a) Andare a genio, *to like.*
- (b) Andare a piede,  
*to go on foot.*
- (c) Andare in carrozza, or in legno,  
*to ride in a carriage.*
- (d) Andare a cavallo, *to ride.*
- (e) Andare in collera,  
*to get into a passion.*
- (f) Andare in Estasi,  
*to fall into ecstasies.*
- (g) Andare altiero di,  
*to be proud of.*
- (h) Andare a vele gonfie,  
*to prosper.*
- (i) Andar di bene in meglio,  
*to get better and better.*
- (j) Andar di male in peggio,  
*to get worse and worse.*
- (k) Andare a vuoto, or a monte,  
*to fail.*
- (l) Andare a fondo, *to sink.*
- (m) Andar dietro a, *to follow.*
- (n) Andar per la mente,  
*to be in one's mind.*
- (o) Andare alle corte,  
*to come to a decision.*
- (p) Andare alla lunga,  
*to go on slowly.*
- (q) A lungo andare,  
*in the long run*

I do not like (a) to go on foot ;  
 (b) my feet hurt me (611, 4) ;  
 formerly I liked it (476) very much.  
 My sisters are very fond of riding in  
 a carriage ; (c) they very seldom walk.  
 (d). Elizabeth rides every morning  
 round the Regent's Park, with her  
 brother. Why do you (30) get into  
 a passion (e) for nothing ? The  
 sound of this instrument is so (329)  
 melodious, that it makes me fall into  
 ecstasies (f). He is very proud of (g)  
 his (355) riches ; and she is very  
 proud of her beauty. His affairs are  
 very prosperous (h). His business is  
 getting better and better (i). Their con-  
 dition is getting worse and worse (j).  
 The enterprise has failed ; (k) I am  
 afraid (495 and 424) he is ruined.  
 I hope not (126). The ship sank  
 (l) near the harbour, at three o'clock  
 p.m. (341). His dog followed him (m)  
 wherever he went. Some of his verses  
 are really beautiful, they are always  
 in my mind (n). Let us come to a  
 decision, (o) at once ; I am tired of  
 arguing (464). He was so slow in  
 making up his mind, that I lost my  
 patience. In the long run, (q) we  
 shall be better off than they are.



## ON THE VERB "DARE," USED IDIOMATICALLY.

609. The verb "Dare" \* is used Idiomatically in the following expressions:—

## EXERCISE XLIX.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) Dare ad intendere a,<br><i>to make believe.</i>                             | He would make me believe (a) that he was heir to (di) a great fortune.  |
| (b) Dar fede a,<br><i>to believe.</i>   | I never believe (b) flatterers; they are deceitful. He does (547) not repent to have listened to (c) his father. He always addresses everybody in the second person singular  |
| (c) Dar retta a,<br><i>to mind, to listen, to heed.</i>                         | (d), like a quaker. Italian ladies and gentlemen address their inferiors in the second person plural (e). I always address him in the third person singular; (f) but he always speaks to me (89) in the second person plural (e). He gave me his word (g) that he would be here again at sunset (611). It is said (535) that they set fire to (h) his house, in order to obtain the insurance money. They were obliged to give an account of (i) their (355) conduct. Why do you not begin (j) your poem? You had better help them (k) a little; otherwise they will not finish to-day. This cloth borders on red (l); it ought to be (551) trimmed with (123) gold. I shall call him a rascal (m) the first time (343) I meet him. |
| (d) Dar del tu a,<br><i>to address one in the second person singular.</i>       |   |
| (e) Dar del voi a,<br><i>to address one in the second person plural.</i>        |   |
| (f) Dar del lei a,<br><i>to address one in the third per. sing. (feminine.)</i> |   |
| (g) Dar parola, <i>to promise.</i>  |   |
| (h) Dar fuoco a,<br><i>to set on fire to.</i>                                   |   |
| (i) Dar conto,<br><i>to account for.</i>  |   |
| (j) Dar principio a, or dar mano a,<br><i>to begin.</i>                         |   |
| (k) Dar una mano a, <i>to help.</i>   |   |
| (l) Dar nel rosso,<br><i>to border on red.</i>                                  |   |
| (m) Dar del furfante a,<br><i>to call one a rascal.</i>                         |   |

610. \* The verb "Dare," used unipersonally, with the pronoun "si," means *to happen*. Ex.

Può darsi che non arrivino prima di domani. Possibly they will not arrive before to-morrow.

IDIOMS FORMED WITH "DARE." (*continued*).

## EXERCISE L.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(n) Dare alla luce,<br/><i>to publish.</i></p> <p>(o) Dar nella rete,<br/><i>to fall into a snare.</i></p> <p>(p) Dar l'animo di,<br/><i>to be bold enough to.</i></p> <p>(q) Dar luogo a,<br/><i>to give rise to.</i></p> <p>(r) Dar la burla, la baia ad uno,<br/><i>to make game of one.</i></p> <p>(s) Dar in prestito, <i>to lend.</i></p> <p>(t) Dar la colpa ad uno,<br/><i>to throw the blame on one.</i></p> <p>(u) Darsi allo studio,<br/><i>to apply one's-self to study.</i></p> <p>(v) Darsi bel tempo, or<br/>Darsi al dolce far niente,<br/><i>to live in idleness.</i></p> <p>(w) Darsi a conoscere per,<br/><i>to make one's-self known as.</i></p> <p>(x) Darsi briga di,<br/><i>to meddle with.</i></p> <p>(y) Dar di naso da per tutto,<br/><i>to meddle with everything.</i></p> <p>(z) Darsi pensiero di,<br/><i>to worry one's-self about.</i></p> <p>(aa) Darsi pace,<br/><i>to rest, and be contented.</i></p> <p>(bb) Darsela a gambe,*<br/><i>to take flight.</i></p> | <p>He has published (n) a good translation of Molière's Comedies. With all his pretensions, he fell (482) into the snare (o) like an idiot. I am bold enough (p) to send him a challenge. His election gave rise to (q) (482) a very warm discussion. Do you (30) not see that they are making fun of you? (r). I advise you not to lend her (s) (91) your parasol. Mary always throws the blame on (t) her sister; she is not very generous. Since his arrival from the country, he has applied himself to study (u) in earnest. They are leading a life of idleness (v); which exceedingly displeases their (358) poor father. When they were accused (483) of it, (108) they cast the blame (t) upon their brother. He would not make himself known as (w) the author of the comedy. I wish (495) that she would not meddle with (x) my affairs. That busybody meddles with everything (y). Do (33) not worry yourself about (z) what (397), cannot be helped. My dear friend rest, and be contented (aa). As soon as the thief saw (595) the policeman, he ran away (bb) as fast as he could.</p> |
|---|---|

---

\* The verb "Darsela a gambe" is conjugated as follows :—

Me la do a gambe,	I run away.
Tu la dai a gambe,	thou runnest away.
Se la dà a gambe,	he runs away.

## ON THE VERB "FARE," USED IDIOMATICALLY.

611. The verb "Fare" is used Idiomatically in the following expressions :—

## EXERCISE LI.

- (a) Far bel tempo,  
*to be fine.*
- (b) Far cattivo tempo,  
*to be bad weather.*
- (c) Far freddo,  
*to be cold.*
- (d) Far caldo,  
*to be warm.*
- (e) Far umido,  
*to be damp.*
- (f) Far colazione,  
*to breakfast.*
- (g) Far merenda,  
*to have luncheon.*
- (h) Far animo,  
*to encourage.*
- (i) Far pompa di,  
*to boast.*
- (j) Sul far del giorno,  
*at the break of day.*
- (k) Sul far della notte,  
*at sunset.*
- (l) Far alto, *to halt.*
- (m) Fare il grugno a,  
*to sulk.*
- (n) Far di mestieri, or  
far d'uopo,  
*to be necessary.*
- (o) Far vela, *to set sail.*
- (p) Far naufragio,  
*to be shipwrecked.*
- (q) Far vista di, or  
far mostra di,  
*to pretend.*
- (r) Far piacere a,  
*to please.*
- (s) Far le veci di,  
*to act as.*

It was fine (a) (482) during the whole month we remained at Brighton. The weather is very bad (b) just now; we cannot go out. Sometimes it is very cold (c) in (97) Paris, I assure you (30). In summer it is very warm (d) in Italy; perhaps too warm. In the western part of Ireland the weather is very damp (e). At home we breakfast (f) at seven o'clock (341) in (146) summer, and eight o'clock in winter. We shall have luncheon (g) before we go out. I encouraged him (h) by promising (465) that I would take him (91) with me. He was always boasting (i) (476) of his ancestors. He always gets up to work (103) at the break of day (j). He always comes home at sunset (k). They halted (l) (482) at sunset, rested during the night, and started again at the break of day. He is sulking (m) with me, because I would not lend him (91) (355) my horse. It is necessary (n) to be very attentive to (103) understand what he says. The ship set sail (o) for America (148) three days ago; she had three hundred passengers on board. They were shipwrecked (p) off the coast of Cornwall. He pretended (q) to give the money to his father, but instead of that, he put it (96) in his pocket (366). He played another tune to please (r) (358) my mother. On (133) that occasion he acted as (s) chairman.

IDIOMS FORMED WITH "FARE" (*continued*).

## EXERCISE LII.

- (t) Far brindisi,  
*to drink a toast.*
- (u) Far il sarto,  
*to be a tailor by trade.*
- (v) Far il calzolaio,  
*to be a shoemaker.*
- (w) Fare la spia, *to be a spy.*
- (x) Fare una visita,  
*to pay a visit.*
- (y) Fare una passeggiata,  
*to take a walk.*
- (z) Fare un bagno,  
*to take a bath.*
- (1) Far all' amore con,  
*to make love to.*
- (2) Far l'orecchio da mercante,  
*to turn a deaf ear.*
- (3) Far vedere, *to show.*
- (4) Far male a, *to hurt.*
- (5) Farsi beffe di, *to ridicule.*
- (6) Fare attenzione,  
*to pay attention.*
- (7) Far parola di,  
*to mention.*
- (8) Far prova di coraggio,  
*to give proof of courage.*
- (9) Far capolino, *to peep in.*
- (10) Far fare, *to have made.*
- (11) Fare scrivere a,  
*to have written to.*
- (12) Farsi fare,  
*to have made for one's-self.*
- 13) Farsi animo,  
*to take courage.*
- (14) Farsi innanzi,  
*to put one's-self forward.*
- (15) Farsi in quà,  
*to draw near.*
- (16) Farsi in là, or indietro,  
*to draw back.*

They drank a toast (482) (t) to the chairman's health. Her late husband was a tailor (u) by trade. That young man is a shoemaker by trade (v). No one would believe that that man is a spy; (w) and yet it is so. I intend to pay him a visit (x) before I return home. If I have (513) time, we shall take a walk (y) this evening after tea. I take a bath (z) every morning before breakfast. He was making love to (1) the prettiest (308) girl in (308) the village. I asked him to lend me (91) his gun, but he turned a deaf ear (2). I want to show him (3) (91) that I am not easily frightened. Do not (53) hurt him (4) with that big stick. You should never ridicule (5) these poor old people. You never pay attention (6) to what I tell you. Remember (33) that you have promised me (89) not to mention it (7) to my (358) brother. He gave proof of great courage (8) in the last war. We were busy writing (138 and 474) our letters when my father peeped in (9). I have had two tables made (10) for the garden. He had a letter written (11) to me by (15) his (355) secretary. I have had these clothes made (12) on purpose for my holiday trip. Take courage, (13) my dear friend; you will not die of this wound. You should not be afraid; you should put yourself forward (14). If you draw a little more this way (15) you will see better (321) what (397) is going on. Draw back (16) a little; I cannot see the game.

## ON THE VERB "STARE" USED IDIOMATICALLY.

612. The verb "Stare" is used idiomatically in the following expressions :—

## EXERCISE LIII.

- (a) Stare di salute,  
to be in health.
- (b) Stare di casa, to reside.
- (c) Stare a sedere,  
to be seated.
- (d) Stare in piedi, to stand.
- (e) Stare a sentire, to listen.
- (f) Stare all'erta,  
to be on the look-out.
- (g) Star allegro,  
to be merry.
- (h) Star in agguato,  
to lie in wait.
- (i) Star sull' avviso,  
to be prepared.
- (j) Star in forse, or  
Star tra il sì e il no,  
to hesitate.
- (k) Star quieto, fermo,  
to be quiet, still.
- (l) Stare zitto, cheto,  
to be silent.
- (m) Sta a me, † a voi, &c.  
it is my turn, your turn.
- (n) Stare a galla, to float.
- (o) Ciò non ista bene,  
it is not right.
- (p) Star con le mani a cintola,  
to stand idle.

Where are you going? I am going to (105) Portman Square to see my aunt who is not very well (a). Does she reside (b) there. No, she is staying\* with my sister. The ladies were allowed to sit down (c), but the gentlemen had (550) to stand (d) all the time. When you came in I was listening (e) (176) to a very interesting conversation. Be on the look out (f); for he might (557) escape. Let us be merry (g) children; to-day it is little Charlie's (252) birthday. Lions and tigers lie in wait (h) for their prey near streams and brooks. He wanted (163) to surprise us, but we were prepared (i) for him. I hesitated (j) whether I was to go to Paris, or to wait till my brother returned. Be quiet (k) Charles, and I will tell you what (397) you have (144) to learn. His being (464) silent (l) gave great advantage to his enemies. I have told him all (400) I know about it; now it is your turn (m) to speak. Light substances, such as cork, will float (n) on water. It is not right (o) of you to speak against your master. You had better write this exercise instead of standing idle (p).

613. \* The Italian for *to stay with*, is "essere in visita da."

614. † The expressions "tocca a me," "a voi," &c., are frequently used instead of "sta a me," &c.; but "tocca a me," &c., has more force; it often means *it is my duty, it is my right*.

615. In speaking of dresses, "Star bene," "Star male," mean *to suit, to become, not to suit, not to become*. Ex.

Quest' abito non le sta bene. This coat does not suit you.

616. IDIOMS FORMED WITH "SAPERE," "TENERE,"  
"VOLERE," AND "VENIRE."

IDIOMS FORMED WITH "SAPERE."

- (a) Sapere a mente, or a memoria,  
*To know by heart.*  
(b) Saper male,  
*to be sorry for.*  
(c) Saper di buono,†  
*to have a good taste or smell.*

IDIOMS FORMED WITH "TENERE."

- (d) Tenere a bada,  
*to trifle with.*  
(e) Tenere a battesimo,  
*to be godfather, or god-*  
*mother.*  
(f) Tenere da uno,  
*to side with one.*  
(g) Tener le lagrime, le risa,  
*to keep from weeping,*  
*laughing.*  
(h) Tener uno per galantuomo,  
per birbante,  
*to believe one an honest*  
*man, a rascal.*

IDIOMS FORMED WITH "VOLERE."

- (i) Voler bene a, male a,  
*to love, to hate.*  
(j) Voler dire, *to mean.*

IDIOMS FORMED WITH "VENIRE."

- (k) Venir meno, *to faint.*  
(l) Venire in mente a,  
*to remember.*  
(m) Venir voglia a...di, *to wish.*  
(n) Venire alle mani,  
*to come to blows.*

EXERCISE LIV.

My brother has a very good memory; he knows by heart (a) many Italian sonnets. I am sorry (b) to see you so afflicted; I hope\* (424) you have not received any bad news. These apples have a nice smell (c), where did you buy them? I bought them in Regent Street. I am sure that he is trifling with (d) you; he has no intention of paying you. She has been godmother (e) to all my children; they are all very fond of her. I side with (f) you because I feel quite sure that you are in the right (604, e). Camelias are very beautiful flowers, but they have no smell (618). All her clothes smell of musk (618). We could not help weeping (g). I always believed (484) him to be (h) an honest man, more unfortunate than guilty. William is very fond of (i) your cousin Elizabeth, but I think that she hates (i) him. If I had known what he meant, (j) I should have spoken to him; but I could not understand his gesture (222). When she heard the news, she fainted (k) in her mother's arms. I remember (l) that I promised to meet her at my mother's house, at three o'clock this afternoon. I took a fancy (m) to go and (290) see the exhibition. If they argue on politics, I am sure they will come to blows (n).

617. \* The expressions *I hope that, we hope that, &c.*, when referring to a present or past time, are translated by "Amo credere che," "ci piace credere che," &c. (followed by a verb in the Subjunctive). To hope for a thing that is, or is no more, is illogical.

618. † In the same way the Italians say. "saper di cattivo," *to have a bad taste, or smell*, "saper di poco" *to have little taste, or smell*, "saper di niente" *to have no taste or smell*, "saper di muschio" *to smell of musk*, "saper di pesce" *to smell of fish, &c.*

## LESSON XXXVIII.

## ADVERBS.

Note.—The rules for the formation of adverbs from adjectives, and the mode of forming the degrees of comparison are given in pages 123, and 124.

## CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are divided into the following ten classes, according to their signification:—

ADVERBS OF TIME,		ADVERBS OF QUALITY AND MANNER,	
„	PLACE,	„	ORDER,
„	AFFIRMATION,	„	QUANTITY,
„	NEGATION,	„	PREFERENCE,
„	INTERROGATION,	„	DOUBT.

## SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

(To be learnt by heart).

619. (1) Giuseppe andò al passeggio ieri, ed io v'andrò oggi e domani. *Joseph went for a walk yesterday, and I shall go to-day, and to-morrow.* (2) Vidi i miei avantieri, (a) e li vedrò ancora fra poco (b). *I saw my family the day before yesterday, and I will see them again very soon.* (3) È difficile di fare utili scoperte al giorno d'oggi (c). *Now-a-days it is difficult to make useful discoveries.* (4) Che cosa faremo ora? (d). Non faremo niente fino a posdomani (e). *What shall we do now? We shall do nothing till the day after to-morrow.* (5) Pel momento (f) non posso dar risposta, ma deciderò al più presto possibile. *For the moment I cannot give an answer, but I will decide as soon as possible.* (6) Finora (g) Giovanni ha fatto a modo suo; ormai dovrà obbedirmi. *Hitherto John has done what he liked; now he will have to obey me.* (7) Quando partiremo? Subito; (h) ho già preparato i miei bauli. *When shall we start? At once; I have already prepared my trunks.* (8) L'ho visto due ore fa, e lo rivedrò oggi a otto. *I saw him two hours ago, and I shall see him again to-day-week.* (9) È ancora (i) prigioniero, ma sarà liberato fra (j) un mese. *He is still a prisoner, but he will be liberated in a month.* (10) Ha ella veduto Carlo? Sì, l'ho incontrato poc' anzi (k) in istrada. *Have*

(a) Or ieri l'altro.

(b) Or tosto, fra breve, quanto prima.

(c) Or oggidì, oggimai.

(d) Or adesso.

(e) Or domani l'altro.

(f) Or per ora, per adesso.

(g) Or infino ad ora.

(h) Or tosto, a momenti, immediatamente.

(i) Or tuttora, tuttavia.

(j) Or da qui a un mese.

(k) Or pur dianzi, pur mo, pur ora, poco fa, testè.

## SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

(Continued).

you seen Charles? Yes, I met him just now in the street. (11). Non l'ho veduto da due mesi in quà. *I have not seen him for the past two months.* (12) Pel passato l'ho veduto raramente, (l) ma d'ora in avanti (m) lo vedrò sovente (n). *In past time I seldom saw him, but henceforth I shall see him often.* (13) E un problema difficile, non si può scioglierlo così su due piedi. *It is a difficult problem, it cannot be decided in a moment.* (14) Per l'avvenire (p) verrò a trovarla di quando in quando (q). *For the future I shall come to see you now and then.* (15) Non mancherò di scrivergli subito che (r) arriverò a Parigi. *I shall not fail to write to him as soon as I arrive in Paris.* (16) Non le ho detto una parola d'allora in poi (s). *I have not said a word to her ever since then.* (17) Altre volte era ricco, ma in questi ultimi tempi (t) divenne povero. *Formerly he was rich, but lately he became poor.* (18) Vi prego di venire per tempo, (u) allorquando (v) volete parlarmi. *I beg of you to come early, whenever you wish to speak to me.* (19) Roberto viene sempre (w) a seccarmi, ora per una cosa, ora (x) per l'altra. *Robert always comes to bother me, now for one thing, then for another.* (20) Allora Carlo arrivava per lo più prima di me. *Then Charles generally arrived before me.* (21) Andiamocene, si fa tardi; siamo sempre in ritardo; ciò non va bene. *Let us go it is getting late; we are always late; that is not right.* (22) Era fin d'allora all'apice della sua gloria. *He was even then at the very height of his glory.* (23) Era lì lì (y) per colpirmi, ma in quel mentre fu egli stesso ferito. *He was on the point of striking me, but just then he was wounded himself.* (24) Qualchevolta (z) restava per molto tempo scioperato. *Sometimes he remained for a long while idle.* (25) All'indomani era di gran lunga innanzi dei suoi competitori. *On the morrow he was far ahead of his competitors.* (26) Da indi innanzi, verrete da me qualora (aa) vi piaccia. *From this time, you will come to me whenever you like.* (27) Il lupo agguantò l'agnello addirittura, e senz'altro lo divorò. *The wolf forthwith seized the lamb, and without more ado devoured it.*

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| (l) Or di rado.   | (r) Or tosto che, appena, come prima. |
| (m) Or d'ora innanzi, da qui in avanti, da qui innanzi, d'ora innanzi, d'ora in poi, d'oggi in poi. | (s) Or d'allora in quà.               |
| (n) Or spesso.  | (t) Or recentemente.                  |
| (o) Or in un attimo, in un batter d'occhio, in men che non si dice.                                 | (u) Or di buon ora.                   |
| (p) Or per l'avvenire.  | (v) Or ogniqualevolta.                |
| (q) Or di tempo in tempo, di tratto in tratto.  | (w) Or ognora.                        |
|   | (x) Or quando...quando.               |
|   | (y) Or in procinto, stava per.        |
|   | (z) Or talora.                        |
|   | (aa) Or quando che sia.               |



## ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.

## 620. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS OF PLACE:—

Qui, quà, ci,	here.	Su e giù,	up and down.
Costì, costà,	} there.	Vicino,*	near.
Lì, là, colà,		Lontano,*	far.
ivi, vi,		Altrove,	elsewhere.
Ove, dove,	where.	Da banda,	} aside.
Onde, donde,	} whence.	Da parte,	
di dove,		A mano destra,	} on the right.
Quassù,	up here.	A destra,	
Quaggiù,	down here.	A dritta,	
Lassù,	up there.	A sinistra,	} on the left.
Laggiù,	down there.	A manca,	
Da basso,	below.	A mancina,	
Di sopra,	above.	Da per tutto,	} everywhere.
In su,	upwards.	Ovunque,	
In giù,	downwards.	Ognidove,	

621. "Qui," "quà," and "ci" (*here*), are used to indicate the place in which the speaker is; "costì," "costà" (*there*), the place occupied by the person addressed; "Lì," "là," "colà," "ivi," and "vi," (*there*), mark a place distant alike from the speaker and the person addressed. "Qui" and "costì" are generally used with verbs expressing state, whereas "quà" and "costà" are always connected with verbs expressing movement. Ex.

Quest' erba non si trova più, nè      This herb is no longer to be found  
qui nè altrove.                              either here nor elsewhere.

622. "Ci," "ivi," and "vi," can only be used when the place these adverbs refer to has been already mentioned or indicated by "qui," "quà," "costì," "costà," "lì," "là," "colà." Ex.

Ora che sono in questo posto ci      Now that I am in this place I will  
voglio rimanere.                              remain in it.

Quanto tempo fa i conti di restar      How long do you intend to remain  
costì?    there?

È Ella mai stata a Dublino? No;      Have you ever been to Dublin? No;  
ma v'andrò il mese prossimo.              but I shall go there next month.

Ora che siete costì, vi consiglio di      Now that you are there I advise you  
restarvi fino al ritorno della pri-      to remain where you are till the  
mavera.    return of Spring.

---

\* "Vicino" (near) and "lontano" (far) can also be used as prepositions.

623. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION :—

Si,	yes.	Già,	} exactly so.
Certo,	certainly.	Appunto,	
Sicuramente,	surely.	Per l' appunto,	} really.
Indubitatamente,	} undoubtedly.	Infatti,	
Senza dubbio,		Davvero,	} be it so.
Senz' altro,		Sia così,	

624. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS OF NEGATION :—

No	no.	Niente affatto,	} by no means.
Non (verb),	not, no.	In nessun modo,	
Non (verb) mica,	} not at all.	Non (verb) mai,	} never.
Non (verb) punto,		Non (verb) giammai,	

625. In giving an answer containing the verbs "credere," "sperare," "dubitare," and "temere," the idiom "di sì," and "di no," are used instead of "sì" and "no." Ex.

È a casa mio zio? Credo di sì. Is my uncle at home? I think so.

626. The negation *not* is translated into Italian by "non," and is always placed before the verb. Ex.

Non vi ho chiamato. I have not called you.

627. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS WHICH CAN BE USED INTERROGATIVELY :—

Quando?	when?	Ove?	} where?
Quanto?	how much?	Dove?	
Mai?	} ever?	Donde?	whence?
Giammai?		Perchè?	why?
Come?	how?	Fin dove?	how far?
Da quando in quà?	since when?	Fino a quando?	until when?

628. "Mai" and "giammai," employed without being preceded by "non," have the signification of *ever*; but when they are employed with "non," or "no" they mean *never*. Ex.

Ha ella mai visto il duomo di Milano? Have you ever seen the cathedral of Milan?

No, mai; non sono mai stato in Italia. No, I have not; I have never been to Italy.

629. Instead of "non lo," "nol" is sometimes used. Ex.

Nol vidi mai così adirato. I never saw him so cross.

# SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF QUALITY AND MANNER.

(To be learnt by heart).

630. (1) Ella parla bene, ma parlerebbe meglio (a) se parlasse più adagio. *You speak well, but you would speak better if you spoke slower.* (2) Il suo sarto lavora male (b) perchè lavora in fretta (c). *Your tailor works badly because he works in a hurry.* (3) Credo di no; il fatto sta che lavora malvolentieri (c). *I do not think so; the fact is he works unwillingly.* (4) Davvero lavora alla carlona (d); di male in peggio (a) ogni giorno. *Really he works carelessly, worse and worse every day.* (5) Si direbbe che lo fa apposta, (e) o per burla, (f) per mettervi in collera. *One would say that he does it on purpose, or for fun, to make you cross.* (6) Vorrei parlarle a quattr'occhi; (g) ho qualcosa da dirle a bocca (h). *I would like to see you privately; I have something to tell you by word of mouth.* (7) Volentieri, (i) eccomi qui, dite presto, sotto voce ma senz'ambagi. *Willingly, here I am, be quick, in a whisper but to the point.* (8) Tutta la casa è a soqqadro (j) e sua moglie piange dirrottamente (k). *The whole house is in confusion; and your wife weeps bitterly.* (9) Parlate sul serio (l); non son case da dirsi alla pazza. *Speak seriously; they are not things to be said wantonly.* (10) Vendeva i suoi quadri di mano in mano che li finiva. *He sold his pictures as fast as he finished them.* (11) Lo passò da parte a parte, (m) ad onta della (n) maglia che portava. *He pierced him through and through, in spite of the mail he wore.* (12) Tutt' a un tratto (o) si rimisero a lavorare con amore. *All at once they began again to work in good earnest.* (13) Me ne vivo tranquillamente in questo castello, mercè la bontà del governatore. *I live tranquilly in this castle, thanks to the kindness of the governor.* (14) Lavorarono siffattamente (p) che dappoi il terreno produce frumento a dovizie. *They worked in such a manner that since then the soil has produced corn in abundance.* (15) In somma (r) volete

(a) Notice that the adverbs "meglio" and "peggio" are the comparative forms of "bene" and "male." Their superlative forms are "ottimamente," "pessimamente."

- (b) Or malamente.
- (c) Or a malincuore.
- (d) Or alla buona.
- (e) Or a bello studio, a disegno.
- (f) Or per ischerzo.
- (g) Or da solo a solo.
- (h) Or a voce, viva voce.
- (i) Or buona voglia.
- (j) Or alla rinfusa, sottosopra.

- (k) Or a dirotte lagrime.
- (l) Or da senno, a proposito.
- (m) Or da banda a banda.
- (n) Or malgrado.
- (o) Or all' improvviso, di repente.
- (p) Or per modo che.
- (q) Or a bizzeffe.
- (r) Or in fine, in breve.

SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL  
EXPRESSIONS OF QUALITY AND MANNER.

(Continued).

leggere ad alta voce, o no? *In short, will you read aloud or not?*  
(16) Sicuro, comincerò da capo, pian piano, e poi continuerò più presto.  
*Certainly, I shall begin over again, gently at first, and then I shall continue quicker.* (17) Dove debbo cominciare? a capo di riga?  
Sicuro (s). *Where shall I begin from? at the head of the line? Certainly.*  
(18) La tratto alla buona (t) cioè (u) come vorrei ch' ella trattasse me.  
*I treat you without compliments, that is as I would like you to treat me.*  
(19) Uscì diverse volte di soppiatto, (v) ma coll' andar del tempo fu acchiappato. *He went out several times by stealth, but in the long run he was caught.*  
(20) Guadagna più vendendo all' ingrosso che vendendo a minuto. *He gains more by selling wholesale than by retail.*  
(21) Io sto sempre alla larga (w) quando veggo barruffe. *I always keep aloof when I see disturbances.*  
(22) Egli si veste sempre alla moda, per lo più all' inglese. *He always dresses in the fashion, generally after the English fashion.*  
(23) Giovanni, sapete cucinare alla francese? Altrochè! *John, do you know how to cook after the French fashion? I do indeed.*  
(24) Per esempio non mi va a genio di camminare al buio (x). *For instance, I do not like to walk in the dark.*  
(25) Mi chiamò da parte (w) e mi raccontò sotto voce tutto l' accaduto. *He called me aside, and whispered me all that had happened.*  
(26) Fa sempre al rovescio di quel che gli si dice. *He always does the reverse of what he is told.*  
(27) Egli va sempre a zonzo, (z) scioperato. *He is always sauntering about wasting his time.*

631. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL ADVERBS OF ORDER :—

Prima,	}	first.	Poi,	}	then.
In prima,		firstly.	Poscia,		next.
Dapprima,		to begin.	Indi,		
Primieramente,		with.	Gradualmente,		gradually.
Secondariamente,		secondly.	Successivamente,		successively.
In terzo luogo,		in the third place.	Finalmente,	}	finally.
Dopo,		after.	Alla fin della fine,		

(s) Or sicuramente, già.

(t) Or senza complimenti.

(u) Or cioè a dire, vale a dire.

(v) Or di nascosto.

(w) Or in disparte.

(x) Or all' oscuro.

## SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY.

(*To be learnt by heart*).

632. (1) Ho speso molto (a) denaro; più (b) di voi; non voglio spendere di più. *I have spent a lot of money; more than you have, I will not spend any more.* (2) Studiano poco; meno (a) di noi; non più di tre ore ogni giorno. *They study little; less than we do; not more than three hours a day.* (3) Non pensò guari, e poi mi domandò un poco (c) di denaro in prestito. *He did not think much, and then asked me a little money as a loan.* (4) Ho veduto solamente (d) cinque elefanti in vita mia. *I have only seen five elephants in my life.* (5) Non avevo che (e) cento lire, eppure furono abbastanza (f). *I had only a hundred pounds, and yet it was enough.* (6) Era alquanto (f) spia cente di non essere stato eletto, ma non molto. *He was somewhat displeased at not having been elected, but not much.* (7) Fu quasi (g) ucciso in quella zuffa; erano tre contr'uno. *He was almost killed in that quarrel, they were three to one.* (8) Per quanto lo pregassi, non volle mai compiacermi. *However much I begged him, he would never do what I desire.* (9) Per poco che studiasse diverrebbe sapiente, ma è pigriissimo. *If he worked ever so little, he would become a learned man, but he is very idle.*

## SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF PREFERENCE.

633. (1) Invece di (h) starvene lì con le mani a cintola, venite ad aiutarmi. *Instead of staying there idle, come and help me.* (2) Vorrei morire, piuttosto (i) che servire un tal tiranno. *I would sooner die than serve such a tyrant.*

## SENTENCES CONTAINING ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT.

634. (1) Forse arrirveranno questa sera, ma non si sa per certo. *Perhaps they will arrive this evening, but it is not known for certain.* (2) A che ora arriva il treno? Non saprei; circa alle cinque. *At what time does the train arrive? I could not tell you; at about five o'clock.* (3) V'erano molti soldati alla rivista? A un dipresso (j) ventimila. *Were there many soldiers at the review? About twenty thousand.*

(a) *Or* assai, oltremodo.

(b) Notice that the adverbs "più" and "meno" are the comparative forms of "molto" and "poco."

(c) "Poco" is the only adverb which takes "di" after it.

(d) *Or* soltanto.

(e) When *only* means *but* it is translated in Italian by "non (verb) che."

(f) *Or* un pochino, un tantino.

(g) *Or* presso che.

(h) *Or* in luogo di.

(i) *Or* prima che, avanti che, innanzi che, anzi che.

(j) *Or* A presso a poco, all' incirca.

## LESSON XXXIX.

### ON PREPOSITIONS.

635. Prepositions are used to connect words with one another, and show the relation between them ; they always remain invariable.

636. In Italian a preposition is always placed before its object, and never after it, as is often the case in English. Ex.

Ho visto la torre di Londra.	I have seen the Tower of London.
Il Signore di cui parlo è parente di Carlo.	The gentleman I speak of is a relation of Charles.

### CLASSIFICATION OF PREPOSITIONS.

637. Prepositions are divided into the following six classes, according to their signification :—

#### PREPOSITIONS DENOTING AFFINITY AND UNION.

”	”	PLACE AND STATE.
”	”	ORIGIN AND ORDER.
”	”	TENDENCY, SCOPE, AND MEANS.
”	”	OPPOSITION.
”	”	SEPARATION AND PRIVATION.

638. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS DENOTING AFFINITY OR UNION.

Di,	of.	Stante,	
Con,	with.	Secondo,	} according to.
Durante,	during.	A seconda di,	

#### THE PREPOSITION “DI,” OF.

As already stated (8 and 233) the preposition “di” is used :—

639. (I.) To denote relation of property, affinity, and connection between one word and another. Ex.

Il padrone di questa casa,	the master of this house.
Una casa di campagna,	a country-house.
Il libro di mio fratello,	my brother's book.
La Divina Commedia del Dante,	Dante's Divine Comedy.
Il regno di Spagna,	the kingdom of Spain.
Il duomo di Milano,	the cathedral of Milan.
Questo Signore è di Napoli,	this gentleman is from Naples.
La pena di morte,	the pain of death.

640. (II.) To connect two nouns when the second of which indicates the material which the object indicated by the first noun is "made of," "full of," "deals in," or "is used in time of." Ex.

Un cappello di paglia,	a straw hat.
Un bicchiere di vino,	a glass of wine.
Mercanti di tè,	tea merchants.
Un abito d' inverno,	a winter coat.

641. (III.)—After an adjective, or a past participle preceded by a verb, expressing any idea of rest, or state. Ex.

Il mio cavallo era tutto coperto di fango,	my horse was covered all over with mud.
Egli era ricco e carico di onori,	he was rich and loaded with honours.
Ella è dotata di buonissimo ingegno,	she is endowed with very great intelligence.
Parve contento di vedermi,	he appeared pleased at seeing me.
Egli non è soddisfatto della vostra condotta,	he is not satisfied with your conduct.
Sono felice di proporvi cosa di tanta utilità,	I am happy to propose to you a thing so useful.
Sono decisi di partire per Venezia,	they have decided to depart for Venice.
Mio padre mi ha promesso di condurmi a Milano,	my father has promised to take me to Milan.
Hodimenticato di mandare queste lettere alla posta,	I have forgotten to send these letters to the post.

642. (IV.)—In the phrases :—

Viaggiar di giorno,*	to travel by day.
Viaggiar di notte,	to travel by night.
Vivere di frutti, di legumi, &c.,	to live on fruit, on vegetables.

#### SENTENCES CONTAINING PREPOSITIONS OF UNION.

643. (1) Oggi ho pranzato con un vecchio amico di scuola. *To-day I dined with an old school-fellow.* (2) Se fossi in Lei, rimarrei a Nizza durante l' inverno. *If I were in your place, I would remain in Nice during the winter.* (3) Dipingo-sempre con colori francesi. *I always paint with French colours.* (4) Agirò secondo il consiglio di mio padre. *I shall according to my father's counsel.*

---

\* That is "in tempo di giorno."

644. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE AND STATE :—

A,	to, at.	Vicino,	} near.
In,	in, within.	Presso,	
Su,	} upon, on.	Lontano,†	} far.
Sopra,		Lungi,	
Sovra,			Intorno,
Sotto,	} under.	D' intorno,	
Di sotto,*		} underneath.	
Dentro,	} within, in.	Fra, <i>or</i> tra,	} between.
Di dentro,		Infra, <i>or</i> intra,	
Fuori,	} outside.	In mezzo,	
Di fuori,		Entro.	
Dietro,†	} behind.	Lungo,	} along.
Di dietro,		Lunghesso,	
In faccia,	} opposite.	Per,	through.
Rimpetto,		O'l'tre,	beyond.
Di rimpetto,		Verso,	} towards.
Accanto.	beside,	Alla volta di,	

### THE PREPOSITION "A" *TO, AT.*

The preposition "a" is used :—

645. (I.) To indicate the end or object to which the action of the verb is directed. Ex.

Vado a Parigi.

I am going to Paris.

Ho parlato a Carlo.

I have spoken to Charles.

646. (II.) To denote state. Ex.

Mio padre è a casa.

My father is at home.

Mia sorella è a scuola.

My sister is at school.

Mio fratello è ancora a Venezia.

My brother is still in Venice.

\* The prepositions "di sotto," "di dentro," "fuori," and "di fuori," are generally followed by "di."

† The prepositions "dietro," "di dietro," "in faccia," &c., "accanto," "vicino," "presso," "intorno," and "d'intorno," are generally followed by "a."

‡ The prepositions "lontano," and "lungi," are always followed by "da."



647. (III.) To connect two nouns, the first of which denotes the means by which the object expressed by the first noun acts. Ex.

Un battello a vapore,	A steam-boat.
Un mulino a vento,	A windmill.
Un bastimento a vela,	A sailing-vessel.

648. (IV.) To indicate the form in which an object is made. Ex.

Un abito a coda di rondine,	A swallow-tail coat.
-----------------------------	----------------------

649. (V.) "A" is also used in the sense of "with." Ex.

Un campo a lupoli,	A hop-field.
Lucia portava un bel busto di broccato a fiori,	Lucy wore a pretty bodice of flowered brocade.

650. (VI.) In the following phrases :—

Tagliare a fette,	To cut in slices.
Stare a bocca aperta,	To remain open mouthed.
„ a occhi bassi.	„ „ with downcast eyes.
Cantare a meraviglia,	To sing wonderfully well.
Darsi a conoscere,	To make one's-self known.
Morire a centinaia,	To die by hundreds.
Andare a due a due,	To go two by two.
„ a tre a tre, &c.	To go three abreast.
Un cannone carico a mitraglia,	A cannon loaded with grapeshot.

651. (VI.) In the adverbial expressions "alla francese," "*in the French fashion*," "alla rinfusa," "*in a confusion*," &c., already given (630, 22).

652. (VII.) Before a verb in the Infinitive mood preceded by another verb expressing motion. Ex.

Venga a trovarmi fra un paio di mesi.	Come to see me in a couple of months.
Andate ad impostare queste lettere.	Go to post these letters.
Venga a pranzo con me.	Come and* dine with me.

653. \* Notice that the preposition "a" is used in Italian instead of the English conjunction *and*, after a verb of motion. Ex.

Andate a prendermi il mio cappello.	Go and fetch my hat.
Essa venne a lagnarsi della di lui condotta,	She came and complained of his conduct.

THE PREPOSITION "IN," *IN, INTO.*

654. The Italian preposition "in" has generally the same meaning and is used in the same way as the English proposition *in, into*. In the following sentences, however, some difference will be shown in the use of this preposition in the two languages. Ex.

Era in giardino con mio nipote.	He was in the garden with my nephew.
Aveva un bastone in mano.	He had a stick in his hand.
Non vado mai in cucina.	I never go in the kitchen.
Carlo è in cantina a mettere vino in bottiglia.	Charles is in the cellar bottling some wine.
Tien sempre il cappello in testa.	He always keeps his hat on his head.
Aveva in dito un bellissimo anello.	He had a beautiful ring on his finger.
Il pranzo era già in tavola.	The dinner was already served.
Lingua toscana in bocca romana.	The Tuscan language is spoken by the Romans.
Mi piace molto andare in barca.	I am very fond of rowing on the river.
Arrivò in Inghilterra un mese fa.	He arrived in England a month ago.
Andò in Austria un mese fa.	He went to Austria a month ago.
Audremo in Francia il mese prossimo.	We shall go to France in a month's time.
Scriverò la mia lettera in un' ora.	I will write my letter in an hour hence.

"FRA," AND "TRA," *BETWEEN, AMONGST.*

655. "Fra" and "tra," besides meaning "between," "amongst," "in the midst of," are used in the sense "after the space of," "hence." Ex.

Scriverò la mia lettera fra un' ora.	I shall write my letter in an hour (in an hour hence).
Carlo ritornerà fra (or da qui a) due mesi.	Charles will return in two months (two months hence).

656. "Parlare tra sè" means *to speak to one's-self*. Ex.

Egli soleva passeggiar soletto e parlare tra sè ad alta voce.	He used to walk alone speaking aloud to himself.
---	--

657. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS DENOTING ORIGIN AND ORDER :—

Da,	from, since.	Innanzi,	} before.
Prima,	} before.	Anzi,	
Avanti,		Dopo,	after.

THE PREPOSITION “DA,” *FROM, BY, &c.*

The proposition “da” is used :—

658. (I.) In the sense of “from.” Ex.

Arrivai ieri da Vienna.	I arrived yesterday from Vienna.
Ho ricevuto regali da lui e da sua sorella.	I have received presents from him and his sister.
Rafaello da Urbino morì all’età di trenta tre anni.	Rafael da (from) Urbino died at the age of thirty-three.
Rimase prigioniero da maggio fino a novembre.	He remained a prisoner from May to November.

659. (II.)—In the sense of by, “near,” “in the direction of,” “through.” Ex.

Andando a Costantinopoli passai da Atene.	In going to Constantinople I passed by Athens.
Nell’andare a scuola passai da Strada della Croce.	In going to School I went through Cross Street.

660.—(III.) In the sense of “by” when preceded by a past Participle. Ex.

La virtù è ammirata persino dai cattivi.	Virtue is admired even by the wicked.
Egli è stimato da tutti.	He is esteemed by everybody.
Ho comprato un bellissimo quadro dipinto da Landseer.	I have bought a beautiful picture painted by Landseer.

661.—(IV.) To connect two nouns, the first of which expresses the use, or destination of the second. Ex.

Carta da scrivere,	writing paper.
Una sala da pranzo,	a dining-room.
Un cavallo da sella,	a saddle-horse.
Una bottiglia da vino,	a wine bottle.
Una vesta da camera,	a dressing-gown.

662.—(V.) In the sense of “to” (towards). Ex.

Ecco là i vostri amici, andate da loro. There are your friends, go to them.

663.—(VI.) In the sense of “*at the house of*.” Ex.

Passerò da Lei domani, o posdomani. I will call on you to-morrow, or the day after to-morrow.

664. (VII.) in the sense of “*wherewith*.” Ex.

Questo povero vecchio non ha da mangiare. This poor old man has nothing to eat.

Datemi da scrivere; voglio scrivere a mio fratello. Give me something to write; I want to write to my brother.

665. (VIII.) in the sense of “*fit for*.” Ex.

Vi assicuro che non è cosa da ridere. I assure you it is no laughing matter.

Mi ha fatto un'azione da mariuolo. He played me a knavish trick.

666. (IX.) in the sense of “*like a*.” Ex.

Egli combattè da eroe, e morì da cristiano. He fought like a hero and died like a Christian.

L'ho sempre trattato da amico. I always treated him as a friend.

Vi parlo da padrone, e voi dovrete ubbidirmi da servo. I speak to you as a master and you should obey me as a servant.

THE PREPOSITIONS “SU,” “SOPRA,” “SOVRA,” *ON*, *UPON*.

667. The prepositions “su,” and “sopra,” have generally the same meaning and are used in the same way as the English preposition *on*, *upon*. In the following sentences however “su” is translated by other prepositions than *on* or *upon* :—

Egli abitava una villa venti miglia sopra Firenze. He inhabited a villa twenty miles beyond Florence.

Partimmo in sull'alba, e ritornammo sulla sera. We started at break of day, and returned at dusk.

Ordinarono un grandissimo esercito per andare sopra i nemici. They organize a very numerous army to go against the enemy. (Boccaccio).

668. “Su per” is used to express graphically an upward progress. Ex. Andammo su per la collina. We went up the hill.

669. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS DENOTING TENDENCY, SCOPE, MEANS:—

Per,	{ for,	Mediante,	by means of.
	{ in order to,	Rispetto,	concerning.

The Preposition “per” is used:—

670. (I.) In the sense of “for.” Ex.

L’ho dipinto apposta per Lei. I painted it on purpose for you.

671. (II.) In the sense of “in order to.” Ex.

Ritornere presto per compiacervi. I will return soon to please you.

672. (III.) In the sense of “because.” Ex.

Fu espulso per aver osato mettere in caricatura il suo maestro. He was expelled because he caricatured his master.

673. “Per” is also used in the expressions “per uno,” *each*, and “per tempo,” *early*. Ex.

Riceveranno uno scellino per uno They received a shilling each  
perchè vennero per tempo. because they came early.

674. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS DENOTING OPPOSITION:—

Contro,	} against.	Malgrado,	} notwithstanding,
Contra,		Nonostante,	
In vece di,	instead of.	Ad onta di,	} in spite of.

#### EXAMPLES:

Essi parlano sempre contro il governo. They always speak against the government.

In vece di studiare, gioca al biliardo. Instead of studying, he plays at billiards.

675. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS DENOTING SEPARATION AND PRIVATION:—

Excetto,	} except.	Tranne,	excepting.
Salvo,		Senza,	without.

#### EXAMPLE:

Le darò tutti i miei libri italiani, tranne il Dante. I will give you all my Italian books, excepting Dante.

## LESSON XL.

## ON CONJUNCTIONS.

676. Conjunctions are words used to connect other words and sentences with one another. They are always invariable; "e," *and*, "ma," *but*, "purchè," *provided that*, are conjunctions. Ex.

Egli ha denari ed amici.

He has money and friends.

Ella venne a vedermi, ma non mi parlò di lei.

She came to see me, but she did not speak of you.

Riescirà nell' intrapresa, purchè ci acudisca.

He will succeed in his enterprise, provided that he perseveres in it.

The Italian conjunctions govern the following verb, either in the Indicative, the Subjunctive, or the Infinitive Mood.

677. THE FOLLOWING CONJUNCTIONS GOVERN THE VERB IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD:—

E,	and.	Pure,	
E pure, or eppure,	and yet.	Tuttavia,	
O,	or.	Tuttavolta,	
O.....o,		Nonostante,	yet.
• Ovvero...ovvero,	} either...or.	Nondimemb,	} for all that.
Ossia...ossia,		Nulladimeno,	
Non (verb) nè...nè,	neither...nor.	Ciononpertanto,	
Nè pure, or neppure,	not even.	Con tutto ciò,	
Ma,	but.	Anche,	
Però,	} however.	Ancora,	} also.
Pertanto,		Altresì,	
Perchè,		Eziandio,	} moreover.
Perocchè,		In fine,	
Perciocchè,	} because.	In somma,	} in fact.
Conciossiachè,		Se non che,	
Poichè,	} since.	Salvo che,	} except that.
Giacchè,		Eccetto che,	
Stantechè,	} therefore.	Tranne che,	} according as.
Quindi,		Secondo che,	
Laonde,		Cioè,	} that is to say.
Così,	} on the contrary.	Cioè a dire,	
Anzi,		Vale a dire,	} so much the more that.
Che dico,	} nay more.	Tanto più che,	
Di più,		Quand' è così,	} in that case.
Inoltre,	} besides.	Quand' ecco,	
D'altronde,		Ecco perchè,	} when, all at once.
Oltracchè,			
Oltracciò,			} that is why.

### REMARKS ON CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE INDICATIVE.

678. The conjunction "anzi" is very expressive, it means *on the contrary, further, nay, rather*. Ex.

Egli venne a vederci, anzi pranzò    He came to see us, nay more, he  
con noi.    dined with us.

"Anzi impediva tanto 'l mio cammino." (Dante.)

*Nay, rather did impede so much my way.*

679. The conjunction "pure" is also very forcible; it means first of all *yet still*. Ex.

Pure, se vuole, v'andremo subito.    Yet, if you like, we shall go at once.

680. "E purc," or "eppure," means *and yet*. Ex.

"E pur si move!" (Galileo).    It moves though!

681. "Nè pure," or "neppure" means *not even*. Ex.

Non avevo neppur un soldo.    I had not even a half-penny.

682. "Non pure" means *not only*. Ex.

Ciò accadde non pure una volta,    That happened not only once, but  
ma cento.    a hundred times.

683. "Pur troppo" means *only too*, and "Pur troppo!" means *alas too well! alas too true!* Ex.

È vero che Carlo è fuggito?    Is it true that Charles has fled?

Pur troppo!    It is but too true!

NOTE.—AS THE CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN THE FOLLOWING VERB IN SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD ARE GIVEN AT PAGE 163, THEY WILL NOT BE REPEATED HERE.

684. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN THE INFINITIVE MOOD:—

A fine di,	in order to.	Per tema di,	} for fear of.
Avanti di,	before.	Per paura di,	
A condizione di,	} on condition of.	A meno di,	unless.
Con patto di,		Lungi da,	far from.

#### EXAMPLES:

Lo facemmo venire con noi, a fine    We made him come with us in  
di convincerlo.    order to convince him.

## ON INTERJECTIONS.

685. Interjections are words, or mere sounds used to express sudden emotion of the mind ; such as joy, grief, &c.

686. Besides the interjections ah ! oh ! which in Italian, as in most languages, indicate almost any sudden emotion of the mind, the following are the principal Italian interjections :—

## GOOD WISH AND ADMIRATION :

Bene !	well !
Buono !	good !
Bravo !	well done !
Capperi !	aye !
Bis !	encore !
Viva !	} hurrah !
Evviva !	
Già,	certainly.

## ENCOURAGEMENT :

Via !	come now !
Su !	} courage ! •
Animo !	
Coraggio !	

## BESEECHING :

Deh !	} pray !
Di grazia !	
Mercè !	mercy !

## WARNING :

Guai a voi !	woe to you !
Badate !	take care !
Olà !	hold !
Piano !	} softly !
Adagio !	

## GRIEF, PAIN, AND SURPRISE :

Ahi !	ay ! oh dear !
Ahi lasso !	} alas !
Aime ! haime !	
Oime ! hoime !	
Lasso ! lasso me !	
Povero me !	poor me !
O cielo !*	O heavens !

## AVERSION AND INDIGNATION :

Via !	away ! pshaw !
Ma chè !	} nonsense !
Le zucche !	
Oibo !	fie !
Vergogna !	for shame !

## CALLING :

Ehi !	oh hey !
Olà !	oh there !
St. !	holla !

## SILENCING :

Silenzio !	silence !
Zitto !	hush !
Cheto !	be still !
St. !	hist !
Basta !	it is enough !

687. \* The interjection “ò” is only used before a noun, in the lofty style ; it expresses different emotions of the mind. Ex.

O crudel destino !

O patria mia !

O cruel destiny !

O my country !



## EXERCISE LV.

Have you ever read Alfieri's tragedies? Yes, I have read three (108). The ancients believed (476) that the swan sang\* melodiously when it was about (607, f) to die. This piece of music must (552) be played slowly and with expression.† The loadstone always points towards the north. The eagle rises above the clouds. The wise man acts according to the dictates of reason. He has gone to America in spite of (674) the advice of his best friends. The fleet cannot sail on account of (672) contrary winds. The Alps are situated between (644) France and Italy. It was the custom (476) among the Gauls to immerge their (355) new-born children into cold water, to (671 and 91) make them stronger. The walls of this ancient castle are built with (641) lime and cement. The fields are covered with vines, fig-trees, olive-trees, and orange-trees. On (133) that occasion he acted like a (666) hero. You were playing, instead of (674) studying. The most beautiful flowers last but (565) one moment. The compass was not invented (482 and 125) by a mariner, nor (563) the telescope by an astronomer, nor the microscope by a philosopher, nor printing by a man of letters, nor gunpowder by a soldier. Ah! how happy I am to see you, my dear friend. Courage! (page 211) soldiers, fear nothing (453). For shame! said he, to insult a poor, old man. Well done! Charles, go forward (page 211). Softly, do not fly into a passion. Fie! fie! Sir Anthony, you surely speak laconically. Pray! do not make such a noise. Hurrah! we have got to the end of the grammar.

688. \* In Italian when a verb is used to express an action which is still being done, it must be put in the Present of the Indicative.

689. † "Adagio" is the technical expression for *slow and with expression*.

Ad libitum=*at the performer's pleasure*.

Affettuoso=*with tenderness*.

Allegro=*quick, lively*.

Allegretto=*not so quick as Allegro*.

Al Segno=*return to the sign*.

Amoroso=*softly, tenderly*.

Andante=*slow, and distinct*.

Andantino=*not so slow as Andante*.

Brio, Con Brio, and Brillante=*with spirit and brilliancy*.

Bis=*twice*.

Calando=*gradually slower and softer*.

Crescendo=*gradually louder*.

Da Capo=*repeat from the beginning*.

Decrescendo or Diminuendo=*gradually softer*.

Forte, *loud*; Fortissimo=*very loud*.

Legato=*smoothly*.

Maestoso=*majestic*.

Moderato=*moderately quick*.

Piano=*soft*; Pianissimo=*very soft*.

Presto=*very quick*; Prestissimo=*the quickest time*.

Sostenuto=*sustain the sound*.

Volti Subito=*turn over quickly*.

Vivace, or Con Vivacità=*with vivacity*.

IDIOMS AND SAYINGS.

Non vedo l'ora di ricever nuove di mio padre.	I long to hear from my father.
Non si può fare un buco nell' acqua.	There's no washing the black- more white.
In questo io non c' entro.	I have nothing to do with this matter.
Egli lavora sott' acqua.	He works underhand.
Io tengo dalla sua perchè ha ragione.	I side with him because he is in the right.
Questo ragazzo ha il cuore in bocca.	This boy is very sincere.
Suo fratello non ha sale in zucca.	His brother is weak-minded.
Compro sempre i miei abiti belli e fatti.	I always buy my coats ready- made.
Mi è saltato il grillo di andare all' opera.	I have a fancy to go to the opera.
Duro fatica a credere questa cosa.	I can scarcely believe such a thing.
È come portar acqua al mare.	It is like carrying coals to Newcastle.
Egli ha perduto la tramontana, (o <sup>r</sup> la bussola).	He is at his wit's end.
Ella cerca il pelo nell' uovo.	You are always very particular.
Di che si tratta, Signori miei?	What is the matter, gentlemen?
Costui si compra brighe a denari contanti.	This man wants to get into trouble.
Parlate sul serio o per ischerzo?	Are you speaking in earnest or in jest.
Ma sapete che ci va la vita?	But do you know that life is at stake?
Fa la gatta morta, ma è molto astuto.	He pretends to be quiet, but he is very astute.
Mentre suo cugino fa sempre il dottore.	Whilst his cousin is always laying down the law in company.
Promette mari e monti, per tenermi a bocca dolce.	He is very prodigal of promises with me, in order to keep me quiet.
È un furbone che mostra lucciole per lanterne.	He is a cunning fellow who wants to make one believe that the moon is made of green cheese.
Non mi saluta mai ; fa le viste di non vedermi.	He never takes any notice of me ; he pretends not to know me.
I paperi voglion menar a ber le oche.	The goslings try to teach the geese how to swim.
Auguro a tutti felicissime feste e buon capo d'anno.	I wish you all a merry Christmas, and a happy new year.

## ITALIAN PROVERBS.

A chi ha testa, non manca cappello.	A good head is never in want of a hat.
Acqua cheta rovina i ponti.	Still waters run deep.
Batti il ferro quando è caldo.	Strike while the iron is hot.
Buon principio è la metà dell' opera.	Well begun is half done.
Chi è in difetto, è in sospetto.	He that is in fault, is in suspicion.
Chi la dura, la vince.	A mouse in time may cut a cable.
Chi non risica, non rosica.	Nothing venture, nothing have.
Chi parla, semina, chi tace, raccoglie.	The talker sows, the listener reaps.
Chi si scusa, s' accusa.	He who excuses himself, accuses himself.
Chi troppo abbraccia, nulla stringe.	Grasp all, lose all.
Chi va al molino s' infarina.	Evil communications corrupt good manners.
Chi va piano, va sano.	Slow and sure wins the race.
Dal detto al fatto è un gran tratto.	Easier said than done.
Dimmi con chi vai, e ti dirò chi sei.	Birds of a feather flock together.
È meglio piegare che rompere.	Better bend than break.
È meglio un uccello in gabbia che cento fuori.	A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
Fra Modesto non fu mai priore.	Friar Modest never was a prior.
Il bel tacer non fu mai scritto.	A quiet tongue shows a wise head.
L'abito non fa il monaco.	It is not the cowl that makes the friar.
La bella gabbiana non nutrisce l'uccello.	The fine cage won't feed the bird.
Oro non è tutto quel che risplende.	All is not gold that glitters.
Non v'è rosa senza spina.	No rose without a thorn.
Pietra mossa non fa muschio.	A rolling stone gathers no moss.
Povertà non ha parenti.	Poverty has no kin.
Patti chiari, amici cari.	Short reckonings make long friends.
Ride bene chi ride l'ultimo.	He laughs well who laughs last.

## EXTRACTS IN ITALIAN PROSE.

ARRANGED PROGRESSIVELY FOR TRANSLATION INTO ENGLISH.

*Note.—The translation of the words occurring in these extracts, not given in the foot notes, are to be found in the Italian-English Vocabulary at the end of this grammar.*

## PIETÀ DI UN LEONE.†

L'anno 1259, stava richiuso in una gabbia di ferro, sulla piazza di S. Giovanni in Firenze, un bellissimo‡ (322) leone. Accadde un giorno che, per incuria de' custodi, esso se ne scappò fuori (a) e andò girando per (b) le strade. Tutta Firenze tremava dalla paura; laonde (c) la gente fuggiva a rompicollo, (d) chi di quà chi di là (e) per salvarsi nelle case, o nelle botteghe. In tanta confusione rimase abbandonato solo soletto (f) in sulla strada presso ad Orsanmichele un innocente bambinello; vistolo il leone, se lo pigliò; (g) e usciva, con quello fra le zanne, (h) adagio adagio (327) dalla città.

Firenze pareva deserta. Solo una donna correva disperata per ogni dove (i) in traccia di un figliuolino smarrito; (j) ma quale fu il suo spavento (k) quando appunto (l) lo vide pendere dalla bocca del leone! La poveretta era per mancare; (m) se non che, (n) rianimata dalla tenerezza materna, mosse incontro (o) alla bestia feroce. Con gran pianto le si inginocchiò innanzi, (362) (p) per levarle il bambino di bocca. Allora il leone ristette; lasciò la preda; e non fece male nè all' uno nè all' altra (563). Il fanciullo fu poi (q) chiamato Orlan-duccio del Leone.

† "Pity of a Lion."

‡ See page 2, note.\*

(a) he ran away.

(b) and went roaming about.

(c) thereupon.

(d) with precipitation.

(e) in all directions.

(f) quite alone.

(g) the lion seeing him, seized him (see rules 467 and 597).

(h) and was slowly leaving the city with the child in his mouth.

(i) in every direction.

(j) searching for a missing child.

(k) but how great was her terror.

(l) "appunto" is not trans.

(m) was on the point of fainting.

(n) "se non che," but.

(o) went towards.

(p) kneeled before him.

(q) ever after.

## IL BOSCAIUOLO E LA SCIMIA.\*

Un boscaiuolo tagliava certe legna per ardere, (a) e come è usanza, volendo fendere un querciuolo assai grosso, (b) montato (467) sopra l'un de' capi co' piedi (c) dava sull'altro colla scure grandi colpi, (d) e poi metteva nella fenditura (e) che faceva certo conio, (f) perchè la tenesse aperta, (g) ed acciocchè meglio ne (108) potesse cavar (h) la scure per darvi su l'altro colpo; e quanto più fendeva (i) il querciuolo, tanto metteva più giù (j) un altro conio, col quale ei faceva cadere il primo, (k) e dava luogo alla scure che più facilmente (l) uscisse dalla fenditura; e così andava (534) facendo di mano in mano (m) sino a che (n) egli avesse diviso il querciuolo. Poco lontano dov'egli travagliava alloggiava una scimia, la quale avendo con grand' attenzione mirato (o) tutto quello che (397) il buon uomo aveva fatto, quando fu venuta l'ora di far colazione, e che il contadino lasciati (467) tutti i suoi strumenti sul lavoro se n'andò a casa, (p) la scimia, senza discorrere il fine, si lanciò subito alla scure, e misesi (si mise) a fendere uno di quei querciuioli, e volendo fare nè più nè meno che aveva fatto il maestro (page 26) accadde, che cavando il conio dalla fenditura, nè badando (s) di mettere l'altro più giù, (t) acciocchè il querciuolo non si rinchiudesse, il querciuolo si riserrò, (u) e nel riserrarsi le prese sprovvedutamente l'un de' piedi, (v) in modo che vi rimase attaccata con esso, (w) facendo per lo estremo dolore che subito le venne, que' lamenti che voi medesimi potete pensare. Al rumore corse subito il contadino, e vedendo l'in-

- 
- \*"A Woodman and an Ape." (h) and could more easily (p) went home.  
 (a) some wood to burn. pull out. (q) without giving it a  
 (b) a large young oak. (i) and in proportion as thought.  
 (c) having got upon one of he split. (r) "nè più..." the exact  
 its extremities. (j) the deeper he fixed. thing which.  
 (d) he gave hard blows of (k) which caused the first (s) neglecting.  
 his hatchet on the wedge to fall out. (t) further.  
 other end. (l) and made it easier for (u) closed up.  
 (e) crack. his hatchet to. (v) it caught it unawares  
 (f) wedge. (m) on and on. by one of its feet.  
 (g) so that it might remain (n) until. (w) fastened to it.  
 open. (o) watched.

cauto animale così rimasto, come villan che'egli era, (x) in cambio d'aiutarlo, (y) gli diede della scure sulla testa sì piacevolmente, (z) che al primo colpo le fece lasciar la vita su quel querciuolo, e così s'accorse la pazzarella, (aa) che mal fanno coloro, che **vogliono** fare, come si dice l'altrui mestiere (bb).—FIRENZUOLA.

### DIO, LA NATURA, E L'UOMO.\*

Il sole tramontava ; (a) era l'ora della mia preghiera. Oh come (b) io sentiva Dio ! com'io lo ringraziava di trovar sempre nuovo modo di non lasciar languire le potenze della mia mente e del mio cuore ! come mi si (99) ravvivava (c) la memoria di tutti i preziosi suoi doni !

Io era ritto (d) sul finestrone, (243) le braccia (365) tra le sbarre, le mani incrociate : (e) la chiesa di San Marco era sotto di me, una moltitudine prodigiosa di colombi indipendenti (f) amoreggiava, (g) svolazzava (h), nidificava (i) su quel tetto di piombo, il più magnifico cielo mi stava dinanzi : io dominava (j) tutta quella parte di Venezia che era visibile dal mio **carcere** : un rumore lontano di voci umane mi feriva dolcemente l'orecchio (k). In quel luogo infelice ma stupendo, io conversava con Colui, gli occhi soli del quale mi vedeano, (l) gli raccomandava mio padre, mia madre e ad una ad una (m) tutte le persone a me care, e sembravami ch'ei mi rispondesse : (n) T'affidi la mia bontà !—(o) ed io esclamava :—Sì, la tua bontà mi affida !—Pellico.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| (x) just like the cold<br>hearted fellow he<br>was. | (z) "gli diede..." struck<br>with his hatchet the<br>poor beast on the | (aa) and thus the stupid<br>creature learnt.<br>(bb) as the saying is, other |
| (y) instead of helping the<br>ape.                  | head with such a zest.   | peoples' trades.   |

\* "God, Nature and Man." (f) immense flock of pig- (l) Him, whose eyes alone  
(a) was setting. eons, free as the air. beheld me.  
(b) how deeply. (g) were cooing. (m) "ad una..." individu-  
(c) how vividly it revived (h) were flying about. ally.  
the recollection. (i) were busy in construct- (n) and it appeared as if I  
(d) I stood before the win- ing their nests. heard him reply.  
dow. (j) surveyed. (o) Confide in my goodness!  
(e) folded. (k) broke sweetly on my (p) Thy goodness assures  
ear. me !

## IL FANCIULLO SORDO E MUTO.\*

Fin da' primi giorni (a) io aveva acquistato un amico. Non era il custode (b), non alcuno de' secondini (c), non alcuno de' signori processanti (d). Parlo per altro (e) d' una creatura umana. Chi era?— Un fanciullo, sordo e muto, di cinque o sei anni (f). Il (g) padre e la madre erano ladroni, e la legge li aveva colpiti. Il misero orfanello veniva mantenuto dalla polizia (h) con parecchi altri fanciulli della stessa condizione. Abitavano tutti in una stanza in faccia alla mia, (i) ed a certe ore aprivasi loro la porta (j), affinchè uscissero a prender aria nel cortile.

Il sordo e muto veniva sotto la mia finestra, e mi sorrideva, e gesticolava (k). Io gli gettava un bel (l) pezzo di pane: ei lo prendeva, facendo un salto di gioia (m), correva a' suoi compagni, ne (n) dava a tutti, e poi veniva a mangiare la sua porzioncella (247) presso la mia finestra, esprimendo la sua gratitudine col sorriso de' suoi begli occhi.

Gli altri fanciulli mi guardavano da lontano, (o) ma non ardiano avvicinarsi: il sordo-muto aveva una gran simpatia per me, nè già (567) (p) per sola cagione d' interesse. Alcune volte ei non sapea che fare del pane ch' io gli (89) gettava, e mi faceva segni ch' egli e i suoi compagni avevano mangiato bene, e non potevano prendere maggior cibo (q). S' ei vedea (r) venire un secondino nella mia stanza, ei gli dava il pane perchè me lo restituisse (s). Benchè nulla aspettasse allora da me, ei continuava a ruzzare (t) innanzi alla finestra, con una grazia amabilissima, (u) godendo ch' io lo vedessi (v). Una volta (w) un

- 
- \* "The Deaf and Dumb Boy." (f) five or six years old. (n) divided it with them.  
 (g) his. (o) from a distance.  
 (a) At the commencement (h) was supported by the (p) nor was it indeed.  
 of my captivity police authorities. (q) more food.  
 ("Fin da'" means (i) opposite my own. (r) when he saw.  
 literally *from the*). (j) and at certain hours the (s) in order to restore it to  
 (b) governor. door of their cell was me.  
 (c) under jailors. opened. (t) to play.  
 (d) nor any of the mem- (k) made signs of greeting (u) very gracefully.  
 bers of the commis- to me. (v) pleased that I noticed  
 sion of enquiry. (l) "bel," not translated. him.  
 (e) yet I am speaking. (m) gave a leap of joy. (w) One day.

secondino permise al fanciullo d' entrare nella mia prigione : questi appena entrato, (x) corse ad abbracciarmi le gambe, (y) mettendo un grido di gioia. (z) Lo presi fra le braccia, ed è indicibile il trasporto con cui mi colmava di carezze (aa). Quanto amore in quella cara animetta ! Come avrei voluto poterlo far educare, (bb) e salvarlo dall' abbiezione in che si trovava !

Non ho mai saputo il suo nome. Egli stesso non sapeva di averne uno. (91) Era sempre lieto, e non lo vidi mai piangere se non una volta (cc) che (428) fu battuto, non so perchè, dal carceriere. Cosa strana ! Vivere in luoghi simili (dd) sembra il colmo dell' infortunio, eppure quel fanciullo avea certamente tanta felicità, quanta possa averne a quell' età (ee) il figlio d'un principe.—Pellico.

### IL POTERE DEL PAPA.\*

Michelangelo nel quadro del Giudizio Universale (a) che trovasi (si trova) (b) nella cappella Sistina, nel palazzo del Vaticano, fra le altre figure rappresentate nell' Inferno, avea messo un certo cardinale, che non era uno dei suoi amici ; (c) e l' avea dipinto sì al naturale, (d) che ognuno potea facilmente riconoscerlo. Il Cardinale trovandosene offeso, (99) (e) andò subito dal Papa (f) per domandargli (91) riparazione dell' affronto, pretendendo, (g) che la sua figura fosse immediatamente tolta via (h) dal quadro ; ma il Papa gli rispose: voi sapete fin dove giunge il mio potere (i) ; posso liberar dal Purgatorio, ma non dall' Inferno.

- 
- (x) "questi appena entrato....." no sooner describe the transport with which he caressed me. (cc) except once. (dd) such places. (ee) "avea certamente tanta felicità....." was certainly as happy as at that age could be.
- (y) knees. liked to be able to have him educated.
- (z) uttering a cry of joy.

- 
- \* "The Power of the Pope." (d) so life-like. (g) demanding.
- (a) of the Judgment. (e) feeling offended. (h) removed.
- (b) which is seen. (f) called immediately upon (i) how far my power extends.
- (c) whom he disliked. the Pope.



## IL PAESE DEI PROMESSI SPOSI.\*

Quel (387) ramo del lago di Como, che volge a mezzogiorno, (a) tra due catene non interrotte di monti, tutto a seni e a golfi, (b) a seconda dello sporgere (464) e del rientrare di quelli, (c) vien, quasi a un tratto a restringersi (d), e a prender corso e figura di fiume, tra un promontorio a destra, e un'ampia costiera dall'altra parte; e il ponte, che ivi congiunge le due rive, par che renda ancor più sensibile all'occhio questa trasformazione, (e) e segni il punto in cui (f) il lago cessa, e l'Adda ricomincia, per ripigliar poi nome di lago dove le rive, allontanandosi di nuovo, (g) lascian l'acqua distendersi e rallentarsi (h) in nuovi golfi e in nuovi seni. La costiera, formata dal deposito di tre grossi torrenti, scende appoggiata (i) a due monti contigui, l'uno detto di san Martino, (j) l'altro, con voce lombarda, (k) il *Resegone*, (l) dai molti suoi cocuzzoli in fila, (m) che in vero lo fanno somigliare a una sega: talchè non è chi, (n) al primo vederlo, (91) purchè sia di fronte, (o) come per esempio di su le mura (p) di Milano che guardano a settentrione, (q) non lo (r) discerna tosto a un tal contrassegno, (s) in quella lunga e vasta giogaia, dagli altri monti di nome più oscuro e di forma più comune. Per un buon pezzo, (t) la costa sale con un pendio lento e continuo; poi si rompe in poggi e in valloncelli, (u) in erte e in ispianate, (116) (v) secondo l'ossatura (w) de' due monti, e il lavoro delle acque. Il lembo estremo, tagliato dalle foci (x) de' torrenti, è quasi tutto ghiaia e ciottoloni; (y) il resto, campi e vigne,

- \* "The Native Country of the Betrothed." (f) and marks the point where ("segni" and "renda" are governed by "par"; see rule 501.) (o) provided this were from the front.
- (a) which flows towards the south. (p) from the ramparts. (q) on the northern side.
- (b) full creeks and bays. (r) would fail to.
- (c) according to their advance and retreat ("di quelli" refers to the said mountains). (s) denomination. (t) For a considerable distance.
- (d) compresses itself almost at once. (u) dales. (v) uplands and levels.
- (e) appears to render this transformation still more striking to the eye ("par" from "parere," to appear). (w) formation (literally "bones.")
- (g) stretching out anew. (x) the extreme edge torn by mouths.
- (h) develop itself. (y) is scarcely any thing but gravel and flint stones.
- (i) flows down between. (m) from its many summits in a line.
- (j) one called St. Martin's Mount. (n) so that (so much, so that) there is nobody who.
- (k) in the dialect of Lombardy.
- (l) *Resegone*, literally means "big saw."

sparse di terre, di ville, di casali; (z) in qualche parte boschi, che si prolungano su per (aa) la montagna. Lecco, la principale di quelle terre, e che dà nome al territorio, giace poco discosto dal ponte, alla riva del lago, anzi viene in parte a trovarsi (bb) nel lago stesso, quando questo ingrossa; (cc) un gran borgo al giorno d'oggi, e che s'incammina a diventar città (dd).—MANZONI.

### IL PADRE CRISTOFORO.\*

Il padre Cristoforo da\*\*\* era un uomo più vicino ai sessanta che ai cinquant'anni. Il suo capo raso, (a) salvo la piccola corona di capelli, (b) che vi girava intorno, secondo il rito cappuccinesco, (c) s'alzava di tempo in tempo, con un movimento che lasciava trasparire (d) un non so che (421) (e) d'altero e d'inquieto; e subito s'abbassava, per riflessione d'umiltà. La barba bianca e lunga, che gli copriva le guance (197) e il mento, faceva ancor più risaltare le forme rilevate (f) della parte superiore del volto, alle quali un'astinenza già da gran pezzo abituale, (g) aveva assai più aggiunto di gravità che tolto d'espressione. Due occhi incavati (h) eran per lo più (i) chinati a terra, ma talvolta sfolgoravano, con vivacità repentina; come due cavalli bizzarri, (j) condotti a mano (k) da un cocchiere, col quale sanno, per esperienza, che non si può vincerla (l) pure fanno, di tempo in tempo, qualche sgambetto (m) che scontan subito, con una buona tirata di morso.—

MANZONI.

(z) scattered over with	(bb) nay, more (see rule (dd) it is at the present
farms, countryhouses,	678) it is really in
and hamlets.	part.
(aa) which stretch them-	(cc) when the waters rise.
selves up.	way to become a
	town.

* "Father Christopher."	ing of pride and dis-	(k) "condotti..." driven.
	quiet.	(l) that they must obey.
(a) his head shaven.	(f) "faceva..." threw out	(m) "pure..." yet they, from
(b) with the exception of a	still more the noble	time to time, take to
little crown of hair.	features.	prancing.
(c) "vi..." according to	(g) "già..." long time	(n) a fancy they pay at
the rite of the Capu-	habitual to him.	once for by feeling
chins encircled it.	(h) his deep-sunken eyes.	themselves checked
(d) "che..." betrayed.	(i) generally.	by the bit.
(e) an indescribable feel-	(j) restless horses.	

## LUCIA.

Lucia usciva in quel momento tutta attillata (a) dalle mani della madre. Le amiche si rubavano la spose, (b) e le facevan forza perchè si lasciasse vedere; (c) e lei (34) s'andava schermendo, (534) (d) con quella modestia un po'guerriera delle contadine, facendosi scudo alla faccia col gomito, (e) chinandola sul busto, (f) e aggrottando (g) i lunghi e neri sopraccigli, mentre però la bocca s'apriva al sorriso (h). I neri e giovanili capelli, (i) spartiti sopra la fronte, con una bianca e sottile dirizzatura, (j) si ravvolgevan, dietro il capo, (k) in cerchi molteplici di trecce, trapassate da lunghi spilli d'argento, (l) che si dividevano all'intorno, (m) quasi a guisa de'raggi d'un'aureola (n), come ancora usano (o) le contadine nel Milanese. Intorno al collo (365) aveva un vezzo di granati alternati con bottoni d'oro a filigrana: (p) portava un bel busto di broccato a fiori, (q) con le maniche separate e allacciate da (r) bei nastri: una corta gonnella di filaticcio di seta, (s) a pieghe fitte e minute, (t) due calze vermiglie, due pianelle, di seta anch'esse, (u) a ricami. Oltre a questo, ch'era l'ornamento particolare del giorno delle nozze, Lucia aveva quello quotidiano (v) d'una modesta bellezza, rilevata allora e accresciuta (w) dalle varie affezioni che le si dipingevan sul viso: una gioia temperata da un turbamento leggiero, (x) quel placido accoramento che si mostra di quand'in quando sul volto delle spose, e, senza scompor la bellezza, dà loro un carattere particolare.—MANZONI.

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| (a) At this moment Lucia gaily attired issued forth. | (i) hair, (used in the plural in Italian).                       | (q) she wore a bodice of flowered brocade.                                |
| (b) All her friends tried to get hold of her.        | (j) parted above her forehead with a white and narrow line.      | (r) with the sleeves separated, (from the bodice), fastened (to it) with. |
| (c) and compelled her to let herself be looked at.   | (k) were arranged behind her head.                               | (s) spun-silk.  |
| (d) defended herself.                                | (l) pinned with long silver needles.                             | (t) with many minute plaits.  |
| (e) shielding her face with her elbow.               | (m) arranged in a circle.  | (u) little shoes also of silk.  |
| (f) bending it over her bosom.                       | (n) like the rays of a glory.                                    | (v) every day ornament.   |
| (g) contracting.                                     | (o) as is still the fashion amongst.                             | (w) now relieved and increased.   |
| (h) whilst her lips opened with a smile.             | (p) necklace of garnets alternating with beads of filigree gold. | (x) slight disquiet.  |
|  |  | (y) destroying.   |

## ITALIAN POETRY.

## IL POTERE DI DIO.

Dovunque il guardo io giro,  
Immenso Dio ti vedo :  
Nelle opre tue t'ammiro,  
Ti riconosco in me.  
La terra, il mar, le sfere  
Parlan del tuo potere,  
Tu sei per tutto, e noi  
Tutti viviamo in te.

METASTASIO.

## LA PRUDENZA.

La Prudenza ella è un sapere  
Ben pigliar la sua misura  
Ne' vantaggi del piacere,  
Che tra noi pose natura ;  
Senza lei la vita è amara,  
Ma con lei la vita è cara.  
Se il tuo corto antivedere  
Fra la notte del futuro  
Si smarrisce e resta oscuro,  
Addio anco il tuo piacere ;  
Ove immagini il contento  
Duro inganno ! ivi è tormento.

CRUDELI.

## LA VITA UMANA.

Il passato non è, ma se lo pinge  
La viva rimembranza.  
Il futuro non è, ma se lo finge  
La credula speranza.  
Il presente sol è, che in un baleno  
Passa del nulla in seno.  
Dunque la vita è appunto  
Una memoria, una speranza, un punto.  
N. N.

## LA RONDINELLA.

RONDINELLA pellegrina

Che ti posi in sul verone,  
Ricantando ogni mattina  
Quella flebile canzone,  
Che vuoi dirmi in tua favella,  
Pellegrina rondinella?

Solitaria nell' oblio,

Dal tuo sposo abbandonata,  
Piangi forse al pianto mio  
Vedovetta sconsolata?  
Piangi, piangi in tua favella  
Pellegrina rondinella.

Pur di me manco infelice

Tu alle penne almen t' affidi,  
Scorri il lago e la pendice,  
Empi l'aria de' tuoi gridi,  
Tutto il giorno in tua favella  
Lui chiamando, o rondinella.

Oh se anch' io! ... ma la contende

Questa bassa, angusta volta,  
Dove sole non risplende,  
Dove l'aria ancor m' è tolta,  
Dove a te la mia favella  
Giunge appena, o rondinella.

Il settembre innanzi viene,

E a lasciarmi ti prepari:  
Tu vedrai lontane arene;  
Nuovi monti, nuovi mari  
Salutando in tua favella,  
Pellegrina rondinella.

Ed io tutte le mattine

Riaprendo gli occhi ai pianto,  
Fra le nevi e fra le brine  
Crederò d' udir quel canto,  
Onde par che in tua favella  
Mi compiangia, o rondinella.

Una croce a primavera

Troverai su questo suolo:  
Rondinella, in sulla sera  
Sovra lei raccogli il volo:  
Dimmi pace in tua favella,  
Pellegrina rondinella.—GROSSI.

## LA MELANCONIA.

FONTI e colline

Chiesi agli dei:

M' udiro al fine,\*

Pago io vivrò:

Nè mai quel fonte

Co' desir miei,

Nè mai quel monte

Trapasserò.

Gli onor che sono?

Che val ricchezza?

Di miglior dono

Vommene altier:†

D' un' alma pura,

Che la bellezza

Della natura

Gusta e del ver.

\* "Udiro" poetical form for "udirono."

† "Vommene" = "me ne vo," (see rule 90).

Nè può di tempre  
 Cangiar mio fato ;  
 Dipinto sempre  
 Il ciel sarà :  
 Ritorneranno  
 I fior nel prato  
 Sin che a me l'anno  
 Ritornerà. :

Melanconia,  
 Ninfa gentile,  
 La vita mia  
 Consegno a te :  
 I tuoi piaceri  
 Chi tiene a vile  
 Ai piacer veri  
 Nato non è.

O sotto un faggio  
 Io ti ritrovi,  
 Al caldo raggio  
 Di bianco ciel,  
 Mentre il pensoso  
 Occhio non movi  
 Dal frettoloso  
 Noto ruscel ;

O che ti piaccia  
 Di dolce luna  
 L'argentea faccia  
 Amoreggiar ;  
 Quando nel petto  
 La notte bruna  
 Stilla il diletto  
 Del meditar :

Non rimarrai,  
 No, tutta sola ;  
 Me ti vedrai  
 Sempre vicino.  
 Oh come è bello  
 Quel di viola  
 Tuo manto, e quello  
 Sparso tuo crin !

Più dell' attorta  
 Chioma e del manto,  
 Che roseo porta  
 La dea d' amor, .  
 E del vivace  
 Suo sguardo, oh quanto  
 Più il tuo mi piace  
 Contemplator !

Mi guardi amica  
 La tua pupilla  
 Sempre, o pudica  
 Ninfa gentil ;  
 E a te, soave  
 Ninfa tranquilla,  
 Fia sacro il grave\*  
 Nuovo mio stil.

PINDEMONTE.

LA GRATITUDINE.  
 Benchè di senso privo,  
 Fin l'arboscello è grato  
 A quell' amico rivo,  
 Da cui riceve umor ;  
 Per lui di frondi ornato,  
 Bella mercè gli rende  
 Quando dal sol difende  
 Il suo benefattor.

METASTASIO.

\* "Fia" is a poetical form for "sarà."

## ANACREONTICHE.

## I.

Se vedi che germoglia  
 Ne' più silvestri dumi  
 Al foco de' tuoi lumi  
 O rosa o gelsomin ;

Se un dolce zeffiretto  
 Ad incontrar ti viene,  
 E gode, o bella Irene,  
 Di sventolarti il crin ;

Se rinverdisce un' erba  
 Lungo il sentiero, e chiede  
 Dal tuo leggiadro piede  
 Un' orna sola in don ;

Sappi, vezzosa Ninfa,  
 Che, per virtù d'amore,  
 Quel zefiro, quel fiore,  
 E quella erbetta io son.

## II.

Ecco ritorna il mese  
 Diletto a Citerea,\*  
 Che suscita e ricrea  
 La valle, il monte, il pian.

Qual casta verginella  
 Rosseggia fra l'erbetta  
 La vaga mammoletta,  
 E sbuccia il tulipan.

Di coccole vermiglie  
 Il pruno si riveste,  
 E spiran le foreste  
 Vita, freschezza, odor.

Tutto germoglia al tempo  
 Della stagion novella,  
 Ma nel tuo seno, o bella,  
 No, non germoglia amor !

## III.

O platano felice,  
 Ch'io stesso un dì piantai,  
 Bello fra quanti mai  
 Levano il capo al ciel ;

Come sì presto, dimmi,  
 Le folte braccia hai stese,  
 Nè l'ira mai ti offese  
 Di turbine crudel ?

Quel nome che t'impresi  
 Nella corteccia verde,  
 Lungi da te disperde  
 Il nembo struggitor.

Anch' io lo porto in seno  
 Scritto per man d'Amore ;  
 Ma sento nel mio core  
 Fremere il nembo ognor.

## IV.

Ascolta, o infida, un sogno  
 Della trascorsa notte :  
 Parevami le grotte  
 D'Alfesibeo mirar ;

D'Alfesibeo, che quando†  
 Alza la verga bruna,  
 Fa pallida la luna,  
 Fa tempestoso il mar.

"Padre" io gridai, "nel fianco  
 Ho una puntura acerba ;  
 Con qualche magic' erba  
 Sanami, per pietà !"

Rise il buon vecchio, e disse :  
 "Fuggi colei che adori ;  
 Erbe per te migliori  
 Alfesibeo non ha."

\* "Citerea," Venus.

† "Alfesibeo," Alphesibeus, the wise shepherd often mentioned in Virgil's eclogues.

## V.

Guarda che bianca luna !  
 Guarda che notte azzurra !  
 Un' aura non susurra,  
 Non tremola uno stel.

L'usignuolo solo -  
 Va dal siepe all' orno,  
 E sospirando intorno  
 Chiama la sua fedel.

Ella, che il sente appena,  
 Già vien di fronda in fronda,  
 E par che gli risponda :  
 " Non piangere, son quì."

Che dolci affetti, o Irene,  
 Che gemiti son questi !  
 Ah ! mai tu non sapesti  
 Rispondermi così !

## VI.

Non t'accostare all' urna  
 Che il cener mio rinserra :  
 Questa pietosa terra  
 È sacra al mio dolor.

Odio gli affanni tuoi ;  
 Ricuso i tuoi giacinti :  
 Che giovano agli estinti  
 Due lagrime, o due fior ?

Empia ! Dovevi allora  
 Porgermi un fil d'aita,  
 Quando trae la vita  
 Nell' ansia e nei sospir.

A che d'inutil pianto\*  
 Assordi la foresta ?  
 Rispetta un' ombra mesta,  
 E lasciala dormir !

VITTORELLI.

## SULLA MORTE DI CRISTO.

Quando Gesù coll' ultimo lamento  
 Schiuse le tombe e la montagna scosse,  
 Adamo, rabbuffato e sonnolento,  
 Levò la testa, e sovra i piè rizzosse : †

Le torbide pupille intorno mosse  
 Pieno di maravaglia e di spavento,  
 E palpitando addimandò chi fosse  
 Lui, che pendeva insanguinato e spento.

Come lo seppe, alla rugosa fronte,  
 Al crin canuto ed alle guance smorte  
 Colla pentita man fe danni ed onte. ‡

Si volse lagrimando alla consorte,  
 E sciamò sì che rimbombonne il monte : §  
 Io per te diedi al mio Signor la morte !

MINZONI.

\* "A che..." means *Wherefore...*?

† "Rizzosse" is used instead of "si rizzò," *he rose on his feet* ; (See rule 90).

‡ "Fe," instead "fece," *he did*.

§ "Rimbombonne," (ne rimbombò) means *re-echoed with the sound*.



## BEATRICE.

Tanto gentile e tanto onesta pare  
 La donna mia, quand' ella altrui saluta,  
 Ch' ogni lingua divien tremando muta,  
 E gli occhi non l'ardiscon di guardare.

Ella sen va, sentendosi laudare,\*  
 Benignamente d' umiltà vestuta; †  
 E par che sia una cosa venuta  
 Di cielo in terra a miracol mostrare.

Mostrasi sì piacente a chi la mira,  
 Che dà per gli occhi una dolcezza al core,  
 Che intender non la può chi non la prova.

E par che dalle sue labbia si muova ‡  
 Uno spirto soave e pien d' amore,  
 Che va dicendo all' anima : sospira.

DANTE.

## LAURA.

Erano i capei d' oro all' aura sparsi,  
 Che 'n mille dolci nodi gli avvolgea :  
 E l' vago lume oltra misura ardea  
 Di quei begli occhi, ch' or ne son sì scarsi,

E 'l viso di pietosi color farsi,  
 Non so se vero o falso mi pareva :  
 I' che l' esca amorosa al petto avea,  
 Qual meraviglia se di subit' arsi ?

Non era l' andar suo cosa mortale,  
 Ma d' angelica forma; e le parole  
 Suonavan altro che pur voce umana.

Uno spirto celeste, un vivo sole  
 Fu quel ch' i' vido : e se non fosse or tale,  
 Piaga per allentar d' arco non sana. ||

PETRARCA.

\* "sentendosi laudare," *hearing herself praised.*

† "vestuta," for "vestita," *clothed, full of.*

‡ "labbia," for "labbra," *lips.*

|| "Piaga per allentar d' arco non sana," means : A wound (piaga) does not get healed (non sana) when the bow (arco) extends.

After the words "the bow," the words "from which the arrow which inflicted the wound came," are understood.

This pretty "conetto" of Petrarca, one of the earliest in the Italian language, is now used as a proverb.

## IL CINQUE MAGGIO.

Ei fu ; siccome immobile,  
Dato il mortal sospiro,  
Stette la spoglia immemore  
Orba di tanto spiro,  
Così percossa, attonita  
La terra al nunzio sta ;

Muta pensando all' ultima  
Ora dell' uom fatale,\*  
Nè sa quando una simile  
Orma di piè mortale  
La sua cruenta polvere  
A calpestar verrà.

Lui sfolgorante in soglio  
Vide il mio genio e tacque ;  
Quando con vece assidua †  
Cadde, risorse e giacque,  
Di mille voci al sonito  
Mista la sua non ha.

Vergin di servo encomio‡  
E di codardo oltraggio,  
Sorge or commosso al subito  
Sparir di tanto raggio,  
E scioglie all' urna un cantico  
Che forse non morrà.

Dall' Alpi alle Piramidi,  
Dal Mansanare al Reno,§  
Di quel securq il fulmine  
Tenea dietro al baleno ;||  
Scoppiò da Scilla al Tanai,¶  
Dall' uno all' altro mar.

Fu vera gloria?...Ai posteri  
L'ardua sentenza ; nui\*\*  
Chiniam la fronte al Massimo  
Fattor, che volle in Lui  
Del creator suo spirito  
Più vasta orma stampar.

La procellosa e trepida  
Gioia d'un gran disegno,  
L'ansia d'un cor, che indocile  
Ferve pensando al regno,  
E il giunge, e ottiene un premio  
Ch' era folia sperar ;

Tutto ei provò ; la gloria  
Maggior dopo il periglio,  
La fuga, e la vittoria,  
La reggia, e il tristo esiglio :  
Due volte nella polvere,††  
Due volte sull' altar.

Ei si nomò : due secoli  
L'un contro l' altro armato,  
Sommessi a Lui si volsero  
Come aspettando il fato :  
Ei fe silenzio, ed arbitro  
S' assise in mezzo a lor.

Ei sparve, e i dì nell' ozio  
Chiuse in sì breve sponda,§§  
Segno d'immensa invidia,  
E di pietà profonda,  
D' inestinguibil odio  
E d' indomato amor.

\* "Fatale," marked by fate.

† "vece assidua," rapid vicissitudes, (changes.)

‡ "Vergin di servo encomio," pure from servile flattery, (praise).

§ From the Mansanare (a small river near Madrid) to the Rhine.

|| This bold image means : "The brilliancy (fulmine, thunderbolt) of that fearless man (Napoleon) moved as quick as lightning (baleno)."

¶ From Scylla (a famous rock in the Strait of Messina) to the river Don.

\*\* "nui" means "noi."

†† "Due volte..." an allusion to Napoleon's exile at Elba, and at St. Helena.

§§ "In sì breve sponda," on so narrow a shore, (St. Helena.)

Come sul capo al naufrago  
 L' onda s' avvolge e pesa,  
 L' onda su cui del misero  
 Alta pur dianzi e tesa  
 Scorrea la vista a scernere  
 Prode remote invan ;

Tal su quell' alma il cumulo  
 Delle memorie scese :  
 Oh ! quante volte ai posteri  
 Narrar sò stesso imprese,  
 E sull' eterne pagine  
 Cadde la stanca man !

Oh ! quante volte al tacito  
 Morir di un giorno inerte,  
 Chinati i rai fulminei,  
 Le braccia al sen conserte,  
 Stette, e dei dì che furono  
 L' assalse il sovvenir.

E ripensò le mobili  
 Tende, e i percossi valli,  
 E il lampo dei manipoli,  
 E l' onda de' cavalli,  
 E il concitato imperio,  
 E il celere obbedir.

Ahi ! forse a tanto strazio  
 Cadde lo spirto anelo,  
 E disperò ; ma valida  
 Venne una man dal cielo,  
 E in più spirabil aere  
 Pietosa il trasportò ;

E l'avviò sur floridi  
 Sentier della speranza,  
 Ai campi eterni, al premio  
 Che i desiderii avanza,\*  
 Ov' è silenzio e tenebre  
 La gloria che passò.

Bella, immortal, benefica  
 Fede ai trionfi avvezza,  
 Scrivi ancor questo : allegrati,  
 Che più superba altezza  
 Al disonor del Golgota†  
 Giammai non si chinò.

Tu dalle stanche ceneri  
 Sperdi ogni ria parola ;  
 Il Dio che atterra e suscita,  
 Che affanna e che consola,  
 Sulla deserta coltrice  
 Accanto a Lui posò.

MANZONI.

\* *Exceeds all desires.*

† "Al disonor del Golgota," to the disgrace of Calvary, which, by Christ's death, became a sign of salvation : an allusion to the Crucifix which Napoleon held in his hand on his death-bed.

## A GUIDE TO ITALIAN COMPOSITION.

*Note.—The translation of the words occurring in these extracts, not given in the foot notes, are to be found in the English-Italian Vocabulary at the end of this grammar.*

## THE CONJUGATING DUTCHMAN.\*

Two English (264) gentlemen once stepped into (a) a coffee-house (b) in Paris, where they observed a tall, odd-looking (c) man, who appeared not to be a native, (d) sitting (e) at one of the tables, and looking around with the most stone-like gravity of countenance (f) upon every object. Soon after the two Englishmen entered (595), one of them told the other that a celebrated dwarf had arrived (97) in Paris. At this, (g) the grave looking personage above mentioned opened his mouth (482) and spake:

"I arrive," said he, "thou arrivest, he arrives; we arrive, you arrive, they arrive."

The Englishman, whose (413) remark (h) seemed to have suggested this mysterious speech, stepped up to the stranger (i) and asked, "Did you speak to me, (88, II.) sir?"

"I speak," replied the stranger, "thou speakest, he speaks; we speak, you speak, they speak."

"How is this?" (j) said the Englishman; "do you mean (k) to insult me?" (91)

The other replied, "I insult, thou insultest, he insults; we insult, you insult, they insult."

\* "L'Olandese smanioso di coniugare."

(a) entrarono una volta in.

(b) di.

(c) di strano aspetto.

(d) che pareva straniero.

(e) "seated."

(f) "and looking..." che guardava ogni oggetto colla massima impassibilità. (See 138).

(g) All' udir ciò.

(h) parola.

(i) sì mosse verso.

(j) "Che vuol dir ciò?"

(k) "avreste l' intenzione." (See 29).

"This is too much!" (l) said the Englishman. "I will have satisfaction! (m) If you have any spirit with your rudeness, (n) come along with me" (o).

To this defiance the stranger replied, "I come, thou comest, he comes; we come, you come, they come;" and thereupon he rose with great coolness, (p) and followed his challenger (q).

In those days, when every gentleman wore (r) a sword, duels were speedily despatched (535) (s). They went into a neighbouring alley, (t) and the Englishman, unsheathing (597) his weapon, said to his antagonist, "Now, sir, you must fight me" (u).

"I fight," replied the other, "thou fightest, he fights; we fight (here he made a thrust), (v) you fight, they fight (and here he disarmed his antagonist.)"

"Well," said the Englishman, "you have the best of it, (w) and I hope (617 and 424) you are satisfied."

"I am satisfied," said the original, "thou art satisfied, he is satisfied; we are satisfied, you are satisfied, they are satisfied."

"I am glad (604, h) everybody is satisfied," said the Englishman; "but pray leave off quizzing me (x) in this strange manner, and tell me what is your object, if you have any, in doing it" (y).

The grave gentleman now, for the first time, became intelligible.

"I am a (167) Dutchman," said he, "and am learning your language. I find it (z) very difficult to remember the peculiarities of the verbs; and my tutor has advised me, in order to fix them in my mind, (aa) to conjugate every English verb that I hear spoken (bb). This I have made it a rule to do (cc). I don't like to have my plans broken in upon (dd) while they are in operation, or I would have told you this before."

(l) "C'è di troppo."  
(m) "Me ne darete ragione."

(n) "Se avete cuore che basti alla vostra rozzezza."

(o) "seguitemi."

(p) calma.

(q) colui che l'avea sfidato. (r) "the."

(s) si decidevano presto.

(t) chiasso.

(u) "bisogna battersi in duello meco."

(v) lanciò una botta.

(w) "mi do per vinto."

(x) "non si faccia più beffe di me, la prego."

(See rule 30).

(y) "a quale scopo, se

purne ha uno, agisce così."

(z) "it" is not translated.

(aa) se voglio fissarmeli bene in mente.

(bb) che sento pronunciare (See 468).

(cc) "a questa regola aderisco sempre."

(dd) Non amo che si contravenga ai miei disegni."

The Englishmen laughed heartily at this explanation, (ee) and invited the conjugating Dutchman to dine with them.

"I will dine," replied he, "thou wilt dine, he will dine; we will dine, you will dine, they will dine, we will all dine together."

This they accordingly did, (ff) and it was difficult to say whether the Dutchman ate or conjugated with most perseverance (gg).

### A CLEVER RETORT.\*

A friend of Dean Swift one day sent him (89) a turbot, as a present (a) by a servant lad (b) who had frequently been on similar errands, (c) but who had never received the most trifling mark (d) of the Dean's generosity. Having gained admission, (e) he opened (482) the door of the study, and abruptly putting down (597) the fish, cried, very rudely, "Master has sent you (30) a turbot." "Young man" said the Dean, rising from his easy chair, "is that the way you (28) deliver your message? (f) Let me teach you better manners: (g) sit down in my chair; we will change situations, (h) and I will show you (91) how to behave in future." (i) The boy sat down, and the Dean, going (597) to the door, came up to the table with a respectful pace, and making a low bow, (j) said, "Sir, my master (p.26) presents his kind compliments, (k) hopes (618) you are well, and requests your acceptance of (l) a small present." "Does he"? (m) replied the boy; "return him my best (n) thanks, and there's (o) half-a-crown for yourself." The Dean, thus drawn (p) into an act of generosity, laughed heartily, and gave the boy a crown for his wit.

(\* \* \*)

(ee) sentito lo schiarimento. (ff) Il che fecero.

(gg) "whether the Dutchman..." se l'Olandese forse

più perseverante nel coniugare o nel mangiare.

\* "Arguta Risposta."

(a) "as a present," in regalo.

(b) ragazzotto.

(c) che aveva sovente eseguito simili ordini.

(d) la minima prova.

(e) tosto che si trovò nella casa.

(f) è così che eseguisce gli ordini che ti son dati?

(g) Ti fo veder subito come si agisce meno villanamente.

(h) carattere.

(i) come dovresti comportarti per l'avvenire.

(j) profondo inchino.

(k) la saluta caramente.

(l) la prega di accettare.

(m) "Davvero?"

(n) ringrazialo pure da parte mia.

(o) ecco.

(p) spinto.

## THE DERVIS.\*

A Dervis, travelling through (a) Tartary, being arrived (467) at the town of Balk, went (482) into the king's palace by mistake, thinking it to be (b) a public inn or caravansary. Having looked about him for (142) some time, he entered into (c) a long gallery, where he laid down his wallet, and spread his carpet, in order to (671) repose himself upon it, (d) after the manner of (e) the Eastern nations (264). He had not been long (f) in this posture before he was (g) discovered by some of the guards, who asked him what was his business (h) in that place? The Dervis told them (424) he intended (606, e) to take up his night's lodging (i) in that caravansary. The guards let him know (j), in a very angry manner, (k) that the house he was in (l) was not a caravansary, but (m) the king's palace. It happened (n) that the king himself passed through the gallery during this debate, and (o) smiling at (p) the mistake of the Dervis, asked him how he could possibly be so dull as not (q) to distinguish a palace from a caravansary? "Sire," says the Dervis, "give me leave to ask your majesty (r) a question or two. Who were the persons that lodged in this house when it was first built?" The king replied "My ancestors." "And who," says the Dervis, "was the last person that lodged here?" (s) The king replied, "My father." "And who is it," says the Dervis, "that lodges here (621) at present?" The king told him that it was he himself (t). "And who," says the Dervis, "will be here after you?" the king answered, "The young prince, my son." "Ah! Sire," said the Dervis, "a house that changes its inhabitants so often (u) and receives such a perpetual succession of guests, is not a palace, but a caravansary."—

ADDISON.

* "Il Dervigio."	(h) ciò che venisse fare.	(q) abbastanza stupido
(a) che viaggiava in.	(i) d' alloggiarsi per la	per.
(b) credendolo.	notte.	(r) mi sia permesso di
(c) infidò.	(j) gli fecero sapere.	fare a Vostra Maestà.
(d) "upon it" is not	(k) con gran collera.	(s) "E chi fu l'ultimo
translated.	(l) in cui si trovava.	che vi ebbe alloggio?"
(e) alla moda di.	(m) ma bensì.	(t) che vi alloggiava egli
(f) non era stato guari.	(n) il caso volle.	stesso.
(g) "before he was" al-	(o) discussione.	(u) che cambia sì spesso
lorquando fu.	(p) di.	di abitanti.

## RABELAIS A TRAITOR.\*

This celebrated wit (a) was once at a great distance from Paris, and without money to bear his expenses thither (b.) The ingenious author being sharp set (c) got together (d) a convenient quantity of brickdust, and having disposed of it (e) into several papers, (f) wrote upon one, *Poison for Monsieur*; (g) upon a second, *Poison for the Dauphin*; (h) and on a third, *Poison for the King*. Having made this provision for (i) the royal family of France, he laid his papers so that (j) the landlord, who was an inquisitive man and a good (k) subject, might get a sight of them (l). The plot succeeded as he desired; (m) the host gave immediate intelligence to (n) the secretary of state. The secretary presently sent down (o) a special messenger, who brought up the traitor to court, and provided him, at the king's expense, with proper accommodation on the road (p). As soon as he appeared, he was known to be (q) the celebrated Rabelais, and his powder, upon examination, (r) being found very innocent, the jest was only laughed at; (s) for which a less eminent droll would have been sent to the galleys.—BUDGELL.

## THE CUNNING CUTLER.\*

There is (59) at London, in a place called Charing-cross, a very fine statue in bronze of Charles the First (335) on horseback (a). After the revolution and the decapitation of that monarch, the statue was taken down (b) (535) and sold to a cutler who undertook to demolish it.

\* "Rabelais Colpevole di Lesa Maestà."

(a) bel ingegno.

(b) "to bear his expenses thither," pagar le sue spese fin là.

(c) ridotto all' ultima risorsa.

(d) raccolse.

(e) messala. (f) involtini.

(g) *Monsieur* was the title given to the eldest of the brothers of the kings of France.

(h) *Dauphin* was the title given to the eldest son of the king of France.

(i) Avendo provveduto così a' bisogni di.

(j) in modo tale che.

(k) fedele.

(l) potesse vederli.

(m) come lo desiderava (notice the pronoun "lo" referring to plot).

(n) ne avvertì immediatamente.

(o) spedì subito.

(p) "and provided him ..." facendogli dare sulla via, a spese del re, alloggio e vitto.

(q) ricouobbero esser lui.

(r) analisi fatta.

(s) non si fece che ridere della burla.

\* "Il Sagace Coltellinaio." (a) a cavallo.

(b) si tirò giù la statua.



He immediately manufactured great numbers (c) of knives and forks with bronze handles, and exposed them (d) in his shop as the produce of the statue which was supposed (535) to have been melted. They were so rapidly bought, (e) both by (f) the friends and the enemies of the late (g) monarch, that the cutler soon made a (h) fortune and retired from business.

Soon after the restoration it was proposed (535) to erect a new statue to the memory of the unfortunate king; the cutler hearing of this, (597) informed the government that he could spare them the trouble and expense of casting a statue, as the old one (i) was yet in his possession, and that he would sell it to them (238) at a moderate price. The bargain (j) was concluded, (535) and the statue, which he had secretly preserved, was (482) re-elevated (k) on the pedestal at Charing-cross, where it now stands (l).

#### THE MONKEY AND THE TWO CATS.\*

Two cats, having stolen some cheese, could not agree (607, d) about dividing their prize (a). In order, therefore, to settle (b) the dispute, (c) they consented to refer the matter (d) to a monkey. The proposed arbitrator very readily (e) accepted the office, and, producing a balance, (f) put a part (g) into each scale.—“Let me see,” said he, “ay! this lump outweighs (h) the other;” and immediately he bit off a considerable piece (i) “in order to reduce it,” he observed, “to an equilibrium.” (j) The opposite scale had now become the heavier, which (416) afforded our conscientious judge an additional (k) reason for a second mouthful. “Hold! hold!” (l) said the two cats, who began to be alarmed for the event, (m)

(c) quantità.

(f) e fra. (g) defunto.

(j) L'affare.

(d) mise in mostra.

(h) “a” is not translated.

(k) posta di bel nuovo.

(e) ebbero tale smercio.

(i) stante che la vecchia.

(l) si vede tuttora.

\* “La scimia e i due Gatti.”

(e) con gran premura.

(j) “in order to...” per istabilire, diss’egli, l’equilibrio.

(a) quanto al modo di dividere il bottino.

(f) prendendo una bilancia.

(k) nuova.

(b) quindi per decidere.

(g) pezzo. (h) pesa più.

(l) basta! basta!

(c) lite.

(i) ne levò co’ denti un buon boccone.

(m) temerne il risultato.

(d) sottomettere il caso.

"give us our respective shares, and we are satisfied." "If you are satisfied," returned the monkey, "justice is not; a case of this intricate nature is by no means (n) so soon determined." Upon this (o) he continued to nibble (p) first at one piece and then the other, till the poor cats, seeing their cheese gradually diminishing, entreated him to give himself no farther trouble, but deliver (q) to them what remained. "Not so fast, I beseech you, friends," replied the monkey; "we owe justice to ourselves as well as (r) to you: what remains is due to me in right of my office." Upon which he crammed the whole into his mouth, (s) and with great gravity dismissed the court (t).—DODSLEY.

### CURIOUS EXPEDIENT.\*

Two Irishmen, blacksmiths by trade, (611, u) went to Jamaica. Finding soon after their arrival, that they could do nothing without money to begin with, (a) but that, with sixty or seventy pounds and industry, they might be able to do some business, they hit upon (b) the following ingenious expedient.

One of them made the other black (c) from head to foot. This being done, (d) he took him to one of the negro-dealers, who, after viewing (597) and approving his stout, athletic appearance, made a bargain (e) to pay eighty pounds for him and prided himself on (608, g) the purchase, supposing him to be (f) one of the finest negroes on the island. The same evening this newly manufactured negro (g) made off to (h) his countryman, washed himself clean, and resumed his former appearance. Rewards were in vain offered in hand bills, (i) pursuit was eluded, and discovery, by care and caution, was made impossible (j).

(n) punto.

(o) detto ciò.

(p) morsecchiare.

(q) restituir.

(r) non meno che.

(s) "he crammed..." se

lo ficcò in bocca.

(t) finì l'udienza.

\* "Curioso Spediente."

(a) per cominciare.

(b) immaginarono.

(c) annerì.

(d) ciò fatto.

(e) convenne.

(f) credendo che fosse.

(g) questo negro improvvisato.

(h) scappò e andò dal.

(i) cartolina d'informazione.

(j) Turn "pursuit was eluded..." "they eluded pursuit, and with care and caution made it impossible that any one should discover them."

The two Irishmen with the money commenced business (k) and succeeded (120) so well, that they returned to England with a fortune of several thousand pounds (462). Previous however to their departure from the island, (l) they went to the gentleman from whom they had received the money, recalled the circumstance of the negro to his recollection, (m) and made amends, both for principal and interest, with thanks (n).

### NAPOLEON AND THE BRITISH SAILOR.\*

Whilst the French (264) troops were encamped at Boulogne, public attention was much excited by (125) the daring attempt at escape (a) made by an English sailor. This person (b) having escaped (467) from the dépôt and gained (c) the borders of the sea, the woods near which served him for concealment, (d) constructed, (482) with no other instrument than a knife, a boat entirely of the bark of trees. When the weather was fair, (611, a) he mounted (475) (e) a tree and looked out for (f) the English flag; and having at last observed (g) (467) a British cruiser, he ran to the shore with his boat on his back, and was about (607, f.) to trust himself in his frail vessel to the waves, when he was (482) pursued, arrested, and loaded with chains. Everybody in the army was anxious (h) to see the boat; and Napoleon, having at length heard of the affair, (i) sent for (j) the sailor and interrogated him. "You must," (k) said Napoleon, (482) "have had a great desire to see your country

---

(k) si misero a negoziare.	(m) "recalled..." "gli rammentarono l'affare del negro.	(n) "and made amends..." e lor ingraziarono, pagandogli il capitale e l'interesse.
(l) "Previous, however..." Però prima di lasciar l'Isola.		

---

\* "Napoleone e il Marinaro Inglese."

(a) audace tentativo di evadersi.

(b) uomo.

(c) pervenuto.

(d) Add "su di."

(e) servivano di nascondiglio.

(f) guardava se potesse vedere.

(g) scoperto.

(h) desiderava.

(i) sentito parlare dell'accaduto.

(j) mandò a chiamare.

(k) Dovete, ne son certo.

again, since you could resolve (l) to trust yourself on the open sea (m) in so frail a bark. I suppose you have left a sweetheart there"? (107) "No," said the sailor," but a poor infirm mother, whom I was (474) anxious to see," "And you shall see her," said Napoleon, giving at the same time orders to set him at (n) liberty, and to bestow upon him (o) a considerable sum of money for his mother, observing that "she must be a good mother who had so good a (p) son."

### DESCRIPTION OF ENGLAND.\*

Few countries exhibit a greater variety of surface than England, or have been more highly favoured by (125) nature. "Although," says Dr. Aikin, "its features are moulded on a comparatively minute scale, (a) they are marked with all the agreeable interchange (b) which constitutes picturesque beauty. In some parts, plains clothed (c) in the richest verdure, watered by copious streams, and pasturing innumerable cattle, extend as far as the eye can reach ; (d) in others, (e) gently rising hills (f) and bending vales, (g) fertile in corn, (h) waving with woods, (i) and interspersed with (123) flowery meadows, offer the most delightful landscapes of rural opulence and beauty. Some tracts furnish (f) prospects of the more romantic and impressive kind ; lofty mountains, craggy rocks, deep dells, narrow ravines, and tumbling (k) torrents : nor are there wanting, as a contrast to (l) those scenes in which every variety of nature is a different charm, the vicissitude of (m) black barren moors and wide inanimated heaths." Such is (n) a vivid description of the general appearance of England. But the beauty and fertility of the country are not the only things to excite (o) admiration. The mild-

(l) poichè v'è bastato il cuore.

(m) pieno mare.  
(n) metterlo in.

(o) e di dargli.  
(p) tal.

\* "Descrizione dell' Inghilterra."

(a) "its features..." le sue prospettive non slano relativamente che di piccola proporzione.

(b) varietà. (c) coperte.

(d) fin dove può giunger l'occhio.

(e) altrove.  
(f) collinette a dolce clivo.  
(g) valloncelli tortuosi.  
(h) che producono frumento in abbondanza.  
(i) coperti di boschi ondeggianti.

(j) offrono (or offrono).  
(k) precipitosi.

(l) "nor are there..." nè mancavi, come per far risaltare.

(m) l'aspetto vicendevole di.

(n) Ecco.  
(o) che eccitano.

ness of the climate, removed alike from the extremes of heat and cold; (p) the multitude of rivers, their (355) depth, and the facility they afford to internal navigation; the vast beds of coal and other valuable minerals hid under the surface; (q) the abundance and excellence of the fish in the rivers and surrounding seas; the extent of sea-coast; the number, capaciousness, (r) and safety of the ports and bays; and the favourable situation of the country for commerce; give (s) England (146) advantages that are not enjoyed in an equal degree by any other nation (u).—

Dr. AIKEN and J. R. M'CULLOCH.

### CHARACTER OF RICHARD I.\*

This renowned prince was (476) tall, strong, straight, and well-proportioned. His arms were remarkably long, (375) his eyes blue, and full of vivacity; his hair was of a yellowish colour; his countenance fair (545) and comely, and his air majestic. He was endowed with (p. 183, t) good natural understanding; his penetration was uncommon; he possessed a fund of manly eloquence; his conversation was spirited, and he was admired for his talents of repartee; (a) as for his courage and ability in war, both Europe and Asia resound with his praise. The Saracens stilled their children with the terror of his name; and Saladine, who was an accomplished prince, admired his valour to such a (329) degree of enthusiasm, that immediately after Richard had defeated (487) him on the plains of Joppa, he sent him a couple of fine Arabian horses, in token of his esteem; a (160) polite compliment, which Richard returned with magnificent presents. These are the shining parts (b) of his character, which however, cannot dazzle the judicious observer so much, but that he may perceive a number of blemishes, (c) which no historian has been able to efface from the memory of this celebrated monarch. His ingratitude and want of filial affection are unpardonable. He was proud, haughty, ambitious, choleric, cruel, vindictive, and vicious; nothing (453) could

(p) "removed alike..."  
nè troppo freddo, nè troppo  
caldo.

(q) che il suolo nasconde.  
(r) grandezza.  
(s) tutto ciò dà.

(u) "that are not en-  
joyed..." di cui nessun altra  
nazione gode al medesimo  
grado.

\* "Carattere di Riccardo  
Primo."

(a) "for his talents of re-  
partee," per la sua arguzia.

(b) qualità ammirabili.  
(c) "cannot dazzle..."  
non possono abbagliare un  
osservatore di senno al

punto di nascondergli i  
tanti difetti.

equal his rapaciousness but his profusion, and, indeed, the one was the effect of the other; he was a tyrant to (d) his wife, as well as (e) to his people, who groaned under his taxations to such a degree, that even (f) the glory of his victories did not exempt him from their execrations: in a word, he has been aptly compared to a lion, a species of animals which he resembled not only in courage, but likewise in ferocity.—SMOLLETT.

### WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF CHATHAM.\*

On the stage, Pitt would have been the finest Brutus or Coriolanus ever seen (a)...His figure when (b) he first appeared in Parliament, was strikingly graceful and commanding; (c) his features high and noble; his eye full of fire. His voice, even when it sank to a whisper, (d) was heard to the remotest benches; and when he strained it to its full extent, (e) the sound rose like the swell of the organ (f) of a great cathedral—shook the house with its peal (g)—and was heard through lobbies (h) and down staircases, to the Court of Requests and the precincts (i) of Westminster Hall. He cultivated all these eminent advantages with the most assiduous care. His action is described by a very malignant observer (j) as equal to that of Garrick. His play of countenance (k) was wonderful; he frequently disconcerted (475) a hostile orator by a single glance of indignation or scorn. Every tone, from the impassioned cry (l) to the thrilling aside, was perfectly at his command. It is by no means improbable (m) that the pains which he took to improve his great personal advantages had in some respects a prejudicial operation, and tended to nourish in him that passion for theatrical effect which, as we have already remarked, (n) was one of the most conspicuous blemishes (o) in his character.—MACAULAY.

(d) verso.	(e) come pure.	(f) persino.
* "Guglielmo Pitt, Conte di Chatham."	(f) "like the swell of the organ," come quello dell' organo.	(l) "Every tone..."
(a) che si vedesse mai.	(g) ne faceva tremare la sala del senato.	Teneva in freno completo ogni emozione dell' animo, dal grido della passione, fino all' aparte commovente.
(b) Turn, "When he..."	(h) gallerie.	(m) Egli è probabilissimo.
(c) imponente.	(i) circuito.	(n) Come si è già fatto osservare.
(d) "even when..." persino quando parlava sotto voce.	(j) critico ostile,	(o) difetti.
(e) "he strained it..." quando se ne serviva a più non posso.	(k) l' espressione del suo volto.	

## TITLES AND EXPRESSIONS USED IN WRITING LETTERS IN ITALIAN.

IN WRITING TO MINISTERS, (MINISTRI DI STATO) AMBASSADORS, (AMBASCIATORI) GENERALS, (GENERALI D'ARMATA) AND CHIEF MAGISTRATES :—

**Commence**—*Illustrissimo ed Eccellentissimo Signore*, or *Eccellenza*.

**In the body of the letter**—*Illustrissimo ed Eccellentissimo Signore*, or *Vostra Eccellenza*.

**Conclude**—*Coi sensi del più profondo ossequio sono*—

Or *Desiderando occasioni per poterle dar prova della mia devozione, ho l'onore di protestarmi*—

Or *Pregandola di conservarmi la di Lei grazia, mi dico,*  
*Di Vostra Eccellenza,*

*umilissimo e devotissimo servitore*—\*

**Address**—*All' Illustrissimo ed Eccellentissimo Signore, il Signor, &c.*

IN WRITING TO MARQUESSES, (MARCHESI) COUNTS, (CONTI) BARONS, (BARONI), KNIGHTS OF ALL ORDERS, (CAVALIERI) AND JUDGES :—

**Commence**—*Illustrissimo Signore*.

**In the body of the letter**—*Illustrissimo Signore*, or *Vossignoria illustrissima*.

**Conclude**—*Colla massima stima ho l'onore di segnarmi*—

Or *Ossequiandola distintamente, ho l'onore d'essere,*  
*Di Vossignoria illustrissima*  
*umilissimo e devotissimo servo*—

**Address**—*All' Illustrissimo Signore,*  
*il Signor Marchese, &c.*

IN WRITING TO DOCTORS, (DOTTORI, MEDICI) PROFESSORS, (PROFESSORI) AND ESQUIRES (SIGNORI) :—

**Commence**—*Pregiatissimo*, or *Stimatissimo*, or *Ornatissimo Signore*.

**In the body of the letter**—*Pregiatissimo* or *Stimatissimo*, or *Ornatissimo Signore*.

**Conclude**—*Sono e sarò sempre, con tutto l'animo, suo devotissimo ed obbligatissimo servitore*—

Or *Coi sensi del più profondo rispetto (or della più profonda stima) sono di Lei devotissimo servo*—

Or *Mi creda sempre, come sono e sarò di cuore, suo affezionatissimo amico*—

Or *Mi offro a servirle e mi ripeto di tutto cuore suo affezionatissimo servitore ed amico*—

Or *Gradisca i miei affettuosi saluti e mi creda suo devotissimo servo*—

Or *Facendole i miei cordiale saluti me Le dico devotissimo servo ed amico*—

**Address**—*Al Riveritissimo, or Pregiatissimo Signor, &c.*

\* In Italian, the address of the writer and the date of a letter were formerly always written at the end of a letter, except in commercial letters, and sometimes in letters to familiar friends; but now-a-days many people write address and date at the top or at the end of letters indifferently.

IN WRITING TO FRIENDS OF ALL RANKS :—

**Commence**—*Caro, or Carissimo amico, (or the name of the person, or his title).*

**In the body of the letter**—*Ella, voi, or tu.*

**Conclude**—*E salutandola affettuosamente sono con sincera stima, devotissimo amico—*

**Or** *Vogliatemi bene e credelemi il vostro affezionatissimo amico—*

**Or** *Salutatemi caramente N. N; e se mi volete bene, abbiate cara sopra tutto alla vostra salute. Addio, addio di tutto cuore—*

**Or** *Salutandoti di cuore sono tuo vero amico—*

**Address**—*Allo Stimatissimo, or Ornatissimo Signor, &c.\**

NOTE.

*N.B.*—In writing to ladies the same regard must be paid to rank as is paid towards gentlemen.

ECCLESIASTICAL DIGNITIES.

IN WRITING TO ARCHBISHOPS, (ARCIVESCOVI) AND BISHOPS (VESCOVI) :—

**Commence**—*Monsignore Illustrissimo e Reverendissimo.†*

**In the body of the letter**—*Monsignore Illustrissimo e Reverendissimo.*

**Conclude**—*Ossequiandola rispettosamente Le bacio la mano.*

*Di Vossignoria Illustrissima e Reverendissima,  
umilissimo e devotissimo servitore—*

**Address**—*All' Illustrissimo e Reverendissimo Signore, or Monsignore, &c.*

IN WRITING TO DEANS, (DECANI) ARCHDEACONS (ARCIPRETI).

**Commence**—*Reverendissimo Signore.*

**In the body of the letter**—*Vossignoria Reverendissima.*

**Conclude**—*Sono colla massima stima,*

*Di Vossignoria Reverendissima,  
ubbidientissimo servitore—*

**Address**—*Al Reverendissimo signore, &c.*

TO CLERGYMEN.

**Commence**—*Molto Reverendo Signore.*

**In the body of the letter**—*Vossignoria Reverenda, or Molto Reverenda.*

**Conclude**—*Sono col più profondo rispetto,*

*Di Vossignoria Reverenda,  
ubbidientissimo servitore, &c.*

**Address**—*Al Molto Reverendo Padre, or Signore, il Signor, &c.*

\* In addressing persons who have distinguished themselves in their professions, or arts, often instead of Pregiatissimo, Stimabilissimo, &c., the titles, Egregio, Esimio, Chiarissimo, are used.

† Ilmo, Illumo, Revmo, Revma, V.S., Pregiato, Stimato, Ornato, Umilmo, Devmo, Obbligmo<sup>1</sup> Sig. Sig<sup>a</sup>, are written instead of Illustrissimo, Reverendissimo, Pregiatissimo; Vossignoria, or Vostra, Signoria, &c. ; but to write the title in full is an additional mark of respect.



## VOCABULARY.

## PART 1.

## ITALIAN—ENGLISH.

**A**  
 Abbandonato, *abandoned*.  
 Abbiezione, *abject condition*.  
 Abbracciarmi, *to embrace me*.  
 Abitavano, *they lived*.  
 Accadde, *it happened*.  
 Accanto, *beside*.  
 Acciocchè, *in order that*.  
 Accoramento, *heart grief*.  
 Accostare, *to approach*.  
 Acerba, *excruciating*.  
 Acqua, *water*.  
 Acquistato, *acquired*.  
 Addimandò, *be asked*.  
 Addio, *good-bye*.  
 Adori, *you adore*.  
 Aere, *air*.  
 Affanna, *be afflicts*.  
 Affanno, *sorrow*.  
 Affetto, *affezione, affection*.  
 Affidi, *you trust*.  
 Affinchè, *in order that*.  
 Aggiunto, *added*.  
 Aita, *assistance*.  
 Alcuno, *some, any*.  
 Allegrati, *rejoice*.  
 Alloggiava, *be loved*.  
 Allora, *then*.  
 Alma, *spirit, mind*.  
 Almeno, *at least*.  
 Alta, *big*.  
 Altezza, *height*.  
 Altiero, *proud*.  
 Altro, *other, something else*.  
 Altrui, *other people*.  
 Alza, *be lifts up*.  
 Alzava, *be rose*.  
 Amara, *bitter*.  
 Amico, *friend*.  
 Ammiro, *I admire*.  
 Amore, *love*.  
 Amoreggiare, *to fondle on*.  
 Amoruso, *loving*.

*Ampia, large*.  
 Anche, anco, ancora, *also*.  
 Andare, *to go, gait*.  
 Anelo, *breathless*.  
 Angusta, *narrow*.  
 Anima, *soul*.  
 Animetta, *dear little soul*.  
 Anno, *year*.  
 Ansia, *anxiety*.  
 Antivedere, *foresight*.  
 Appena, *scarcely*.  
 Appunto, *exactly*.  
 Arbitro, *judge*.  
 Aria, *air*.  
 Arboscello, *strub*.  
 Ardèa, *it was burning*.  
 Ardiano, *they dared*.  
 Ardiscono, *they dare*.  
 Ardua, *difficult*.  
 Arene, *sands, shores*.  
 Argentea, *silvery*.  
 Arsi, *I burnt*.  
 Ascolta, *listen*.  
 Aspettando, *awaiting*.  
 Aspettasse, *expected*.  
 Assai, *much*.  
 Assalse, *it assailed*.  
 Assise (si), *placed himself*.  
 Assordi, *you deafen*.  
 Astinenza, *abstinence*.  
 Atterra, *be prostrates*.  
 Attonita, *astonished*.  
 Attorta, *curly, twisted*.  
 Aura, *breeze*.  
 Avvezza, *accustomed*.  
 Avvicinarsi, *to approach*.  
 Avviò, *it sent him*.  
 Avvolgea, *twisted*.  
 Avvolge (s'), *coils up*.  
 Azzurra, *azure*.

**B**  
 Baleno, *flash of lightning*.

Bambino, *bambinello, little child*.  
 Barba, *beard*.  
 Bassa, *low*.  
 Battuto, *beaten*.  
 Bel, bello, bei, begli, *beautiful*.  
 Bellezza, *beauty*.  
 Bellissimo, *very fine*.  
 Benchè, *although*.  
 Bene, *well*.  
 Benefattore, *benefactor*.  
 Benefica, *beneficent*.  
 Benignamente, *kindly*.  
 Bestia, *beast*.  
 Bianco, *white*.  
 Bocca, *mouth*.  
 Bosco, *wood*.  
 Bottega, botteghe, *shop, shops*.  
 Braccio, braccia, *arm, arms*.  
 Brina, *hoar-frost*.  
 Bruna, *dark*.  
 Buono, *good*.

**C**  
 Cadde, *be fell*.  
 Caldo, *warm*.  
 Calpestare, *to trample on*.  
 Calza, *stocking*.  
 Campo, *field*.  
 Canto, cantico, *song*.  
 Canuto, *hoary*.  
 Canzone, *song*.  
 Capei (capelli), *hair*.  
 Capo, *head*.  
 Cappella, *chapel*.  
 Caro, *dear*.  
 Carattere, *character*.  
 Carcere, *prison*.  
 Carceriere, *jailor*.  
 Casa, *house*.  
 Casta, *chaste*.

Catena, *chain*.  
 Cavallo, *horse*.  
 Cavando, *pulling out*.  
 Celere, *rapid*.  
 Celeste, *heavenly*.  
 Cenere, *ashes*.  
 Cerchio, *circle*.  
 Certo, *certain*.  
 Cessa, *he ceases*.  
 Che, *that, what, which*.  
 Chi, *who, whom*.  
 Chiama, *he calls*.  
 Chiamando, *calling*.  
 Chiede, *it asks*.  
 Chiesa, *church*.  
 Chiesi, *I asked*.  
 Chinati, *bent*.  
 Chiniamo, *we bend low*.  
 Chindò, *he bent down*.  
 Chioma, *hair*.  
 Chiusa, *limited*.  
 Cielo, *sky, heaven*.  
 Cinquanta, *fifty*.  
 Cocchiere, *coachman*.  
 Coccia, *berry*.  
 Codardo, *cowardly*.  
 Colei, *she, her*.  
 Collina, *hill*.  
 Collo, *neck*.  
 Colmo, *height*.  
 Colore, *colour*.  
 Coloro, *those*.  
 Colpiti, *caught*.  
 Colpo, *blow*.  
 Coltrice, *bed*. (lit. *coverlet*)  
 Come, *like, as, how, when*.  
 Commosso, *moved*.  
 Comune, *common*.  
 Compagno, *companion*.  
 Compiangi, *you sympathise with*.  
 Con, *with*.  
 Concitato, *rapid*.  
 Congiunge, *it joins*.  
 Conseguo, *I consign*.  
 Conserte, *crossed*.  
 Consorte, *wife*.  
 Contadino, *peasant*.  
 Contemplatore, *contemplating*.  
 Contende, *it objects*.  
 Contento, *contentment*.  
 Contro, *against*.  
 Contiguo, *contiguous*.  
 Continuava, *he continued*.  
 Continuo, *continuous*.  
 Conversava, *I conversed*.  
 Copriva, *I or he covered*.

Core, *heart*.  
 Correva, *corse, he ran*.  
 Corso, *course*.  
 Cortile, *courtyard*.  
 Corteccia, *bark*.  
 Corto, *short*.  
 Cosa, *thing*.  
 Così, *thus*.  
 Costa, *costiera, coast*.  
 Creator, *creating*.  
 Crederò, *I shall think*.  
 Crèdula, *credulous*.  
 Crin (crine), *hair*.  
 Croce, *cross*.  
 Crudel, *cruel*.  
 Cruenta, *blood-stained*.  
 Cui, *whom, which*.  
 Cumulo, *heap*.  
 Cuore, *heart*.  
 Custode, *keeper, governor*.

## D

Dà, *he, she gives*.  
 Danno, *damage*.  
 Dato, *given*.  
 Dea, *goddess*.  
 Dei, *gods*.  
 Deposito, *deposit*.  
 Deserta, *deserted*.  
 Desire, *desire*.  
 Destra, *right*.  
 Di, *day*.  
 Dicendo, *saying*.  
 Diedi, *I gave*.  
 Difende, *he defends*.  
 Diletto, *delight, favourite*.  
 Dimmi, *tell me*.  
 Dinanzi, *before*.  
 Dio, *God*.  
 Dipingevano (si), *they depicted themselves*.  
 Dipinto, *painted*.  
 Dirmi, *to tell me*.  
 Discerna, *he recognises*.  
 Discosto, *distant*.  
 Disegno, *design*.  
 Disperde, *it dispels*.  
 Dispero, *I lose hope*.  
 Disse, *he said*.  
 Distendersi, *extend itself*.  
 Diviene, *he becomes*.  
 Diviso, *divided*.  
 Dolce, *sweet*.  
 Dolcezza, *sweetness*.  
 Dolore, *pain, grief*.  
 Domandagli, *to ask him*.  
 Donde, *whence*.  
 Donna, *woman, lady*.

Dono, *gift*.  
 Dopo, *after*.  
 Dormire, *to sleep*.  
 Dove, *where*.  
 Dovevi, *you ought*.  
 Dovunque, *wherever*.  
 Dumì, *briar*.  
 Dunque, *therefore*.  
 Duro, *hard*.

## E

Ecco, *behold*.  
 Ei, *he*.  
 Empi, *you fill*.  
 Empia, *wicked*.  
 Entrare, *to enter*.  
 Eppure, *and yet*.  
 Erba, *erbetta, herb*.  
 Esca, *bait*.  
 Esclamava, *I exclaimed*.  
 Esempio, *example*.  
 Esiglio, *exile*.  
 Esperienza, *experience*.  
 Espressione, *expression*.  
 Esprimendo, *expressing*.  
 Eterna, *eternal*.  
 Estinto, *dead*.

## F

Faccia, *face*.  
 Facendo, *doing, making*.  
 Faceva, *he made*.  
 Facilmente, *easily*.  
 Faggio, *beech-tree*.  
 Falso, *false*.  
 Fanno, *they make, they do*.  
 Far colazione, *to breakfast*.  
 Fare, *to make, to do*.  
 Farsi, *to make itself*.  
 Fato, *fate*.  
 Fatto, *done*.  
 Fattor, *maker*.  
 Favella, *language*.  
 Fece, *he did, he made*.  
 Fede, *faith, belief*.  
 Fedel, *faithful*.  
 Felice, *bappy*.  
 Fendere, *to cleave*.  
 Feroce, *ferocious*.  
 Ferro, *iron*.  
 Ferve, *it is fervent*.  
 Fianco, *side*.  
 Figlio, *son*.  
 Fil (filo), *thread*.  
 Fin, *even*.  
 Fine, *end*.  
 Finestra, *window*.  
 Finge, *it feigns*.

Fiore, *flower*.  
 Fiume, *river*.  
 Flèbile, *doleful*.  
 Florido, *blooming*.  
 Foco, *fire*.  
 Follia, *folly*.  
 Folto, *bushy*.  
 Fonte, *fountain*.  
 Formata, *formed*.  
 Forse, *perhaps*.  
 Fosse, *be was*.  
 Fra, *among, between*.  
 Frèmere, *to rage*.  
 Freschezza, *freshness*.  
 Frettoloso, *hasty*.  
 Fronda, *branch, foliage*.  
 Fronte, *brow*.  
 Fuga, *flight*.  
 Fuggi, *fly from*.  
 Fulminei, *beaming*.

## G

Gabbia, *cage*.  
 Gelsomino, *jasmine*.  
 Gemito, *groan*.  
 Genio, *genius*.  
 Gente, *people*.  
 Gentile, *gentle*.  
 Germoglia, *it germinates*.  
 Gettava, *I threw*.  
 Già, *already*.  
 Giace, *lies*.  
 Giacinto, *hyacinth*.  
 Giacque, *be laid down*.  
 Giammai, *never*.  
 Gioaia, *mountain chain*.  
 Gioia, *joy*.  
 Giorno, *day*.  
 Giovanili, *youthful*.  
 Giovanni, *John*.  
 Giovano, *they are of use*.  
 Giro, *I turn*.  
 Giunge, *it arrives*.  
 Gli, *to him*.  
 Gode, *it enjoys*.  
 Gode, *be rejoices*.  
 Gonnella, *gown*.  
 Gran, grande, *great*.  
 Grato, *grateful*.  
 Grattitudine, *gratitude*.  
 Grave, grave, *sedate*.  
 Gravità, *gravity*.  
 Gridai, *I cried*.  
 Grido, *cry*.  
 Grosso, *large*.  
 Grotta, *cavern*.  
 Guancia, *cheek*.  
 Guardare, *to look*.

Guardi, *let it guard*.  
 Guardo, *a look*.  
 Gusta, *it enjoys*.  
 Guerriera, *warlike*.

## I

Immàgini, *you imagine*.  
 Immediatamente, *immediately*.  
 Immemore, *unconscious*.  
 Immenso, *immense*.  
 Immobile, *motionless*.  
 Imperio, *command*.  
 Imprese, *be undertook*.  
 Impressi, *engraved*.  
 Incauto, *unwary*.  
 Incontrare, *to meet*.  
 Incùria, *carelessness*.  
 Indocile, *unbecked*.  
 Indomato, *unabated, unconquered*.  
 Inerte, *idle*.  
 Inestinguibil, *unquenched*.  
 Infelice, *unhappy*.  
 Inferno, *hell*.  
 Infida, *faitless*.  
 Infortunio, *misfortune*.  
 Inganno, *deceit*.  
 In mezzo, *between*.  
 Innanzi, *forward*.  
 Innanzi, *before*.  
 Insanguinato, *covered with blood*.  
 Intendere, *to understand*.  
 Interesse, *interest*.  
 Interotto, *broken*.  
 Intorno, *around*.  
 Inùtile, *useless*.  
 Invano, *in vain*.  
 Invidia, *jealousy*.  
 Ira, *anger*.  
 Ivi, *there*.

## L

Ladroni, *thieves*.  
 Lago, *lake*.  
 Lagrima, *tear*.  
 Lagrimando, *sweeping*.  
 Lamento, *lamentation*.  
 Lampo, *lightening*.  
 Lanciò (si), *be rusbed*.  
 Laudare, *to praise*.  
 Languire, *to languish*.  
 Lasciala, *let it*.  
 Lasciare, *to leave*.  
 Lavoro, *work*.  
 Legge, *law*.  
 Leggiadro, *comely*.

Lento, *slow*.  
 Levano, *they raise*.  
 Levare, *to take from it*.  
 Levò, *be raised*.  
 Liberare, *to free*.  
 Lieto, *happy*.  
 Lingua, *tongue*.  
 Lontano, *distant*.  
 Loro, *their, them*.  
 Lume, *light*.  
 Luna, *moon*.  
 Lungi, *far*.  
 Lungo, lunghi, *long*.  
 Luogo, *place*.

## M

Ma, *but*.  
 Madre, *mother*.  
 Mai, *ever, never*.  
 Maggiore, *greater*.  
 Magico, *magic*.  
 Magnifico, *magnificent*.  
 Male, *harm, badly*.  
 Mammoletta, *violet*.  
 Manco, *less*.  
 Mangiare, *to eat*.  
 Manipolo, *battalion*.  
 Mano, *band*.  
 Manto, *mantle*.  
 Maraviglia, *wander*.  
 Mare, *sea*.  
 Massimo, *greatest*.  
 Materna, *maternal*.  
 Mattina, *morning*.  
 Medesimi, *same, selves*.  
 Meditare, *to meditate, meditation*.  
 Melanconia, *melancholy*.  
 Memoria, *recollection*.  
 Mente, *mind*.  
 Mentre, *whilst*.  
 Mento, *chin*.  
 Mercè, *reward*.  
 Mese, *month*.  
 Messo, *put*.  
 Mesta, *sad*.  
 Mettere, *to put*.  
 Mezzo, *half, middle, means*.  
 Migliore, *better*.  
 Milanese, *Milanese territory*.  
 Mille, *a thousand*.  
 Mio, miei, *my*.  
 Mirare, *to see*.  
 Misero, *unfortunate, wretched*.  
 Misesi (si mise) *be put himself*.  
 Mista, *mingled*.  
 Misura, *measure*.

Mobile, *changing*.  
Modestia, *modesty*.  
Modo, *manner*.  
Moltiplici, *numerous*.  
Montagna, monte, *mountain*.  
Morrà, *he will die*.  
Morte, *death*.  
Mosse, *he moved*.  
Mostrare, *to show*.  
Mostrasi, *she shows herself*.  
Movi, *you move*.  
Movimento, *movement*.  
Muova, *it moves*.  
Muto, *dumb, dumb-struck*.

N

Narrare, *to narrate*.  
Nastro, *ribbon*.  
Nato, *born*.  
Naufrago, *shipwrecked*.  
Nembo, cloud, *storm*.  
Neri, *black*.  
Neve, *snow*.  
Ninfa, *nymph*.  
Nodo, *knot*.  
Nome, *name*.  
Non, *not*.  
Noto, *known*.  
Notte, *night*.  
Novella, *new*.  
Nozze, *marriage*.  
Nulla, *nonentity*.  
Nulla, *nothing*.  
Nunzio, *announcement*.  
Nuovo, *new*.

O

O, *or, either*.  
Obbedire, *to obey*.  
Oblio, *oblivion*.  
Occhio, *eye*.  
Odio, *I hate*.  
Odore, *perfume*.  
Offeso, *offended*.  
Ogni, *each, every*.  
Ognor, *always*.  
Ognuno, *any one*.  
Oltra, *beyond*.  
Oltraggio, *outrage*.  
Oltre, *besides*.  
Ombra, *shade*.  
Onda, *wave*.  
Onde, *by which*.  
Onesta, *bonest, modest*.  
Onore, *honour*.  
Onta, *shame*.  
Opra, *work*.

Or, ora, *hour, now*.  
Orba, *bereaved*.  
Orfanello, *orphan*.  
Oro, *gold*.  
Orma, *mark, footprint*.  
Ornato, *adorned*.  
Orno, *ash-tree*.  
Oscuro, *obscure*.  
Ottiene, *he obtains*.  
Ove, *where*.  
Ozio, *idleness*.

P

Pace, *peace*.  
Padre, *father*.  
Pagina, *page*.  
Pago, *satisfied*.  
Palazzo, *palace*.  
Pallida, *pale*.  
Palpitando, *with a beating heart*.  
Pane, *bread*.  
Par (pare), *it appears*.  
Parea (pareva), *it appeared*.  
Parecchi, *several*.  
Parevami, *it appeared to me*.  
Parlano, *they speak*.  
Parola, *word*.  
Particolare, *particular*.  
Passa, *it passes*.  
Passato, *past*.  
Paura, *fear*.  
Pendere, *to hang*.  
Pendeva, *was hanging*.  
Pendice, *brow of the bill*.  
Pendio, *incline*.  
Penna, *feather*.  
Pensando, *thinking*.  
Pensare, *to think*.  
Pensoso, *thoughtful*.  
Pentita, *repenting*.  
Per, *through, in order to, for*.  
Perchè, *why*.  
Percossa, *struck*.  
Pellegrina, *wandering*.  
Permise, *he permitted*.  
Periglio, *danger*.  
Persona, *person*.  
Pesa, *it weighs*.  
Petto, *breast*.  
Pezzo, *bit*.  
Piace, *it pleases*.  
Piacente, *charming*.  
Piacchia, *it pleases*.  
Piacere, *pleasure*.  
Piangere, *to weep*.  
Piano, *plain*.  
Piantai, *I planted*.  
Pianto, *weeping*.  
Piazza, *square*.  
Piede, piè, *foot*.  
Pieno, *full*.  
Pietà, *pity, sympathy*.  
Pietoso, *compassionate*.  
Pinge, *it paints*.  
Piombo, *lead*.  
Più, *more, il più, the most*.  
Placido, *placid*.  
Platano, *plane-tree*.  
Poco, *po, little*.  
Poco lontano, *not far off*.  
Poggio, *hill*.  
Poi, *after, then*.  
Polvere, *dust*.  
Ponte, *bridge*.  
Portarmi, *to offer me*.  
Portare, *to carry, to wear*.  
Porzioncella, *small share*.  
Pose, *it placed*.  
Posi, *you rest*.  
Posò, *he rested*.  
Posteri, *posteriority*.  
Potenza, *power*.  
Potere, *power, to be able*.  
Poveretta, *poor creature*.  
Prato, *meadow*.  
Preda, *booty*.  
Preghiera, *prayer*.  
Premio, *reward*.  
Prendere, *to take*.  
Prepari, *you prepare yourself*.  
Presi, *I took*.  
Presso, *near*.  
Presto, *quick*.  
Preziosi, *precious*.  
Prigione, *prison*.  
Primavera, *spring*.  
Primo, *first*.  
Principe, *prince*.  
Privo, *deprived*.  
Procellosa, *stormy*.  
Proda, *shore*.  
Promontorio, *promontory*.  
Prova, *he proves*.  
Provò, *he experienced*.  
Prudenza, *prudence*.  
Pruno, *bush*.  
Pudica, *modest*.  
Punto, *point*.  
Puntura, *pain*.  
Può, *he or it can*.  
Pupilla, *pupil (of the eye)*.  
Pur (pure), *merely, yet*.  
Pur dianzi, *just now*.  
Purgatorio, *purgatory*.

Q  
 Quadro, *picture*.  
 Qual, *like*.  
 Qualche, *some, any*.  
 Quale, *who, whom, which*.  
 Quando, *when*.  
 Quanti, *how many, as many*.  
 Quanto, *how much*.  
 Quei, *those*.  
 Quel, quello, *that*.  
 Questa, *this*.  
 Qui, *here*.

R  
 Rabbuffato, *with his hair in disorder*.  
 Raccogli, *collect*.  
 Raccomandava, *I recommended*.  
 Raggio, *ray*.  
 Rai, *rays*.  
 Ramo, *branch*.  
 Rappresentate, *representing*.  
 Reggia, *royal abode*.  
 Regno, *power*.  
 Repentina, *sudden*.  
 Resta, *it remains*.  
 Resto, *remainder*.  
 Riaprendo, *re-opening*.  
 Ricamo, *embroidery*.  
 Ricantando, *singing over again*.  
 Ricchezza, *richness*.  
 Riconoscerlo, *recognise him*.  
 Riconosco, *I recognise*.  
 Ricrea, *it revives*.  
 Ricuso, *I reject*.  
 Rimarrai, *you will remain*.  
 Rimase, *remained*.  
 Rimasto, *remained*.  
 Rinchiudesse, *shut itself up again*.  
 Rinchiuso, *kept*.  
 Rincomincia, *it recommences*.  
 Ringraziava, *I thanked*.  
 Rinsera, *it contains*.  
 Rio, *wicked*.  
 Ripigliare, *to retake*.  
 Ripenso, *be thought again*.  
 Rise, *be laughed*.  
 Risorse, *be rose again*.  
 Risplende, *it shines*.  
 Risponda, *it answers*.  
 Rispondermi, *to answer me*.  
 Rispose, *be replied*.  
 Risserrarsi, *closing itself up again*.

Ristette, *be stopped*.  
 Ritornare, *to return*.  
 Ritrovi, *you find*.  
 Riuerdisce, *it becomes green again*.  
 Riva, *bank*.  
 Riveste, *it clothes itself again*.  
 Rivo, *brook*.  
 Rompe, *it breaks*.  
 Rondinella, *swallow*.  
 Roseo, *rosy*.  
 Rosseggia, *it shines red and bright*.  
 Rugosa, *wrinkled*.  
 Rumore, *noise*.  
 Ruscello, *brook*.

S  
 Sacro, *devoted*.  
 Sale, *it ascends*.  
 Salutare, *to greet*.  
 Salvarlo, *save him*.  
 Salvarsi, *save themselves*.  
 Sanno, *they know*.  
 Sanami, *cure me*.  
 Sapere, *to know*.  
 Sapesti, *you knew*.  
 Sappi, *know*.  
 Sbarre, *iron bars*.  
 Sbuccia, *it opens its leaves*.  
 Scarso, *scanty*.  
 Scernere, *to perceive*.  
 Scese, *be descended*.  
 Schiuse, *be opened*.  
 Scioglie, *be utters*.  
 Sclamò, *be exclaimed*.  
 Scomporre, *to spoil*.  
 Sconsolata, *disconsolate*.  
 Scorrea, *it was running over*.  
 Scorri, *you cross*.  
 Scosse, *be shook*.  
 Scritto, *written*.  
 Scrivi, *write*.  
 Scure, *batchet*.  
 Se, *it*.  
 Secolo, *century*.  
 Sega, *saw*.  
 Segno, *sign*.  
 Sembra, *it seems*.  
 Sempre, *always*.  
 Seno, *sen, bosom*.  
 Senso, *sense, sentiment*.  
 Sente, *be bears*.  
 Sentendosi, *bearing herself*.  
 Sentenza, *decision*.  
 Sentiero, *path*.  
 Sentire, *to feel*.  
 Sentiva, *I felt*.

Senza, *without*.  
 Seppe, *be was apprised of it*.  
 Sera, *evening*.  
 Sessanta, *sixty*.  
 Settembre, *September*.  
 Sfera, *sphere*.  
 Sfolgorante, *shining*.  
 Sfolgoravano, *they shone*.  
 Sguardo, *look*.  
 Sì, *yes, so, so much*.  
 Siccome, *just as*.  
 Siepe, *hedge*.  
 Signore, *Lord*.  
 Silenzio, *silence*.  
 Silvestro, *woodland*.  
 Simile, *similar*.  
 Simpatia, *sympathy*.  
 Sin che, *until*.  
 Smarrisce, *it loses itself*.  
 Smorta, *pale*.  
 So, *I know*.  
 Soave, *suave*.  
 Soglio, *throne*.  
 Sogno, *dream*.  
 Sol (sole), *sun*.  
 Solitaria, *solitary*.  
 Solo, *sole, alone, only*.  
 Somigliare, *to resemble*.  
 Sommessi, *humbly*.  
 Sonito, *sound, din*.  
 Sonno, *full of sleep*.  
 Sopraccigli, *eyebrows*.  
 Sorge, *be rises*.  
 Sorriso, *smile*.  
 Sospirando, *sighing*.  
 Sospiro, *sigh*.  
 Sotto, *under*.  
 Sovra, *upon*.  
 Sovvenire, *remembrance*.  
 Sparire, *to disappear*.  
 Sparso, *disbevelled, scattered*.  
 Sparve, *be disappeared*.  
 Spavento, *dread*.  
 Spento, *extinguished, dead*.  
 Speranza, *hope*.  
 Sperare, *to hope*.  
 Sperdi, *do thou divert*.  
 Spirabile, *breathing*.  
 Spirano, *they breathe*.  
 Spiro, *spirit*.  
 Spirto, *spirto, spirit*.  
 Spoglia, *corpse*.  
 Sposa, *bride*.  
 Sposo, *husband*.  
 Sta, *it is, it remains*.  
 Stagione, *season*.  
 Stampare, *to mark*.  
 Stanca, *fatigued*.

Stanza, *room*.  
 Stava, *I or he was, he stood*.  
 Stelo, *stem of a plant*.  
 Steso, *stretched*.  
 Stesso, *same, similar, himself, itself*.  
 Stette, *he stood*.  
 Stile, *style*.  
 Stilla, *it infuses*.  
 Strada, *street*.  
 Strana, *strange*.  
 Strazio, *torture*.  
 Struggitore, *destroying*.  
 Strumento, *tool*.  
 Stupendo, *stupendous*.  
 Subito, *sudden, at once*.  
 Suo, *his*.  
 Suoi, *his*.  
 Suolo, *soil*.  
 Suonavano, *they sounded*.  
 Superba, *proud*.  
 Superiore, *superior, bigger*.  
 Suscita, *it raises*.  
 Sventolarti, *to fan*.

## T

Tacito, *silent*.  
 Tacque, *he was silent*.  
 Tagliava, *he was cutting*.  
 Tale, *such*.  
 Talvolta, *sometimes*.  
 Tanto, *so much, so great*.  
 Temperata, *tempered*.  
 Tempestuoso, *stormy*.  
 Tempo, *time*.  
 Tempre, *temperament*.  
 Tenèa dietro, *he followed*.  
 Tenebre, *darkness*.  
 Tenda, *tent*.  
 Tenerezza, *tenderness*.  
 Terra, *earth*.  
 Tesa, *extended, intent*.  
 Testa, *head*.  
 Tetto, *roof*.  
 Tiene, *he holds*.

Tolto, *taken away*.  
 Tomba, *tomb*.  
 Torbide, *confused*.  
 Tosto, *soon*.  
 Traèa (traeva), *I dragged*.  
 Trapassero, *I shall outpass*.  
 Trascorsa, *past*.  
 Travagliava, *he was working*.  
 Tre, *three*.  
 Trecce, *tresses*.  
 Tremare, *to tremble*.  
 Trepida, *trembling, fearful*.  
 Tristo, *sad*.  
 Trionfo, *triumph*.  
 Trovare, *to find*.  
 Tulipano, *tulip*.  
 Tuo, *thy*.  
 Tuoi, *thy*.  
 Turbine, *storm*.  
 Tutto, *all*.

## U

Udire, *to hear*.  
 Ultimo, *last*.  
 Umano, *human, humane*.  
 Umiltà, *humility*.  
 Umore, *moisture*.  
 Un po' (poco), *somewhat*.  
 Uomo, *man*.  
 Urna, *urn*.  
 Usanza, *custom*.  
 Uscisse, *it might come out*.  
 Uscissero, *they might go out*.  
 Usignuolo, *nightingale*.

## V

Va, *he goes*.  
 Vago, *beautiful, charming*.  
 Vale, *it is worth*.  
 Valida, *helping*.  
 Valle, *valley*.  
 Vallo, *bulwark*.  
 Vantaggio, *advantage*.  
 Varie, *various*.  
 Vasta, *vast*.

Vecchio, *old man*.  
 Vedere, *to see*.  
 Vedovetta, *little widow*.  
 Venezia, *Venice*.  
 Veniva, *he used to come*.  
 Venne, *he, she, or it came*.  
 Venuto, *come*.  
 Verde, *green*.  
 Verga, *wand*.  
 Verginella, *young maiden*.  
 Vermiglio, *red*.  
 Vero, *true, truth*.  
 Verone, *verandah*.  
 Verrà, *he will come*.  
 Vezzoso, *charming*.  
 Vicino, *near*.  
 Vide, *he saw*.  
 Vidi, *I saw*.  
 Viene, *he, she, or it comes*.  
 Vigna, *vineyard*.  
 Viola, *violet*.  
 Virtù, *virtue*.  
 Visibile, *visible*.  
 Viso, *face*.  
 Vista, *sight, view*.  
 Vita, *life*.  
 Vittoria, *victory*.  
 Vivace, *lively*.  
 Vivere, *to live*.  
 Vivo, *living, vivid*.  
 Voce, *voice*.  
 Vogliono, *they will*.  
 Volendo, *wishing*.  
 Volle, *he willed*.  
 Volo, *flight*.  
 Volse (si), *he turned*.  
 Volsero, *they turned themselves*.  
 Volta, *time, vault*.  
 Volto, *face*.  
 Vuoi, *you will*.

## Z

Zeffiro, *zephyr*.

## VOCABULARY.

## PART II.

## ENGLISH—ITALIAN.

## A

*Abandon*, v. a. abbandonare.  
*Ability*, abilità.  
*Able*, abile.  
*About*, circa.  
*Above*, sopra.—*mentioned*,  
 suddetto.  
*Abruptly*, bruscamente.  
*Abuse*, assenza.  
*Abundance*, abbondanza.  
*Abundantly*, abbondanta-  
 mente.  
*Abys*, golfo, abisso.  
*Accept*, v. a. accettare.  
*Accompany*, v. a. accompa-  
 gnare.  
*Accomplish*, v. a. compire.  
*Accomplished*, compito.  
*According*, secondo.  
*Accusation*, accusa.  
*Accuse*, v. a. accusare.  
*Acquaintance*, conoscenza.  
*Acquit*, v. a. assolvere.  
*Act*, atto.  
*Act*, v. a. agire.  
*Action*, azione, f.  
*Additional*, di soprappiù.  
*Address*, indirizzo.  
*Admiration*, ammirazione, f.  
*Admire*, v. a. ammirare.  
*Admission*, entrata.  
*Adorn*, v. a. adornare.  
*Advance*, v. a. avanzarsi.  
*Advantage*, vantaggio.  
*Advice*, consiglio.  
*Advise*, v. a. consigliare.  
*Æneas*, Enea.  
*Æneid*, Eneide.  
*Affair*, affare, m.  
*Affection*, affetto.  
*Afflicted*, afflitto.  
*Afford*, v. a. dare, procu-  
 rare.

*After*, dopo.  
*Afternoon*, dopo pranzo.  
*Afterwards*, dopo.  
*Again*, di nuovo, ancora.  
*Against*, contro.  
*Age*, età, secolo.  
*Ago*, fa.  
*Agreeable*, piacevole.  
*Air*, aria.  
*Album*, album.  
*All*, tutto, tutti.  
*Allow*, v. a. permettere.  
*Almost*, quasi.  
*Along*, lungo.  
*Alps*, Alpi, f.  
*Already*, già.  
*Also*, anche, ancora, altresì,  
 eziandio.  
*Altar*, altare, m.  
*Although*, benchè, sebbene.  
*Always*, sempre.  
*Ambitious*, ambizioso.  
*America*, America.  
*American*, Americano.  
*Amiable*, amabile.  
*Ammunition*, munizione.  
*Among*, fra, tra.  
*Ancestors*, antenati, prede-  
 cessori.  
*Ancient*, antico.  
*And*, e, ed.  
*Animal*, animale.  
*Answer*, v. n. rispondere.  
*Antagonist*, avversario, ri-  
 vale.  
*Anxious*, ansioso.  
*Any*, del dello, &c., alcuno,  
 &c.  
*Any*, chiunque, ognuno,  
 qualunque. — *thing*,  
 qualche cosa.  
*Anyone*, alcuno.  
*Apartment*, appartamento.

*Appear*, v. n. apparire.  
*Appearance*, apparenza.  
*Apple*, mela, pomo.  
*Approach*, v. n. avvicinarsi.  
*Approve*, v. a. approvare.  
*Aptly*, attamente.  
*Arab*, *Arabian*, Arabo.  
*Arbiter*, arbitro.  
*Architect*, achitetto.  
*Argue*, v. n. argomentare,  
 discorrere, ragionare.  
*Arm*, braccio.  
*Army*, esercito, armata.  
*Arrange*, v. a. porre in or-  
 dine.  
*Arrangement*, accomodamen-  
 to.  
*Arrest*, v. a. arrestare.  
*Arrival*, arrivo.  
*Arrive*, v. n. arrivare.  
*Art*, arte, f.  
*Article*, articolo.  
*Artificial*, artificiale, finto.  
*Artillery*, artiglieria.  
*Artist*, artista.  
*As*, mentre, come.  
*As far as*, fino a.  
*As soon as*, tosto che.  
*Asia*, Asia.  
*Ask*, v. a. chiedere, doman-  
 dare.  
*Assail*, v. a. assalire.  
*Assembly*, adunanza.  
*Assertion*, asserzione, f.  
*Assiduous*, assiduo.  
*Assistance*, aiuto.  
*Assure*, v. a. assicurare.  
 *Astonished*, attonito.  
*Astronomer*, astronomo.  
*Astronomy*, astronomia.  
*At a ad.—once*, subito.  
 *Athenian*, Ateniese.  
*Athletic*, d'atleta.

*Attack*, attacco, assalto.  
*Attack*, v. a. attaccare.  
*Attend*, v. a. acudire.  
*Attendant*, servo.  
*Attention*, attenzione, f.  
*Attract*, v. a. attrarre.  
*Aunt*, zia.  
*Austrian*, Austriaco.  
*Author*, autore.  
*Avenge* (*one's-self*), v. r. vendicarsi.  
*Avoid*, v. a. evitare.  
*Awake*, v. a. svegliare.

B

*Back*, dosso, schiena.  
*Bad*, cattivo.  
*Badly*, male.  
*Baggage*, bagaglio.  
*Ball*, palla, ballo.  
*Banish*, v. a. bandire.  
*Banker*, banchiere.  
*Bankrupt*, fallito. *To turn a bankrupt*, fare fallita.  
*Barbarous*, barbaro.  
*Bark*, barca, scorza.  
*Basket*, canestro, paniere.  
*Battery*, batteria.  
*Battle*, battaglia.  
*Bay*, baia.  
*Be*, v. n. and auxiliary, *essere*—*able*, potere.—*better off*, esser più ricco.—*born*, nascere.—*due*, dovere.—*fond*, amare.—*enough*, bastare.—*obliged*, dovere.—*necessary*, abbisognare.—*over*, esser finito.—*sorry*, rincrescere.—*unbecoming*, disdire.  
*Bear*, v. a. portare, produrre.  
*Beat*, v. a. battere.—*down*, buttar giù.  
*Beautiful*, bello, leggiadro.  
*Beauty*, bellezza.  
*Because*, perchè.  
*Become*, v. n. divenire.  
*Bed*, letto.—*room*, camera da letto.  
*Before*, avanti, prima di, davanti.  
*Beg*, v. a. pregare.  
*Begin*, v. n. principiare.  
*Behave*, v. n. comportarsi.  
*Behind*, in dietro di dietro.  
*Belgium*, Belgio.

*Believe*, v. n. credere.  
*Bell*, campanello.  
*Belong*, v. n. appartenere.  
*Bench*, scranno.  
*Bertha*, Berta.  
*Beseech*, v. a. pregare.  
*Besiege*, v. a. assediare.  
*Best*, migliore.  
*Betray*, v. a. tradire.  
*Better*, meglio, migliore.  
*Between*, *between*, fra, tra.  
*Big*, grosso, grande.  
*Bind*, v. a. legare.  
*Bird*, uccello.—*nest*, nido d'uccelli.  
*Birthday*, giorno di nascita.  
*Black*, nero.  
*Blacksmith*, fabbroferraio.  
*Blame*, v. a. biasimare.  
*Blotting-paper*, carta succhiante.  
*Blue*, turchino, azzurro.  
*Boat*, barca, battello.  
*Body*, corpo.  
*Bonnet*, cappellino.  
*Book*, libro.—*binder*, legatore di libri.  
*Boot*, stivale, m.  
*Border*, margine, m. orlo, spiaggia.  
*Botany*, botanica.  
*Both*, tutti e due, e...e.  
*Bottle*, bottiglia.  
*Boulogne*, Bologna.  
*Box*, scatola, cassetta.  
*Boy*, ragazzo, fanciullo.  
*Bracelet*, smaniglio.  
*Brandy*, acquavite.  
*Brass*, rame.  
*Brave*, bravo, animoso.  
*Bravely*, bravamente.  
*Breadth*, larghezza.  
*Break*, v. a. rompere.  
*Breakfast*, colazione, f.  
*Breakfast*, v. a. far colazione.  
*Breathe*, v. n. respirare.  
*Brick-dust*, polvere di mattoni.  
*Bridge*, ponte.  
*Brick*, brick.  
*Brilliant*, brillante.  
*Brim* (*of a hat*), le falde di un cappello.  
*Bring*, v. a. portare.  
*Brisk*, vivace, vispo.  
*British*, Britannico.  
*Brittle*, fragile.  
*Broad*, ampio, largo.

*Bronze*, bronzo.  
*Brook*, ruscello.  
*Brother*, fratello.—*in-law*, cognato.  
*Brown*, bruno.  
*Browse*, v. a. pascersi.  
*Brutus*, Bruto.  
*Build*, v. a. fabbricare.  
*Building*, edificio, fabbricato.  
*Bull-fight*, combattimento di cani con un toro.  
*Business*, affare, affari.  
*Buy*, affaccendato.  
*Busbody*, affannone.  
*But*, ma—*still*, però, eppure.  
*Buy*, v. a. comprare.

C

*Cabbage*, cavolo.  
*Cairo*, Cairo.  
*Call*, v. a. chiamare.  
*Cambria*, cambraia.  
*Camelia*, camelia.  
*Camp*, campo.  
*Can*, *I can*, posso; *we can*, possiamo.  
*Cannon*, cannone.  
*Canto*, canto.  
*Capaciousness*, capacità.  
*Capital* (*of a country*) la capitale; (*funds*) il capitale.  
*Captivate*, cattivarsi.  
*Caravansary*, caravanserglio.  
*Card*, carta.  
*Cardinal*, cardinale.  
*Care*, pensiero, cura.  
*Carpet*, tappeto.  
*Carriage*, carrozza, vettura.  
*Carry*, v. a. portare seco, portar via.  
*Case*, caso, soggetto.  
*Cassandra*, Cassandra.  
*Cast*, v. a. gettare.  
*Castle*, castello.  
*Cat*, gatto.  
*Catch*, acchiappare.—*bold of*, afferrare.  
*Cathedral*, cattedrale.  
*Cattle*, bestiame.  
*Cause*, causa, cagione.  
*Cause*, v. a. cagionare.  
*Caution*, cautela.  
*Cease*, v. n. cessare, desistere.  
*Cedar*, cedro.



- Celebrate*, v. a. celebrare.  
*Celebrated*, cèlebre.  
*Celebrity*, celebrità.  
*Cell*, cella.  
*Cement*, cemento.  
*Century*, secolo.  
*Ceremony*, cerimonia.  
*Certainly*, certamente.  
*Chain*, catena.  
*Chair*, sedia. *Arm—seg-*  
     giola a braccioli.  
*Chairman*, presidente.  
*Challenge*, sfida.  
*Chance*, caso, ventura.  
*Change*, v. a. cambiare.  
*Character*, carattere, m.  
*Charitable*, caritatevole.  
*Charity*, carità.  
*Charles*, Carlo.  
*Charm*, incanto.  
*Charming*, vezzoso, vago.  
*Cheek*, guancia, gota.  
*Cheese*, cacio, formaggio.  
*Cherish*, v. a. amare.  
*Berry*, ciriegia.  
*Chicken*, pollastro.  
*Child*, fanciullo.  
*Chimney-piece*, quadro di  
     cammino.  
*China*, porcellana.  
*Chirp*, v. n. cantare.  
*Chocolate*, cioccolato.  
*Choleric*, colérico.  
*Choose*, v. a. scegliere.  
*Christmas*, Natale.  
*Chronology*, cronologia.  
*Church*, chiesa.  
*Circumstance*, circostanza.  
*City*, città.  
*Clean*, netto, pulito.  
*Clever*, abile, destro.  
*Climate*, clima.  
*Clock*, pendolo, orologio.  
     *O'clock*, (*See rule 341.*)  
*Cloth*, tela, panno.  
*Clothes*, panni.  
*Cloud*, nube, nuvola.  
*Coal*, carbone, fossile.  
*Coast*, costa, spiaggia.  
*Coat*, vestito, abito.  
*Coffee and coffee-house*, caffè.  
*Cold*, freddo.  
*Colonel*, colonnello.  
*Colour*, colore.  
*Come*, v. n. venire—*across*,  
     capitare, incontrare,—  
     *back*, ritornare,—*up*,  
     venir su, avvicinarsi.
- Comedy*, commedia.  
*Comely*, vago, avvenente.  
*Comfortable*, confortevole,  
     commodo.  
*Command*, v. a. comandare.  
*Commence*, v. a. principiare.  
*Commerce*, commercio.  
*Commercial*, commerciale.  
*Commit*, v. a. commettere.  
*Companion*, compagno.  
*Compare*, v. a. paragonare.  
*Compass*, bussola.  
*Complexion*, carnagione, f.  
*Compliment*, complimento.  
*Compose*, v. a. comporre.  
*Conceal*, v. a. celare.  
*Conclude*, v. a. concludere.  
*Condemn*, v. a. condannare.  
*Condition*, condizione, f.  
*Conduct*, v. a. condurre.  
*Conduct*, condotta.  
*Confess*, v. a. confessare.  
*Confidence*, confidenza.  
*Confine*, v. a. limitarsi.  
*Confused*, confuso.  
*Confusion*, confusione, f.  
*Conjugate*, v. a. coniugare.  
*Conquer*, v. a. conquistare.  
*Conscience*, coscienza.  
*Conscientious*, coscienzioso.  
*Consent*, v. a. consentire.  
*Consider*, v. a. considerare.  
*Considerable*, considerabile.  
*Console*, v. a. consolare.  
*Conspicuous*, cospicuo.  
*Constitute*, v. a. costituire.  
*Construct*, v. a. costruire.  
*Contain*, v. a. contenere.  
*Continue*, v. a. continuare.  
*Contradict*, v. a. contraddire.  
*Contrary*, contrario. *On the—*  
     al contrario, anzi.  
*Contribute*, v. a. contribuire.  
*Convenient*, conveniente.  
*Conversation*, conversazione, f.  
*Convolutus*, convoluto.  
*Coolness*, freschezza.  
*Copious*, abbondante.  
*Copper*, lottone.  
*Copy*, copia.  
*Copy-book*, libro d'esempi.  
*Coriolanus*, Coriolano.  
*Cork*, sughero.—*screw*, tira  
     turacolo.  
*Corn*, frumento.  
*Cornelia*, Cornelia.  
*Cost*, v. n. costare.  
*Costly*, dispendioso.
- Cottage*, capanna.  
*Cotton*, cotone, m.  
*Countenance*, viso, aspetto,  
     carnagione, f.  
*Country*, paese, campagna,  
     provincia.—*house*, casa  
     di campagna.—*man*,  
     compatriota.  
*Couple*, coppia, paio.  
*Courage*, coraggio.  
*Court*, corte, f. cortile, m.  
*Cousin*, cugino, cugina.  
*Cover*, v. a. coprire.  
*Craggy*, scosceso, roccato.  
*Crime*, delitto.  
*Criminal*, criminale.  
*Cross*, v. a. attraversare.  
*Crowd*, calca, folla.  
*Crown*, corona.  
*Cruel*, crudele.  
*Cruiser*, vascello di corso.  
*Cry*, v. a. gridare.  
*Crystal*, cristallo.  
*Cultivate*, v. a. coltivare.  
*Curious*, curioso.  
*Custom*, costume, m.—*house*,  
     dogana.
- D
- Daily*, quotidiano.  
*Damp*, umido.  
*Danger*, pericolo.  
*Dangerous*, pericoloso.  
*Daring*, ardito.  
*Dark*, oscuro, tenebroso.  
*Day*, giorno, dì.  
*Deceive*, v. a. abbagliare.  
*Deal*, v. a. negoziare. *To*  
     *have to—*aver da fare.  
*Dean*, decano.  
*Dear*, caro.  
*Death*, morte, f.  
*Debt*, debito.  
*Decapitation*, decapitazione, f.  
*Deceit*, fraude, f.  
*Decide*, v. a. decidere.  
*Decision*, decisione, f.  
*Deed*, azione, f. fatto.  
*Deep*, profondo.  
*Defeat*, v. a. sconfiggere.  
*Defiance*, sfida.  
*Degree*, grado, segno.  
*Delight*, delizia.  
*Delight*, v. a. diletare.  
*Delightful*, dilettevole.  
*Dell*, valle, f. vallone, m.  
*Demetrious*, Demetrio.  
*Demolish*, v. a. demolire.

*Deny*, v. a. negare.  
*Departure*, partenza.  
*Depend*, v. n. dipendere.  
*Depict*, v. a. dipingere.  
*Depth*, profondità.  
*Describe*, v. a. descrivere.  
*Detain*, v. a. ritenere.  
*Description*, descrizione, f.  
*Deserve*, v. n. meritare.  
*Desire*, v. a. pregare, desiderare.  
*Dessert*, dopopasto.  
*Determine*, v. a. determinare.  
*Diamond*, diamante, m.  
*Dictate*, precetti.  
*Dictionary*, dizionario.  
*Die*, v. n. morire.  
*Difference*, differenza.  
*Different*, differente.  
*Difficult*, difficile.  
*Diligent*, diligente.  
*Diligently*, diligentemente.  
*Diminish*, v. n. diminuire.  
*Dine*, v. n. pranzare.  
*Dining-room*, sala da pranzo.  
*Dinner*, pranzo.  
*Dirty*, sporco, lordo.  
*Disaffection*, scontento.  
*Disarm*, v. a. disarmare.  
*Disconcert*, v. a. sconcertare.  
*Discover*, v. a. scoprire.  
*Discovery*, scoperta.  
*Discuss*, v. a. discutere.  
*Discussion*, discussione, f.  
*Disease*, malattia.  
*Disguise*, travestimento.  
*Dish*, vivanda, piatto.  
*Disonest*, disonesto.  
*Despise*, v. a. disprezzare.  
*Displease*, v. a. dispiacere.  
*Distant*, distante.  
*Distinctly*, chiaramente.  
*Do*, v. a. fare.—*How do you do?* come sta? or come state?  
*Doctor*, dottore.  
*Dog*, cane.  
*Door*, porta.  
*Down*, giù.  
*Dosen*, dozzina.  
*Draw*, v. a. disegnare.  
*Dreadful*, spaventevole.  
*Dream*, sogno.  
*Dress*, abito, veste.—v. a. vestire.—*one's-self*, vestirsi.  
*Drink*, v. a. bere.

*Drive*, v. a. guidare.—*from*, scacciare.  
*Droll*, originale.  
*Ductile*, duttile.  
*Duel*, duello.  
*Durable*, durabile.  
*During*, durante.  
*Dust*, polvere, f.  
*Duty*, dovere, m.  
*Dwarf*, nano.

E

*Eagle*, aquila.  
*Ear*, orecchio.  
*Early*, per tempo.  
*Earn*, v. a. guadagnare.  
*Earth*, terra.  
*Easily*, facilmente.  
*Easy-chair*, poltrona.  
*Eat*, v. a. mangiare.—*up*, logorare.  
*Edifice*, edificio.  
*Education*, educazione, f.  
*Edward*, Odoardo.  
*Efface*, v. a. cancellare.  
*Effect*, effetto.  
*Egg*, uovo.  
*Egypt*, Egitto.  
*Eight*, otto.—*eighteen*, diciotto.—*eighty*, ottavo.  
*Either*, o...o, ovvero...ovvero.  
*Elect*, v. a. eleggere.  
*Election*, elezione, f.  
*Elizabeth*, Elisabetta.  
*Eloquence*, eloquenza.  
*Elope*, v. a. sfuggire.  
*Embark*, v. n. imbarcarsi.  
*Embellishment*, abbellimento.  
*Emblem*, emblema, m.  
*Embroider*, v. a. ricamare.  
*Eminent*, eminente.  
*Encamp*, v. n. accamparsi.  
*Encourage*, v. a. incoraggiare.

*End*, fine, f. disegno.  
*Endow*, v. a. dotare.  
*Enemy*, nemico.  
*England*, Inghilterra. *English*, and *Englishman*, Inglese.  
*Enjoy*, v. a. godere.  
*Enough*, abbastanza.  
*Enrich*, v. a. arricchire.  
*Enter*, v. n. entrare.  
*Enterprise*, intrapresa.  
*Enthusiasm*, entusiasmo.  
*Entirely*, intieramente.

*Entreat*, v. a. supplicare.  
*Entreaty*, preghiera.  
*Equal*, eguale, simile.  
*Equal*, v. a. pareggiare.  
*Erect*, v. a. erigere inalzare.  
*Escape*, fuga.  
*Escape*, v. n. scappare, fuggire.  
*Essay*, saggio.  
*Establish*, v. a. stabilire.  
*Esteem*, stima.  
*Esteem*, v. a. stimare.  
*Europe*, Europa.  
*Evening*, sera.  
*Event*, evento.  
*Ever*, mai, sempre.  
*Every*, ogni.—*one*, ognuno.—*thing*, tutto.—*body*, tutti.

*Everywhere*, da per tutto.  
*Examination*, esame, m.  
*Exceedingly*, eccessivamente.  
*Excellence*, eccellenza.  
*Except*, eccetto, tranne.  
*Excite*, v. a. eccitare.  
*Execration*, esecrazione, f.  
*Execute*, v. a. eseguire.  
*Exempt*, v. a. esentare.  
*Exercise*, esercizio, tema.  
*Exhibit*, v. a. offrire.  
*Exhibition*, esposizione, f.  
*Exile*, esiglio.—v. a. esigliare.  
*Expect*, v. a. aspettare.  
*Expense*, spesa.  
*Explain*, v. a. spiegare.  
*Explanation*, spiegazione, f.  
*Exploit*, gesto.  
*Extend*, v. a. stendere.  
*Extent*, ampiezza.  
*Extraordinary*, straordinario.  
*Extravagance*, stravaganza.  
*Eye*, occhio.

F

*Facility*, facilità.  
*Fair*, biondo, bello.  
*Faith*, fede, credenza.  
*Faithfully*, fedelmente.  
*Family*, famiglia.  
*Famous*, famoso.  
*Far*, lontano.  
*Farm*, podere.  
*Farther*, più lontano.  
*Fashion*, moda, guisa.  
*Fast*, presto.  
*Fat*, grasso.

*Father*, padre.  
*Faultless*, perfetto.  
*Favour*, favore.—v. a. favorire.  
*Favourable*, favorevole.  
*Favourite*, favorito.  
*Fear*, timore.—v. n. temere.  
*Features*, fattezze.  
*February*, febbraio.  
*Feigned*, finto.  
*Ferdinand*, Ferdinando.  
*Fern*, felce, f.  
*Ferocity*, ferocità.  
*Fetch*, v. n. andare a cercare.  
*Few*, pochi, poche.  
*Field*, campo.  
*Fifth*, quinto.  
*Fig and fig-tree*, fico.  
*Fight*, v. n. combattere.  
*Figure*, figura.  
*Filial*, filiale.  
*Find*, v. a. trovare.  
*Fine*, bello, fino.  
*Finish*, v. a. finire.  
*Fire*, fuoco.—wood, legna.  
*First*, primo.  
*Fish*, pesce.  
*Five*, cinque.  
*Flag*, bandiera.  
*Fleet*, flotta.  
*Florence*, Firenze.  
*Flower*, fiore, m.  
*Flowery*, fiorito.  
*Fly*, v. n. fuggire, volare.—into a passion, andare in collera.  
*Follow*, v. a. seguire.  
*Following*, seguente.  
*Food*, cibo, vivanda.  
*Foot*, piede, m.  
*For*, per.  
*Force* v. a. forzare.  
*Forest*, foresta.  
*Forget*, v. n. scordarsi di.  
*Forgive*, v. a. perdonare.  
*Fork*, forchetta.  
*Form*, forma.  
*Form*, v. a. formare.  
*Former*, d'altrevolte.  
*Formerly*, altre volte.  
*Fortress*, fortezza.  
*Fortune*, fortuna.  
*Found*, v. a. fondare.  
*Foundation*, fondamento.  
*Fountain*, fontana.  
*Four*, quattro.—fourth, quarto.

*Fragrance*, fragranza.  
*Fragrant*, fragrante.  
*Frail*, fragile.  
*Frame*, cornice, f.  
*France*, Francia.  
*Francis*, Francesco.  
*Frankly*, francamente.  
*Frederick*, Federico.  
*Freeze*, v. n. gelare.  
*French*, Francese.  
*Freshness*, freschezza.  
*Friday*, venerdì.  
*Friend*, amico.  
*Friendship*, amicizia.  
*Frigate*, fregata.  
*Frightened*, spaventato.  
*From*, da.  
*Fruit*, frutto.  
*Fulfil*, v. a. adempire.  
*Full*, pieno.  
*Fund*, fondo.  
*Furnish*, v. a. ammobigliare.  
*Furniture*, mobili.

## G

*Gain*, v. a. guadagnare.  
*Gallery*, galleria.  
*Galley*, galera.  
*Game*, giuoco.  
*Garden*, giardino.  
*Gardener*, giardiniere.  
*Garrison*, presidio.  
 *Gather*, v. a. cogliere.  
*Gauls*, Galli.  
*General*, generale.—in chief, generalissimo.  
*Generally*, generalmente.  
*Generosity*, generosità.  
*Generous*, generoso.  
*Gentleman*, Signore.  
*Genuine*, naturale, vero.  
*Geography*, geografia.  
*George*, Giorgio.  
*German*, Tedesco.  
*Get*, v. a. guadagnare, ottenere.—dark, v. i. annotare.  
*Giant*, gigante.  
*Gift*, dono, regalo.  
*Girl*, fanciulla, ragazza.  
*Give*, v. a. dare.  
*Glance*, occhiata.  
*Glass*, bicchiere.  
*Gloomy*, buio, d'apparenza melanconica.  
*Glorious*, glorioso.  
*Glory*, gloria.  
*Glove*, guanto.

*Go*, v. n. andare.—out, uscire.—away, andar via.  
*Goat*, capra.  
*God*, Dio, Iddio.  
*Goddess*, dea.  
*Gold*, oro.  
*Good*, buono.  
*Good-bye*, addio.  
*Good-for-nothing fellow*, buono a niente.  
*Goods*, mobili.  
*Govern*, v. a. governare.  
*Government*, governo.  
*Grace*, grazia.  
*Graceful*, grazioso.  
*Gradually*, gradualmente.  
*Grammar*, grammatica.  
*Grand*, grande.—father, nonno avo.  
*Grant*, v. a. accordare.  
*Grapes*, uva.  
*Grave*, grave.  
*Gravity*, gravità.  
*Great*, grande.—A great deal, moltissimo.  
*Greatly*, moltissimo.  
*Greek*, Greco.  
*Grey*, grigio.  
*Groan*, v. n. gemere.  
*Ground-floor*, pianterreno.  
*Grow*, v. n. crescere.  
*Guard*, guardia.  
*Guarded by*, in potere di.  
*Guess*, v. n. indovinare.  
*Guide*, v. a. guidare.  
*Guilty*, colpevole.  
*Guinea*, ghinea.  
*Guitar*, chitarra.  
*Gun*, cannone, fucile.—powder, polvere da cannone.

## H

*Hair*, capelli.  
*Half*, metà, mezzo.—a crown, mezza corona.  
*Hall*, sala.  
*Hand*, mano, f.  
*Hand*, v. a. passare.  
*Handle*, manico.  
*Handsome*, bello, vezzoso.  
*Happen*, v. n. accadere.  
*Happy*, felice.  
*Harbour*, porto.  
*Hark!* senti! odi! sta attento!  
*Harmonious*, armonioso.

*Harold*, Aroldo.  
*Hat*, cappello.  
*Hate*, v. a. odiare.  
*Haughty*, altiero.  
*Hawthorn*, spinalba.  
*He*, egli, esso.  
*Head*, testa, capo.  
*Health*, salute, f.  
*Healthy*, sano.  
*Hear*, v. a. intēdere, sentire.  
*Heart*, cuore.  
*Heartily*, di cuore.  
*Heath*, macchia.  
*Heaven*, cielo.  
*Heavy*, pesante.  
*Hedge*, siepe, f.  
*Height*, altezza, apice.  
*Help*, v. a. aiutare.  
*Henry*, Enrico.  
*Here*, qui, quà.  
*Here it is*, ecco, eccola.  
*Here they are*, ecco, eccoli, eccole.  
*Hero*, eroe.  
*Highb*, alto, pronunciato.  
*Hill*, collina.  
*Historian*, storico.  
*History*, storia.  
*Hole*, buco.  
*Holiday*, vacanza.  
*Hollow*, cavità.  
*Home*, dimora. *At*—a casa.  
*Honest*, onesto.  
*Honestly*, onestamente.  
*Honesty*, onestà.  
*Honeysuckle*, caprifoglio.  
*Hope*, speranza.  
*Hope*, v. a. sperare.  
*Horn*, corno.  
*Horse*, cavallo.  
*Host*, oste.  
*Hostile*, ostile, nemico.  
*Hour*, ora.  
*House*, casa.  
*How ?* come ? — *many ?* quanti ?  
*However*, però, nulladimeno.  
*Humanity*, umanità.  
*Hunger*, fame, f.  
*Husband*, marito.

## I

*Ice*, ghiaccio.  
*Idiot*, idiota, sciocco.

*Idle*, pigro, ozioso.  
*If*, se.—*if you please*, per piacere.  
*Ignorance*, ignoranza.  
*Ignorant*, ignorante.  
*Illustration*, disegno.  
*Imitate*, v. a. imitare.  
*Immediate*, immediato.  
*Immediately*, immediatamente.  
*Immense*, immenso.  
*Immerge*, immergere.  
*Importance*, importanza.  
*Impossible*, impossibile.  
*Impressive*, impressivo.  
*Improve*, v. n. migliorare.  
*Imprudence*, imprudenza.  
*Imprudent*, imprudente.  
*In*, in.  
*Inanimated*, inanimato.  
*Incentive*, incentivo.  
*Inch*, dito.  
*Indeed*, in verità.  
*Indignation*, indignazione, f.  
*Induce*, v. a. indurre.  
*Industrious*, industrioso.  
*Industry*, industria.  
*Infirm*, infermo.  
*Influence*, influenza.  
*Influence*, v. a. influenzare.  
*Inform*, v. a. istruire.  
*Ingenious*, ingegnoso.  
*Ingratitude*, ingratitudine.  
*Inhabit*, abitare.  
*Ink*, inchiostro. — *stand*, calamaio.  
*Inn*, albergo.  
*Innocent*, innocente.  
*Innumerable*, innumerabile.  
*In order to*, per, onde.  
*Inquisitive*, curioso.  
*Insert*, v. a. inserire.  
*Inspid*, insipido.  
*Inspire*, v. a. ispirare.  
*Instead*, in luogo di, in vece di.  
*Institution*, istituzione, f.  
*Instrument*, istrumento.  
*Insult*, insulto.  
*Insult*, v. a. insultare.  
*Intelligible*, intelligibile.  
*Intend*, v. a. aver l'intenzione, fare i conti.  
*Intention*, intenzione, f.  
*Interest*, interesse.  
*Interesting*, interessante.  
*Internal*, interno.  
*Interrogate*, v. a. interrogare.

*Interperse*, v. a. framescolare.  
*Into*, in.  
*Intricate*, imbrogliato.  
*Introduce*, v. a. introdurre.  
*Invent*, v. a. inventare.  
*Invention*, invenzione, f.  
*Invest*, v. a. investire.  
*Invitation*, invitazione, f.  
*Invite*, v. a. invitare.  
*Irish*, Irlandese.  
*Iron*, ferro. *Wrought*—ferro battuto. *Cast*—ghisa.  
*Isabella*, Isabella.  
*Ireland*, Irlanda.  
*Island*, isola.  
*Issue*, successo, impressione.  
*It*, esso, lo, la.  
*Italian*, Italiano.  
*Italy*, Italia.  
*Ivory*, avorio.

## J

*Jacket*, giacchetta.  
*Jamaica*, Giamaica.  
*James*, Giacomo.  
*Jane*, Giovanna.  
*January*, gennaio.  
*Jasmine*, gelsomino.  
*Jest*, scherzo, burla.  
*Jewel*, gioia.  
*Jewellery*, gioielli.  
*John*, Giovanni.  
*Join*, v. a. congiungere.  
*Joppa*, Giappa.  
*Judge*, giudice.  
*Judicious*, giudizioso.  
*Jug*, boccia di terra.  
*Jump*, v. n. saltare.  
*Jupiter*, Giove.  
*Just now*, questo momento, ora appunto.  
*Justice*, giustizia.

## K

*Keep*, v. a. tenere.—*waiting*, far aspettare.  
*Kill*, v. a. uccidere.  
*Kind*, buono.  
*Kind*, qualità sorte, f.  
*Kindness*, bontà.  
*King*, re.  
*Kitchen*, cucina.—*garden*, orto.  
*Kneel*, v. n. inginocchiarsi.  
*Knife*, coltello.  
*Knight*, cavaliere.

*Knock*, v. a. picchiare, bussare.  
*Know*, sapere, conoscere.  
*Knowledge*, sapere.

## L

*Lace*, merletto.  
*Laconic*, laconico.  
*Laconically*, laconicamente.  
*Lad*, giovanetto.  
*Lady*, Signora. *Young—* signorina.  
*Lake*, lago.  
*Lame*, zoppo.  
*Lame*, v. a. storpiare.  
*Landlord*, proprietario, padrone.  
*Landscape*, paesaggio.  
*Language*, lingua.  
*Lapland*, Lapponia.  
*Large*, grande, grosso.  
*Last*, passato.—*night*, ieri sera.

*Latter*, questo, questi.  
*Laugh*, v. n. ridere.  
*Law*, legge, f.  
*Lay*, laico.  
*Lay*, v. a. mettere.—*down*, deporre.  
*Lazy*, pigro, infingardo.  
*Lead*, v. a. condurre.  
*Lean*, magro.  
*Learn*, v. a. imparare.—*by heart*, imparare a mente.

*Learning*, sapere.  
*Leave*, permissione, f.  
*Leave*, lasciare.  
*Lemon*, limone, m.  
*Lend*, v. a. prestare.  
*Length*, lunghezza. *At—* finalmente.  
*Less*, meno.  
*Lesson*, lezione, f.  
*Letter*, lettera.  
*Life*, vita.

*Light*, leggero.  
*Light*, v. a. accendere.  
*Lighten*, v. n. lampeggiare.  
*Like*, simile, come.  
*Like*, v. a. amare, andare a genio.  
*Likeness*, ritratto.  
*Likewise*, parimente, anche.  
*Lily*, giglio.  
*Limb*, membro.  
*Lime*, calcina.  
*Line*, linea, riga.

*Lion*, leone.  
*Listen*, v. n. ascoltare.  
*Little*, piccolo.  
*Live*, v. n. vivere.  
*Load*, v. a. caricare.  
*Loadstone*, calamita.  
*Lodge*, v. n. alloggiare.  
*Lofly*, alto, sublime.  
*London*, Londra.  
*Lonely*, isolato.  
*Long*, lungo.  
*Look*, v. a. guardare.—*upon*, considerare.—*out*, cercar degli occhi.  
*Looking-glass*, specchio.  
*Loss*, v. a. perdere.  
*Loss*, perdita.  
*Louis*, Luigi.  
*Louisa*, Luigia.  
*Love*, amore, m.  
*Love*, v. a. amare.  
*Luncheon*, merenda.

## M

*Magnificent*, magnifico.  
*Majestic*, maestoso.  
*Make*, v. a. fare.—*baste*, affrettarsi.—*up one's mind*, decidersi.  
*Man*, uomo.  
*Mankind*, genere umano.  
*Manly*, virile.  
*Manner*, maniera, usanza.  
*Mansion*, dimora, villa.  
*Manufacture*, v. a. fabbricare.  
*Many*, molti.  
*Map*, carta geografica.  
*Marble*, marmo.  
*March*, marzo.  
*Margaret*, Margherita.  
*Mariner*, marinaio.  
*Mark*, pegno.  
*Mark*, v. a. marcare.  
*Market-place*, piazza di mercato.

*Marry*, v. a. sposare.  
*Mars*, Marte.  
*Mars*, palude.  
*Martial*, marziale.  
*Mary*, Maria.  
*Master*, maestro, padrone.  
*Mathematics*, matematica.  
*Matter*, materia.  
*Maud*, Matilde.  
*May*, maggio.  
*Meadow*, prato.  
*Means*, mezzo.

*Measure*, misura.  
*Meet*, v. a. incontrare.  
*Melodious*, melodioso.  
*Melodiously*, melodiosamente.  
*Melt*, v. a. fondare.  
*Memory*, memoria.  
*Mercury*, Mercurio.  
*Messenger*, messaggero.  
*Metal*, metallo.  
*Microscope*, microscopio.  
*Midnight*, mezzanotte.  
*Midst*, mezzo.  
*Mildness*, dolcezza.  
*Milkjug*, bocciale da latte.  
*Mind*, spirito, mente, f.  
*Mind*, v. a. badare.  
*Mineral*, minerale.  
*Minister*, ministro. — *for Foreign Affairs*, Ministro degli Affari Esteri.  
*Minute*, minuto.  
*Mirror*, specchio.  
*Mischief*, male.  
*Misfortune*, disgrazia.  
*Miss*, Signorina.  
*Mistake*, sbaglio.  
*Mistake*, v. a. sbagliare.  
*Moderate*, moderato.  
*Modesty*, modestia.  
*Moment*, momento.  
*Monarch*, monarca.  
*Monday*, lunedì.  
*Money*, danaro.  
*Monk*, monaco.  
*Monkey*, scimia.  
*Month*, mese.  
*Moon*, luna.  
*Moor*, pianura, macchia.  
*Moralist*, moralista.  
*More*, più.  
*Morning*, mattina.  
*Mosaic*, mosaico.  
*Moss*, muschio.  
*Most*, il più.  
*Mother*, madre.  
*Motive*, motivo.  
*Mount*, v. a. montare, salire.  
*Mountain*, montagna.  
*Mouth*, bocca.  
*Mouthful*, boccata.  
*Mr.*, Signore.  
*Mrs.*, Signora.  
*Much*, molto.  
*Mule*, mulo.  
*Multitude*, moltitudine.  
*Murmur*, mormorio.  
*Music*, musica.  
*Must*.—*I must*, debbo.

*My*, il mio, la mia, i miei, &c  
*Mysterious*, misterioso.  
*Mythology*, mitologia.

N

*Name*, nome.  
*Name*, v. a. chiamare.  
*Napoleon*, Napoleone.  
*Narrate*, v. a. raccontare.  
*Natural*, naturale.  
*Nature*, natura.  
*Navigator*, navigatore.  
*Near*, vicino.  
*Necessary*, necessario.  
*Necessity*, necessità.  
*Necklace*, monile, vezzo.  
*Needle*, ago.  
*Negro-dealer*, mercante di schiavi.  
*Neighbourhood*, vicinato.  
*Neither*, nè... nè.  
*Nephew*, nipote.  
*Neptune*, Nettuno.  
*Never*, non... mai, no, mai.  
*New*, nuovo.—*Born*, pur mo nato.  
*News*, nuove, notizie.—*paper*, giornale.  
*Next*, prossimo.  
*Nice*, buono.  
*Nicely*, squisitamente.  
*Niece*, nipote.  
*Night*, notte, f.  
*No*, no.—*body*, nessuno.  
*Noble*, nobile.  
*Noise*, rumore, strepito.  
*Nonsense*, sproposito.  
*Noon*, mezzogiorno.  
*Norman*, Normanno.  
*Normandy*, Normandia.  
*North*, tramontana, settentrione.  
*Not*, non.  
*Nothing*, niente, nulla.  
*Nourish*, nutrire.  
*Now*, adesso, ora.  
*Number*, numero.  
*Numerous*, numeroso.

O

*Oak*, quercia. *Green*—elce.  
*October*, Ottobre.  
*Obey*, v. a. ubbidire.  
*Observe*, v. a. osservare.  
*Observer*, osservatore.  
*Obtain*, v. a. ottenere.  
*Odd*, singolare, bizzarro.  
*Odious*, odioso.

*Of*, di.  
*Offend*, v. a. offendere.  
*Offer*, v. a. offrire.  
*Office*, carica, ufficio.  
*Often*, spesso.  
*Old*, vecchio.  
*Olive*, uliva.—*tree*, ulivo.  
*On*, su, sopra.  
*Once*, una volta.  
*One*, uno, una.  
*Only*, solo, solamente, non... che.

*Open*, aperto.  
*Open*, v. a. aprire.  
*Opera*, opera.  
*Operation*, operazione, f.  
*Opinion*, opinione, f.  
*Oppress*, v. a. opprimere.  
*Opulence*, opulenza.  
*Or*, o, ovvero.  
*Orange and orange-tree*, arancio.

*Orator*, oratore.  
*Orchard*, orto, pometo.  
*Order*, ordine.  
*Order*, v. a. comandare.  
*Origin*, origine, f.  
*Ornament*, ornamento.  
*Other*, altro.  
*Our*, il nostro, &c.  
*Over*, sopra, di sopra.  
*Overturn*, sovvertire, rovesciare.  
*Owe*, v. n. dovere.  
*Own*, proprio.

P

*Pace*, passo.  
*Pain*, male, dolore, m.  
*Painful*, doloroso.  
*Paint*, v. a. dipingere.  
*Painter*, pittore.  
*Painting*, pittura, quadro.  
*Pair*, paio, coppia.  
*Palace*, palazzo.  
*Paper*, carta.  
*Parasol*, ombrellino.  
*Pardon*, perdono.  
*Pardon*, v. a. perdonare.  
*Parent*, padre, madre, genitore.  
*Paris*, Parigi.  
*Park*, parco.  
*Parliament*, parlamento.  
*Parlour*, salotto.  
*Part*, parte, porzione.  
*Particular*, particolare.  
*Particularly*, particolarmente.

*Partridge*, pernice, f.  
*Pass*, v. n. passare.  
*Passenger*, passeggero.  
*Passion*, passione, f.  
*Past*, passato.  
*Patience*, pazienza.  
*Pay*, v. a. pagare.—*a visit*, fare una visita.  
*Peace*, pace, f.  
*Pear*, pera.  
*Pearl*, perla.  
*Peculiarities*, singolarità.  
*Pedestal*, pedestallo.  
*Pen*, penna.  
*Pencil*, lapis, matita.—*case*, porta-lapis.  
*Penknife*, temperino.  
*Penny*, due soldi.  
*Pension*, pensione, f.  
*People*, popolo, gente.  
*Perceive*, scorgere.  
*Perform*, v. a. adempire.  
*Perfume*, v. a. profumare.  
*Perhaps*, forse.  
*Perpetual*, perpetuo.  
*Person*, persona.  
*Personage*, personaggio.  
*Personal*, personale.  
*Philip*, Filippo.  
*Philosopher*, filosofo.  
*Physiognomy*, fisionomia.  
*Piano*, pianoforte.  
*Pickpocket*, borsaiuolo.  
*Picture*, quadro, pittura.  
*Picturesque*, pittoresco.  
*Piece*, pezzo.  
*Pillar*, pilastro.  
*Pincushion*, cuscinetto per le spille.  
*Pink*, garofano.  
*Place*, luogo, sito.  
*Plain*, pianura, chiaro.  
*Planet*, pianeta.  
*Platina*, platino.  
*Play*, v. a. giuocare.—*on an instrument*, suonare.  
*Plead*, piatire.  
*Please*, v. a. piacere. *If you please*, per piacere.  
*Pleasing*, piacevole.  
*Pleasure*, piacere.  
*Plot*, congiura, trama.  
*Plunder*, v. a. saccheggiare.  
*Pocket*, tasca, scassella.  
*Poem*, poema, m.  
*Poet*, poeta.  
*Poetry*, poesia.  
*Point*, v. a. indicare.

*Policeman*, agente di polizia, sbirro.  
*Polite*, civile, cortese.  
*Politics*, politica.  
*Pomp*, pompa.  
*Poor*, povero.  
*Popular*, popolare.  
*Popularity*, popolarità.  
*Port*, porto.  
*Portrait*, ritratto.  
*Positively*, positivamente.  
*Possess*, v. a. possedere.  
*Possession*, possessione, f.  
*Possible*, possibile.  
*Post*, posta, posto.  
*Postage-stamp*, francobollo.  
*Posterity*, posterità.  
*Posture*, posizione, f.  
*Found*, libbra, lira.  
*Powder*, polvere, f.  
*Power*, potere, m.  
*Powerful*, potente.  
*Practice*, pratica.  
*Praise*, lode.  
*Praise*, v. a. lodare.  
*Prayer*, preghiera.  
*Precede*, precedere.  
*Precious*, prezioso.  
*Precipice*, precipizio.  
*Predict*, v. a. predire.  
*Prefer*, preferire.  
*Prejudicial*, pregiudicativo.  
*Preparation*, preparazione, f.  
*Present*, dono, regalo.  
*Present*, v. a. presentare.  
*Preserve*, v. a. preservare.  
*Pretension*, pretensione.  
*Pretty*, bello, vago.  
*Previous*, prima di.  
*Prey*, preda.  
*Price*, prezzo.  
*Pride one's-self*, v. r. inorgogliarsi.  
*Prince*, principe.  
*Princess*, principessa.  
*Principle*, principio.  
*Print*, v. a. stampare.  
*Printing*, stampa.  
*Prison*, prigione, f.  
*Probably*, probabilmente.  
*Problem*, problema, m.  
*Procession*, processione, f.  
*Produce*, prodotto.  
*Produce*, v. a. produrre.  
*Production*, produzione, f.  
*Profit*, v. n. profitare.  
*Profusion*, profusione, f.  
*Progress*, progresso.

*Promise*, promessa.  
*Promise*, v. a. promettere.  
*Proof*, prova.  
*Property*, proprietà, beni.  
*Prophecy*, profetessa.  
*Proposal*, proposizione, f.  
*Propose*, v. a. proporre.  
*Prospect*, prospettiva, vista.  
*Prosperous*, prospero.  
*Proud*, orgoglioso.  
*Prove*, v. a. provare.  
*Provide*, v. a. provvedere.  
*Provision*, provizione.  
*Provoke*, v. a. provocare.  
*Prudently*, prudentemente.  
*Prussia*, Prussia.  
*Prussian*, Prussiano.  
*Public*, pubblico.  
*Pull down*, v. a. demolire.  
*Punish*, v. a. punire.  
*Pupil*, scolare, allievo.  
*Purchase*, compra.  
*Pure*, puro, semplice.  
*Pursuit*, incalzo.  
*Put off*, v. n. indugiare.—  
 down, gettargiù.  
*Pyrenees*, Pirenei.

## Q

*Quantity*, quantità.  
*Queen*, regina.  
*Question*, questione, f.  
*Quietly*, tranquillamente.  
*Quill*, penna d'oca.  
*Quire*, quinterno di carta.  
*Quite*, affatto, interamente.

## R

*Rage*, rabbia.  
*Rain*, pioggia.  
*Rain*, v. i. piovere.  
*Rainbow*, arcobaleno.  
*Rapaciousness*, rapacità.  
*Raphael*, Raffaello.  
*Raven*, corvo.  
*Ravine*, burrone, m.  
*Ray*, raggio.  
*Reach*, v. a. giungere.  
*Read*, v. a. leggere.  
*Reading-book*, libro di lettura.  
*Ready*, pronto.  
*Really*, realmente.  
*Reason*, ragione, f. senno.  
*Recall*, v. a. richiamare.  
*Receive*, v. a. ricevere.  
*Recognise*, v. a. riconoscere.

*Recommend*, v. a. raccomandare.  
*Recruit*, recluta.  
*Red*, rosso.  
*Re-enter*, v. n. rientrare.  
*Reflect*, v. a. riflettere.  
*Reflective*, riflessione, f.  
*Regularly*, regolarmente.  
*Reign*, v. a. regnare.  
*Reindeer*, cervo della Lapponia.  
*Rejoice*, v. a. rallegrarsi.  
*Relation*, parente.  
*Religion*, religione, f.  
*Remain*, v. n. restare, rimanere.  
*Remark*, nota.  
*Remark*, v. a. ossevare, dire.  
*Remarkable*, notevole.  
*Remarkably*, rimarcabilmente.  
*Remember*, v. n. ricordarsi.  
*Remote*, remoto.  
*Renowned*, rinomato.  
*Repent*, v. n. pentirsi.  
*Reply*, v. a. rispondere.  
*Report of a gun*, lo strepito d'un cannone.  
*Represent*, v. a. rappresentare.  
*Republic*, repubblica.  
*Request*, richiesta, domanda.  
*Resemble*, v. a. somigliare.  
*Resist*, v. a. resistere.  
*Resolve*, v. a. risolvere.  
*Resound*, v. a. risuonare, rimbombare.  
*Respect*, rispetto.  
*Respectful*, rispettoso.  
*Restoration*, restaurazione, f.  
*Result*, risultamento.  
*Resume*, v. a. ripigliare.  
*Retire*, v. n. ritirarsi.  
*Return*, ritorno.  
*Return*, v. n. ritornare, scambiare, rispondere.  
*Reveal*, v. a. rivelare.  
*Review*, rivista.  
*Revolution*, rivoluzione, f.  
*Reward*, ricompensa, taglia.  
*Ribbon*, nastro, fettuccia.  
*Rich*, ricco.  
*Riches*, ricchezze.  
*Ride*, v. n. andare a cavallo.  
*Right*, diritto.  
*Ring*, anello.  
*Ring*, v. a. and n. suonare.

*Ripe*, maturo.  
*Rise*, v. n. levarsi.  
*River*, fiume, m. riviera.  
*Road*, strada, cammino.  
*Robber*, ladro.  
*Rogue*, birbone.  
*Roman*, Romano.  
*Romantic*, romantico.  
*Rome*, Roma.  
*Room*, camera, stanza.  
*Rose*, rosa.  
*Round*, rotondo, intorno.  
*Route*, sconfitta.  
*Route*, v. a. sfrattare.  
*Royal*, regale.  
*Rude*, grossolano, zotico, impertinente.  
*Rudely*, rozamente.  
*Ruin*, rovina.  
*Ruin*, v. a. ruinare.  
*Rule*, regola.  
*Run*, v. n. correre.  
*Rust*, ruggine, f.

S

*Sack*, v. a. saccheggiare.  
*Safety*, sicurezza.  
*Sail*, v. a. far vela.  
*Sailing-vessel*, bastimento a vela.  
*Set sail*, v. a. far vela.  
*Sailor*, marinaio.  
*Saladin*, Saladino.  
*Salary*, stipendio.  
*Same*, medesimo, stesso.  
*Saracen*, Saraceno.  
*Sardinia*, Sardegna.  
*Satin*, raso.  
*Satisfy*, v. a. soddisfare.  
*Saturday*, sabato.  
*Saturn*, Saturno.  
*Scale*, bilancia, guscio.  
*Scarcely*, appena.  
*Scarf*, sciarpa.  
*Scene*, scena, teatro.  
*School*, scuola.  
*Science*, scienza.  
*Scorn*, disprezzo.  
*Scotland*, Scozia.  
*Sculptor*, scultore.  
*Sculpture*, scultura.  
*Sea*, mare.—*coast*, spiaggia del mare.  
*Seal*, sigillo.  
*Season*, stagione.  
*Season*, v. a. condire.  
*Seat one's-self*, v. n. sedersi.  
*Second*, secondo.

*Secretly*, segretamente.  
*See*, v. a. vedere.  
*Seek, or seek for*, v. a. cercare.—*after*, ricercare.  
*Seem*, v. n. parere, sembrare.  
*Seldom*, rado, raramente.  
*Sell*, v. a. vendere.  
*Send*, v. a. mandare, inviare.—*down*, mandar giù.  
*Sense*, senso.  
*Separate*, v. a. disgiungere.  
*Sermon*, sermone, predica.  
*Servant*, servo.  
*Serve*, v. a. servire.  
*Service*, servizio.  
*Seven*, sette—*Seventeen*, diciassette—*Seventy*, settanta.  
*Several*, molti, parecchi.  
*Severely*, severamente.  
*Sew*, v. a. cucire.—*again*, v. a. ricucire.  
*Scotland*, Scozia.  
*Shadow*, ombra.  
*Shame*, vergogna. *For shame!* Vergognatevi!  
*Share*, parte, f.  
*Shawl*, scialle, m.  
*She*, ella, essa.  
*Sheep*, pecora.  
*Sheet*, foglio.  
*Shield*, scudo.  
*Shilling*, scellino.  
*Ship*, nave, f. vascello.  
*Shop*, bottega.  
*Shore*, spiaggia, lido.  
*Show*, mostrare.  
*Shudder*, v. n. tremare.  
*Shut*, v. a. chiudere.  
*Side-board*, credenza.  
*Siege*, assedio.  
*Sight*, vista, prospettiva.  
*By*—di vista.  
*Silver*, argento.  
*Simple*, semplice.  
*Simplicity*, semplicità.  
*Since*, di poi, da, poichè.  
*Sing*, v. a. cantare.  
*Single*, solo, semplice.  
*Sir*, Signore.  
*Sire*, Sire.  
*Sister*, sorella.  
*Sister-in-law*, cognata.  
*Sit*, v. n. sedere, sedersi.  
*Situated*, situato, collocato.  
*Situation*, situazione, f.

*Six*, sei.  
*Sketch*, schizzo. v. a. schizzare.  
*Skip*, v. n. saltellare.  
*Slate*, lavagna.  
*Sleep*, v. n. dormire.  
*Slow*, adagio.  
*Small*, piccolo.  
*Smile*, v. n. ridere.  
*Snow*, neve.—*drop*, bucare.  
*Snow*, v. i. nevicare.  
*So*, così.  
*Soldier*, soldato.  
*Solon*, Solone.  
*Some*, del, dello, &c., alcuno, &c., qualche, poco (po').  
*Some time or other*, un giorno o l'altro.  
*Sometimes*, qualche volta.  
*Son*, figlio,—*in-law*, genero.  
*Song*, canzone, f.  
*Sonnet*, sonetto.  
*Soon*, tosto, presto.  
*Soul*, anima, spirito.  
*Sound*, suono, rimbombo.  
*Source*, sorgente, f.  
*South*, mezzogiorno.  
*Spain*, Spagna.  
*Spanish*, Spagnuolo.  
*Spare*, v. a. risparmiare.  
*Speak*, v. a. parlare.  
*Speaker*, oratore.  
*Special*, speciale.  
*Species*, specie.  
*Spectacle*, spettacolo.  
*Spectacles*, occhiali.  
*Speculation*, speculazione, f.  
*Speech*, discorso.  
*Spirited*, animato.  
*Spire*, rancore.—*In spite of*, ad onta di.  
*Splendid*, magnifico.  
*Spoon*, cucchiaino.  
*Sport*, divertimento.  
*Spread*, v. a. distendere.  
*Spring*, primavera, fonte, sorgente.  
*Squander*, v. a. scialaquare.  
*Square*, piazza.  
*Stage*, scena, teatro.  
*Staircase*, scala.  
*Star*, stella.  
*Start*, v. n. partire.  
*State*, stato.  
*Station*, stazione, f.  
*Statue*, statua.



*Steal*, v. a. rubare.  
*Steel*, acciaio.  
*Steward*, castaldo.  
*Stick*, bastone, m.  
*Still*, v. a. quietare.  
*Still*, adv. eppure.  
*Stock*, v. a. fornire.  
*Stone*, pietra, sasso.  
*Stop*, v. a. and n. fermare, fermarsi.  
*Straight*, diritto.  
*Strange*, strano, bizzarro.  
*Stranger*, forestiero.  
*Strawberry*, fragola.  
*Stream*, ruscello, riviera.  
*Street*, strada, via.  
*Strength*, forza, potere.  
*Strike*, v. a. battere, ferire.  
*Strikingly*, sorprendentemente.  
*Strong*, forte, potente.  
*Study*, studio.  
*Study*, v. a. studiare.  
*Style*, stile, m. titolo.  
*Subdue*, v. a. soggiogare.  
*Subject*, soggetto, suddito.  
*Substance*, materiera.  
*Succeed*, v. n. riuscire, succedere.  
*Success*, successo, esito.  
*Succession*, successione, f.  
 *Succour*, soccorso, aiuto.  
*Such*, tale. — a, un tale.  
*Sudden*, improvviso.  
*Suffer*, v. n. soffrire, patire.  
*Sufficiently*, abbastanza.  
*Suggest*, v. a. suggerire.  
*Sum*, somma.  
*Summer*, estate, f.  
*Sun*, sole, m.  
*Superfluous*, superfluo.  
*Superstition*, superstizione, f.  
*Support*, sostegno, v. a. sostenere, sopportare.  
*Suppose*, v. a. supporre.  
*Sure*, sicuro, certo.  
*Surface*, superficie, f.  
*Surprise*, v. a. sorprendere.  
*Surrounding*, circconvicino.  
*Sustain*, v. n. subire.  
*Swan*, cigno.  
*Sweet*, dolce.  
*Sweet-briar*, rosa selvatica.  
*Sweetly*, dolcemente.  
*Sweetheart*, amante.  
*Swim*, v. n. nuotare. — about, guizzare.

*Switzerland*, Svizzera.  
*Sword*, spada.

## T

*Table*, tavola.  
*Take*, v. a. prendere. — a walk, fare una passeggiata. — away, condur via. — care, aver cura.  
*Talent*, talento.  
*Talker*, parlatore cialrone.  
*Tall*, grande, alto.  
*Tartary*, Tartaria.  
*Tea*, tè. — cup, tazza da tè.  
*Teach*, v. a. insegnare.  
*Teacher*, maestro.  
*Tear*, v. a. stracciare.  
*Tease*, v. a. affannare.  
*Teeth*, dente, m.  
*Telescope*, cannocchiale, m.  
*Tell*, v. a. dire.  
*Temptation*, tentazione, f.  
*Tend*, v. n. inclinare.  
*Terror*, spavento.  
*Than*, che.  
*Thank*, v. a. ringraziare.  
*I thank you*, vi, or la ringrazio.  
*Thanks*, grazie.  
*That*, quello (quel), quella, che.  
*The*, il, lo, la, &c.  
*Theatre*, teatro.  
*Theatrical*, teatrale.  
*Theft*, ladronaggio.  
*There*, là, lì.  
*Therefore*, dunque.  
*These*, questi, queste.  
*They*, egli, o, ella, essi, &c.  
*Thick*, spesso.  
*Thief*, ladro.  
*Thimble*, ditale, m.  
*Thing*, cosa.  
*Think*, v. n. pensare, credere.  
*Third*, terzo.  
*This*, questo, questa.  
*Thomas*, Tommaso.  
*Thorn*, spina.  
*Thoroughly*, completamente.  
*Thought*, pensiero.  
*Thousand*, mille, migliaio.  
*Tread*, filo.  
*Tree*, tre.  
*Through*, per, a traverso.  
*Throw*, v. a. gettare.  
*Thunder*, v. i. tuonare.

*Thursday*, giovedì.  
*Tiger*, tigre, f.  
*Till*, fino, infino.  
*Time*, tempo, volta.  
*Tired*, stanco.  
*To-day*, oggi.  
*Together*, insieme.  
*Taken*, segno.  
*To-morrow*, domani. — after, posdomani.  
*Too*, anche, pur troppo.  
*Top*, sommità, vetta.  
*Toulon*, Tolone.  
*Towards*, verso.  
*Town*, città.  
*Tract*, tratto.  
*Tradition*, tradizione, f.  
*Tragedy*, tragedia.  
*Train*, seguito, traino.  
*Train*, v. a. allevare, istruire.  
*Traitor*, traditore.  
*Translate*, v. a. tradurre.  
*Translation*, traduzione, f.  
*Transmit*, v. a. trasmettere.  
*Travel*, v. n. viaggiare.  
*Treasure*, tesoro.  
*Tree*, albero.  
*Trip*, viaggio.  
*Triumphant*, trionfante.  
*Troops*, truppe, esercito.  
*Trouble*, fatica.  
*Troy*, Troia.  
*Trunk*, tronco, baule.  
*Trust*, v. a. confidare. — one's-self, confidarsi.  
*Truth*, verità.  
*Tuesday*, martedì.  
*Turbot*, rombo.  
*Turmoil*, fracasso.  
*Turn*, v. a. voltare.  
*Tutor*, precettore, maestro.  
*Twilight*, crepuscolo.  
*Two*, due.  
*Twice*, due volte.  
*Tyrant*, tiranno.

## U

*Umbrella*, ombrella.  
*Uncle*, zio.  
*Uncommon*, straordinario.  
*Under*, sotto.  
*Understand*, v. a. capire.  
*Understanding*, ingegno.  
*Undertaking*, intrepresa.  
*Undertake*, v. a. intraprendere.  
*Unfavourable*, sfavorevole.

*Unfortunate*, sfortunato.  
*Unfortunately*, sfortunatamente.  
*Uniform*, uniforme, m.  
*Universal*, universale.  
*Unless*, a meno che.  
*Unpardonable*, impardonabile.  
*Unsheath*, v. a. sguainare.  
*Until*, fino.  
*Up, upon*, su, sopra.  
*Uranus*, Urano.  
*Us*, noi.  
*Use*, v. a. solere.  
*Useful*, utile.  
*Usurer*, usuraio.

V

*Vain*, vano, inutile. *In-*invano.  
*Vale, valley*, valle, f.  
*Valour*, valore, m.  
*Valuable*, prezioso.  
*Value*, valore, prezzo.  
*Variety*, varietà.  
*Vast*, vasto.  
*Venus*, Venere.  
*Verb*, verbo.  
*Verdure*, verdura.  
*Verse*, verso. *Blank*—verso sciolto.  
*Very*, assai, molto.—*soon*, presto, fra poco.  
*Vessel*, vascello, nave, f.  
*Vice*, vizio.  
*Vicious*, vizioso.  
*Victory*, vittoria.  
*View*, vista prospettiva.—v. a. esaminare.  
*Village*, villaggio.  
*Vindictive*, vindicativo.  
*Vine*, vigna.  
*Violet*, viola.  
*Virgil*, Virgilio.  
*Virtue*, virtù, f.  
*Visit*, v. a. visitare.  
*Vivacity*, vivacità.

*Vivid*, vivido, allegro.  
*Voice*, voce, f.  
*Volcano*, vulcano.  
*Valley*, salva di moschettate.  
*Vote*, v. a. votare.

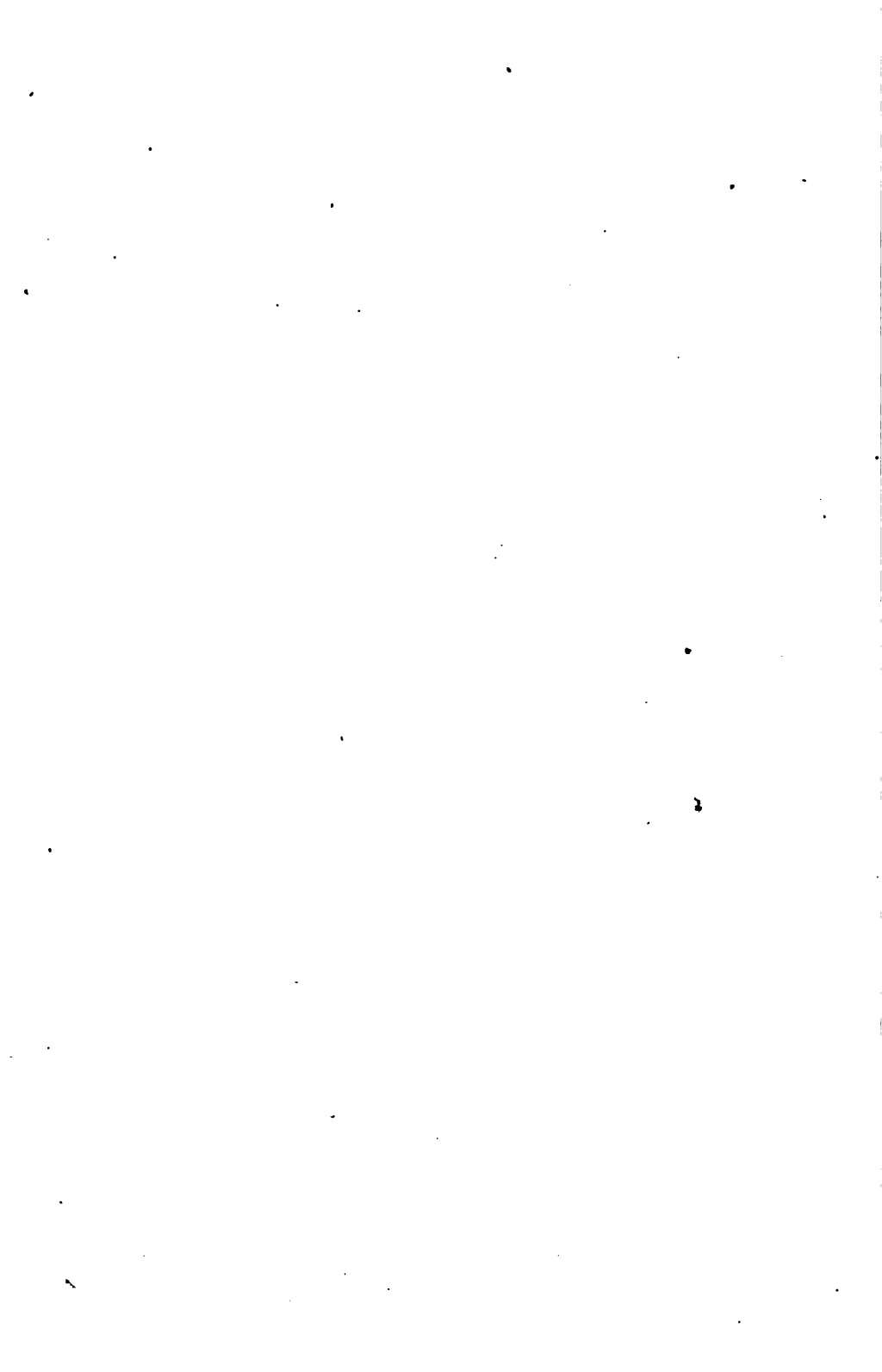
W

*Waistcoat*, sottoveste, gilè.  
*Wait*, v. n. aspettare.  
*Waiter*, garzone.  
*Walk*, passeggiata.—v. n. camminare.  
*Wall*, muro.  
*Wallet*, valigia.  
*Wander*, v. a. vagare.  
*Want*, mancanza.  
*Want*, v. n. abbisognare di.  
*War*, guerra.  
*Warble*, cantare.  
*Warm*, caldo, ardente.  
*Wash, (one's-self)* v. r. lavarsi.  
*Watch*, oriuolo.  
*Water*, annaffiare.  
*Water*, acqua.  
*Wave*, onda.  
*Way*, strada, modo, maniera.  
*We*, noi.  
*Weapon*, arma.  
*Wear*, v. a., portare.  
*Wednesday*, mercoledì.  
*Week*, settimana.  
*Well*, bene.  
*Well!* Ebbene!  
*Western*, occidentale.  
*What*, che cosa, quale.  
*Whatever*, checchè.  
*When*, quando.  
*Where*, dove.  
*Wherever*, ovunque.  
*Whether*, se.  
*Which*, quale.  
*While, whilst*, mentre.  
*White*, bianco.  
*Whole*, tutto.  
*Why?* perchè?

*Wicked*, cattivo.  
*Wide*, largo.  
*Widow*, vedova.  
*Wife*, moglie.  
*William*, Guglielmo.  
*Wind*, vento.—*mill*, mulino a vento.  
*Window*, finestra.  
*Wine*, vino.  
*Winter*, inverno.  
*Wisdom*, sapienza.  
*Wise*, saggio, savio.  
*Wish*, v. a. bramare, desiderare, augurare.  
*Wit*, ingegno, spirito, bell'ingegno.  
*With*, con.  
*Without*, senza, fuori.  
*Witness*, v. a. assistere a.  
*Woman*, donna.  
*Wonder*, meraviglia.  
*Wonderful*, meraviglioso.  
*Wood*, bosco.  
*Wool*, lana.  
*Word*, parola.  
*Work*, lavoro.  
*Work*, v. a. lavorare.  
*Workman*, operaio.  
*World*, mondo.  
*Worst*, peggiore.  
*Worthy*, degno.  
*Wound*, ferita.  
*Wound*, v. a. ferire.  
*Write*, v. a. scrivere.  
*Writing-desk*, scrittoio.

Y

*Year*, anno.  
*Yellowish*, giallognolo.  
*Yes*, sì.  
*Yesterday*, ieri.  
*Yet*, ancora.  
*You*, voi, ella.  
*Young*, giovane.—*man*, giovanotto.  
*Yours*, vostro.—*self*, voi.—*Voi* medesimo.



**The Leading Questions on the Grammar of the French Language ;** with Answers. Especially compiled for the use of Public and Private Schools, and for Candidates preparing for the Army and other Examinations. By N. PERINI. Fifth edition. Price 1s. 6d.

**Questions and Exercises on the Grammar and Idioms of the French Language ;** with answers to the most important questions, and a repetition of all the questions, for the purpose of Class, or Self-Examination. By N. PERINI. Fifth edition. Price 2s.

The above work, now in the hands of all Candidates preparing for the Higher Examinations, contains all the most important questions on the Grammar and Idioms of the French Language.

Each question is followed by a blank for the answer thereto.

**Queries concerning the Philology of the French Language.** By N. PERINI. Price 1s. 6d. A sequel to the above work.

**"The Bridge," or Exercises on Useful English Words, Phrases, and Proverbs,** for translation into other languages. On the same plan as the above-mentioned works. By N. PERINI. Price 1s.

**Extracts in English Prose, from the Best Authors ;** arranged progressively for translation into other languages. The extracts are divided into numbered sections, to facilitate translation at sight, in class. Second edition, 112 pages, bound. Sixth Edition. Price 2s.

**Five-and-Twenty Exercises on French Verbs.** By N. PERINI. Large 8vo., 24 pages, in paper cover. Price 6d.

The above work is intended to meet a want long felt in English Schools. The plan of the Book is very simple, and yet it goes thoroughly into the subject. It possesses, moreover, the great advantage of entirely relieving the teacher of the tiresome and laborious task of setting verbs to conjugate.

A "Key" to the above work, sold to Teachers only. Price 1s.

**Genealogical and Chronological Tables of The Kings and Princes of France.** By N. PERINI. Price, folded in neat cover, 1s.

---

LIBRAIRIE HACHETTE & CIE.

LONDON : 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS, W.C.

PARIS : 79, BOULEVARD ST. GERMAIN.

# LIBRAIRIE HACHETTE & CIE.

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

*The Catalogue of the Firm, containing a complete list of their Classical and Prize Books, will be sent free by book-post on application.*

## I. GRAMMAR & EXERCISE BOOKS.

**Henri Bue's First French Book.** 192 pages. Cloth. 68th Thousand. 10d.

**Second French Book.** 222 pages. 18th Thousand. 1s.

**First Steps in French Idioms.** An Alphabetical List of Idioms  
Explanatory Notes, and Examination Papers. 192 pages. Cloth. 3rd edition.  
1s. 6d.

**Graduated New First French Reader.** With Conversations  
and Examination Questions. Cloth, 10d.

**Brachet's Public School French Grammar.** Giving the latest results of  
Modern Philology. **New Edition, revised and enlarged** by P. II.  
ERNEST BRETTE, B.D., GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A., ELPHÈGE JANAU, and H. C.  
LEVANDER, M.A. Part I. ACCIDENCE (450 pages). 12th Thousand. Cloth,  
3s. 6d.

**Public School Elementary French Grammar.** Complete. 55th  
Thousand. Cloth, 2s. 6d.

**Supplementary Exercises.** By E. JANAU. ACCIDENCE. 10th  
Thousand. Cloth, 1s.

**Supplementary Exercises.** By E. JANAU. SYNTAX. Cloth, 1s.

## II. READERS.

**Janau's Junior French Book.** 20th Thousand. Cloth, 1s. 3d.

**Hachette's Children's Own French Book.** 60th Thousand. Cloth, 1s. 6d.

**First French Reader.** 400 pages. 86th Thousand. Cloth, 2s.

## III. MODERN FRENCH AUTHORS.

*In preparation.* (The Editors' names are given in parentheses.)

VOL. 26. **L. Enault—Le Chien du Capitaine.** (HENRI BUE.) Cloth, 1s. 6d.

VOL. 27. **Witt, M<sup>me</sup>. de, née Guizot.—De Glaçons en Glaçons.** A Story  
of Napoleon's Invasion of Russia. (L. DELBOS.) Cloth, 1s. 6d.

VOL. 28. **Zeller, B.—Richelieu.** Illustrated. (HENRI TESTARD.) Cloth, 2s.

VOL. 29. **Henri IV. et Marie de Médicis.** Illustrated. (Stephane  
BARLET.) Cloth, 2s.

## IV. FRENCH CLASSICS.

**Regnard—Le Joueur.** (VICTOR OGER.) 6d.

## ITALIAN.

**Le Mie Prigioni, Memorie di Silvio Pellico.** Adapted for English Schools,  
with Grammatical and Explanatory Notes by the Rev. A. C. CLAPIN, M.A.  
Cloth, price, 2s.



